V9 使用手册

V9 User Manual

英语
English

Foreword

Dear users,

Congratulations on you having a Xinghai V9, and thanks for your trust in Dongfeng Forthing. The Manual introduces Xinghai V9 in terms of drive safety, equipment operation and vehicle maintenance. Such information will help you use the vehicle correctly, so that you can really experience the driving pleasure from Xinghai V9.

The table of contents and illustrations of vehicle in the Manual can facilitate you to understand your car quickly. The following twelve chapters provide a detailed introduction to the use methods of various vehicle facilities. Before using the vehicle, please carefully read the documents delivered with the vehicle. The information provided in these documents is very important for guaranteeing the driving and property safety, please strictly observe and properly keep these documents.

When reading the Manual, you will find signs such as "Note", "Warning" and corresponding instructions. These instructions are contributive to guaranteeing the personal, vehicle and property safety, please strictly observe.

Graphs and texts in the Manual are only for the purpose of transmitting use information of main functions and facilities of the vehicle, instead of serving as the basis for the product acceptance. In case of any discrepancies from the actual vehicle, the actual vehicle shall prevail.

Copyright note: Content and technical specifications in the Manual were effective at the time of publication, but Dongfeng Liuzhou Motor Co., Ltd. reserves the right to change the technical specification and design at any time without advance notice.

Technical update description: IoV and electronic technology products are updated quickly. Please upgrade them in time to ensure user experience.

If you want to know more about Xinghai V9, welcome to our website:

https://www.forthingmotor.com/(official website)

Wish you a safe journey!

Dongfeng Liuzhou Motor Co., Ltd.

April 2024

Note: The cover and pictures of this manual are provided for reference only, and the actual vehicle shall prevail.

Configuration Description

* Asterisk

Asterisk “*” following the title or name indicates that described device or function is only equipped in certain models, and may not necessarily be equipped in your vehicle.

Safety instructions

Safety label - affixed to the vehicle.

Safety prompt information - marked with hazard warning symbols and the three signal words "Danger," " 'Warning," or "Caution." The meanings of these words are as follows:

 Danger

Used to indicate the danger that may cause serious personal injury or death.

 Warning

Used to indicate the danger that may cause personal injury or other damage.

 Caution

Used to indicate the danger that may cause minor personal injury or vehicle injury.

 Note

Indicative text to facilitate better understanding and use of vehicle functions.

Data Safety Instructions

According to laws, administrative regulations and other provisions, in order to provide you with more convenient and fast service, Dongfeng Liuzhou Motor may collect personal information and vehicle data such as VIN code, engine number and driving behavior when you use the vehicle or provide services for you. We will take measures that meet legal requirements and national or industrial technical standards to protect the security of your personal information and vehicle data.

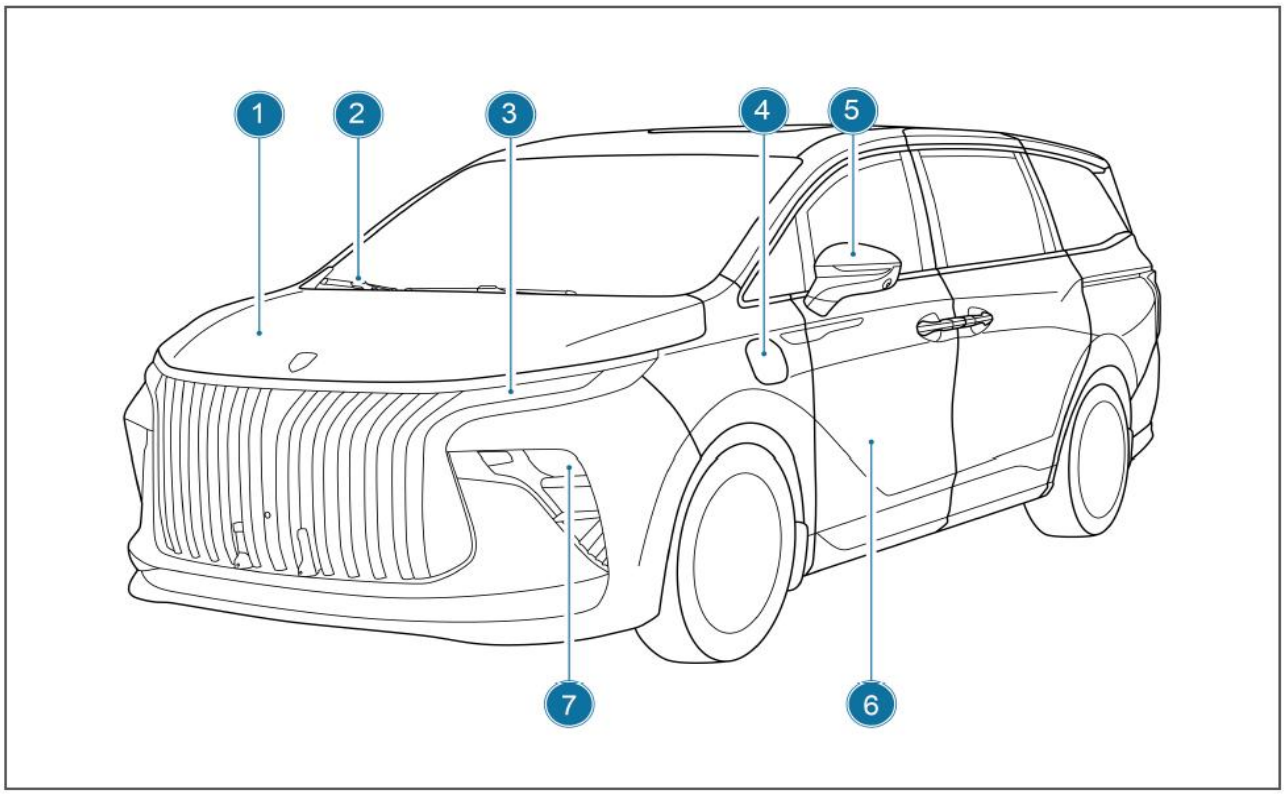
Table of Contents

6 Vehicle Illustrated Index

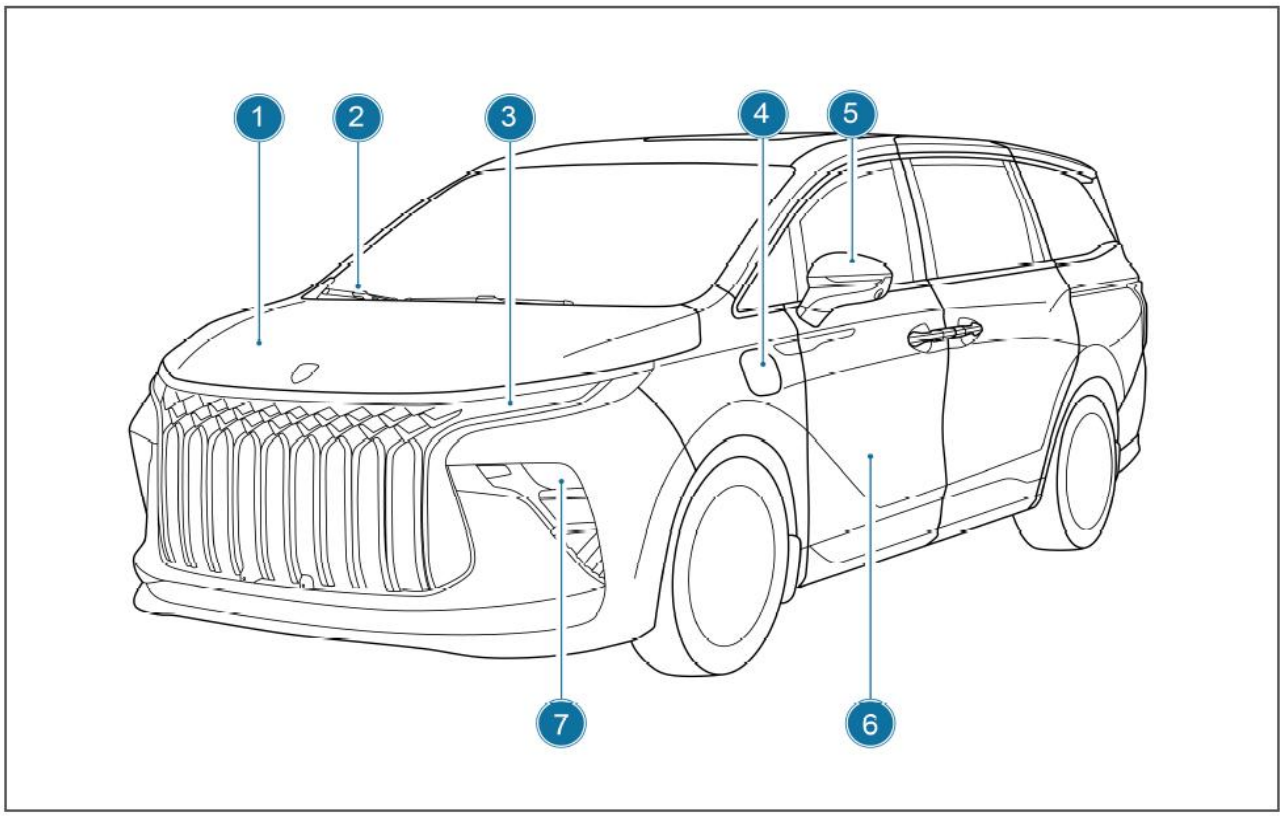
Exterior

Front of vehicle

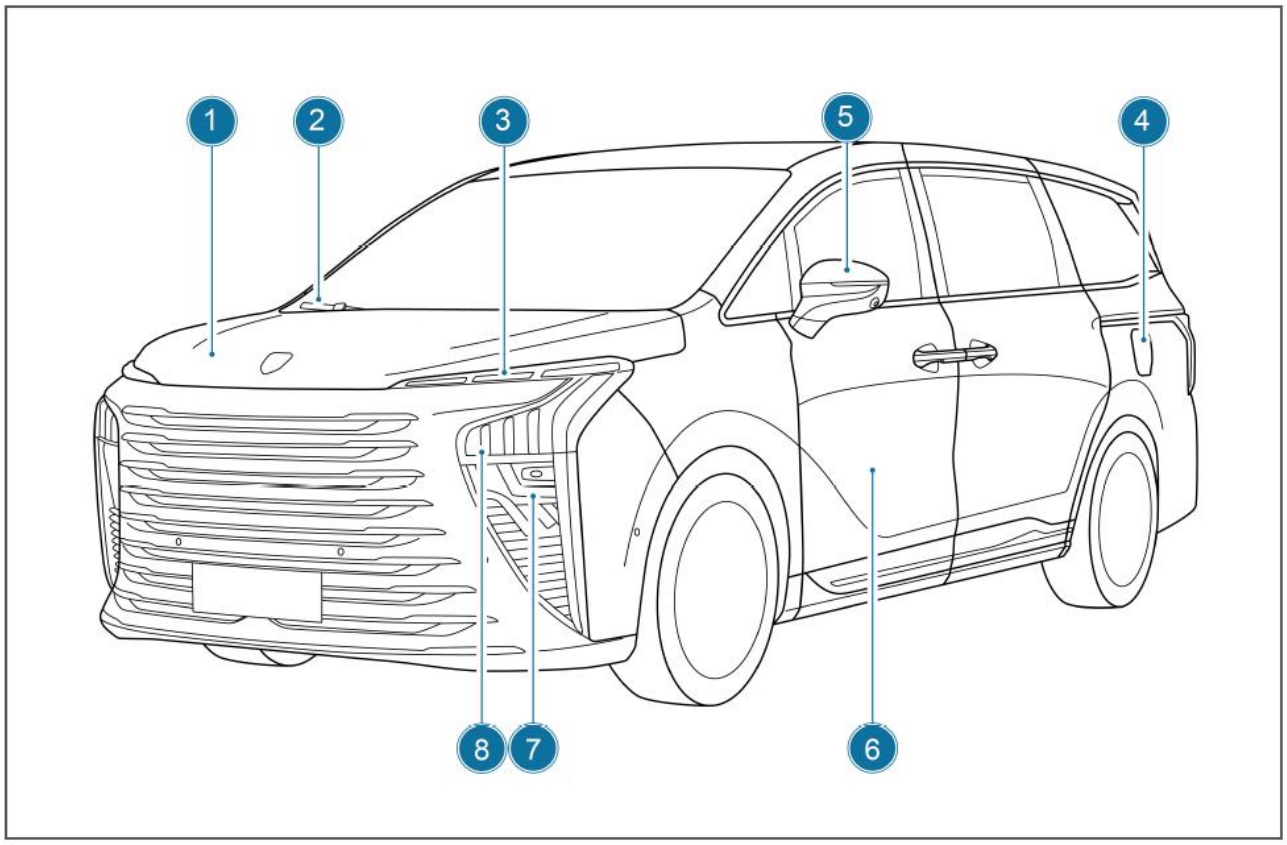
Type I



Type II



Type III

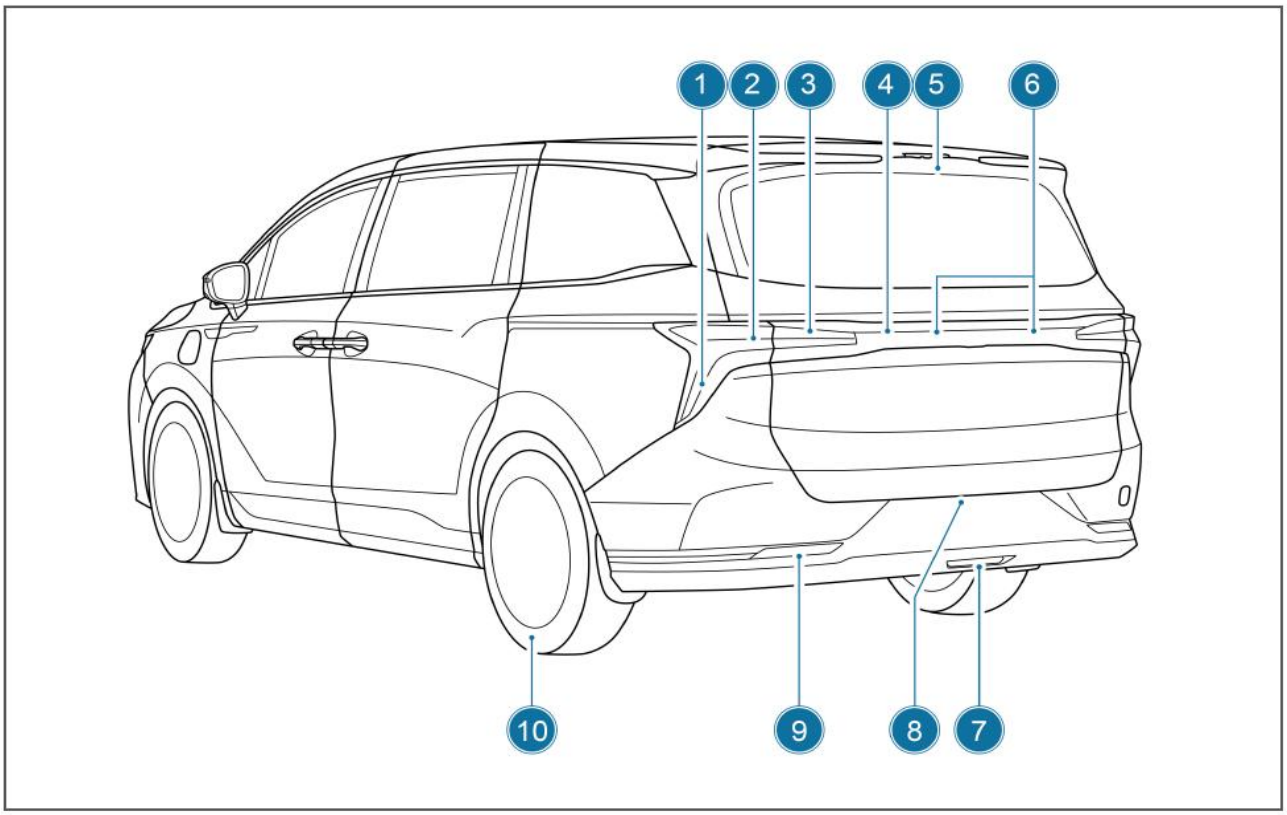


1. Engine hood
2. Wiper
3. Front turn signal/daytime running lamp/position lamp
4. Charging port cap*
5. Exterior rearview mirror
6. Door
7. Low beam/high beam
8. Daytime running lamp & position lamp

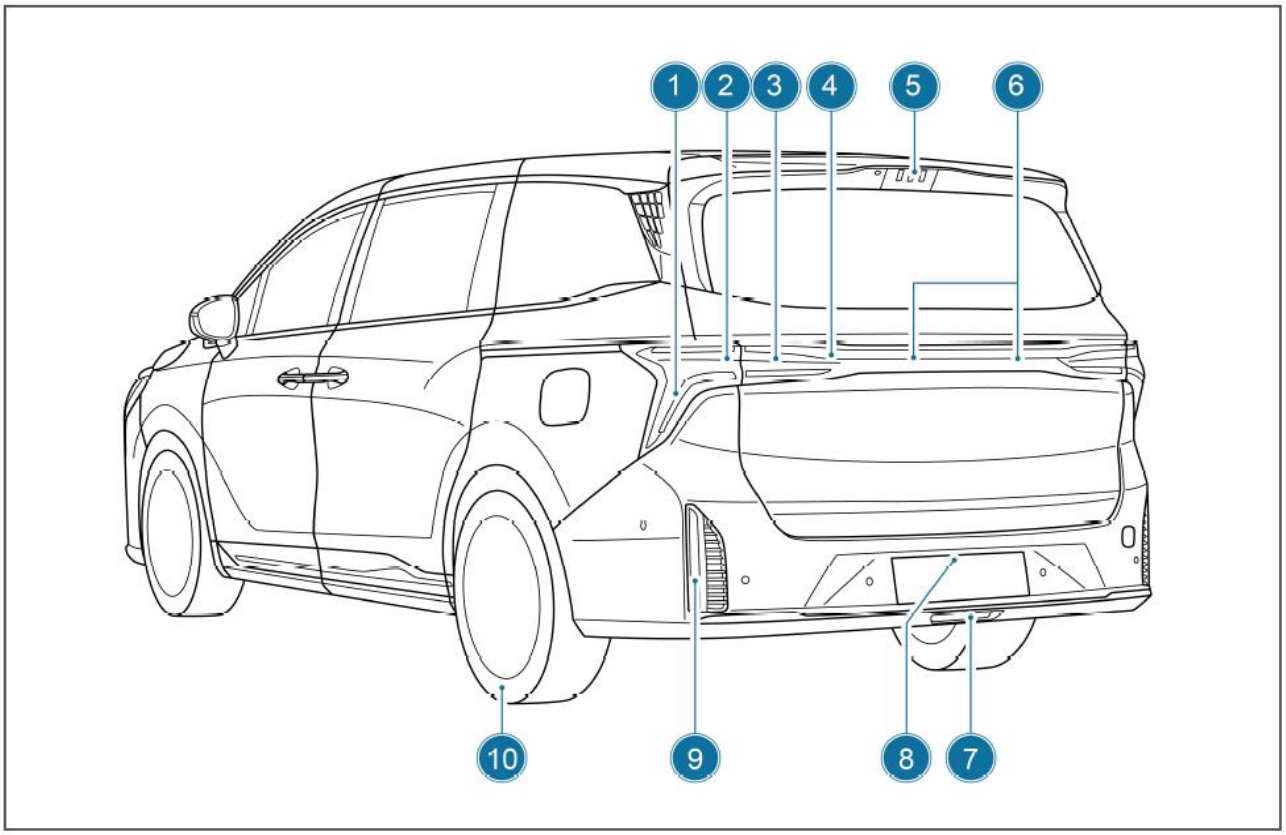
8 Vehicle Illustrated Index

Rear

Type I and Type II



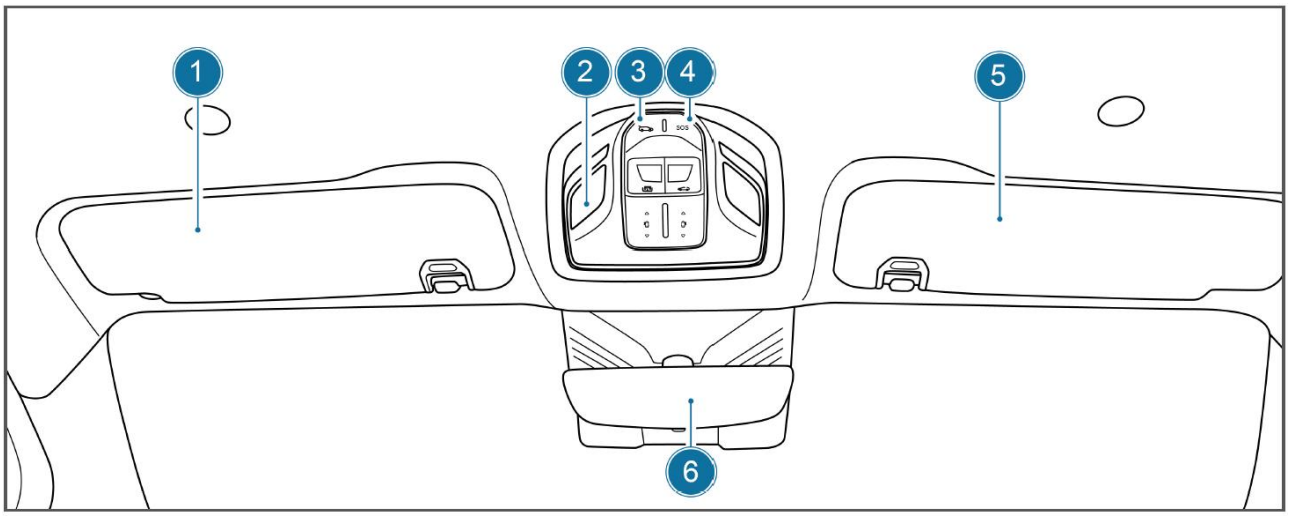
Type III



1. Position lamp
2. Brake lamp
3. Rear turn signal
4. Position lamp
5. High-mounted brake light
6. Reversing lamp
7. Rear fog lamp
8. License plate lamp
9. Retro-reflector device
10. Tire

Interior

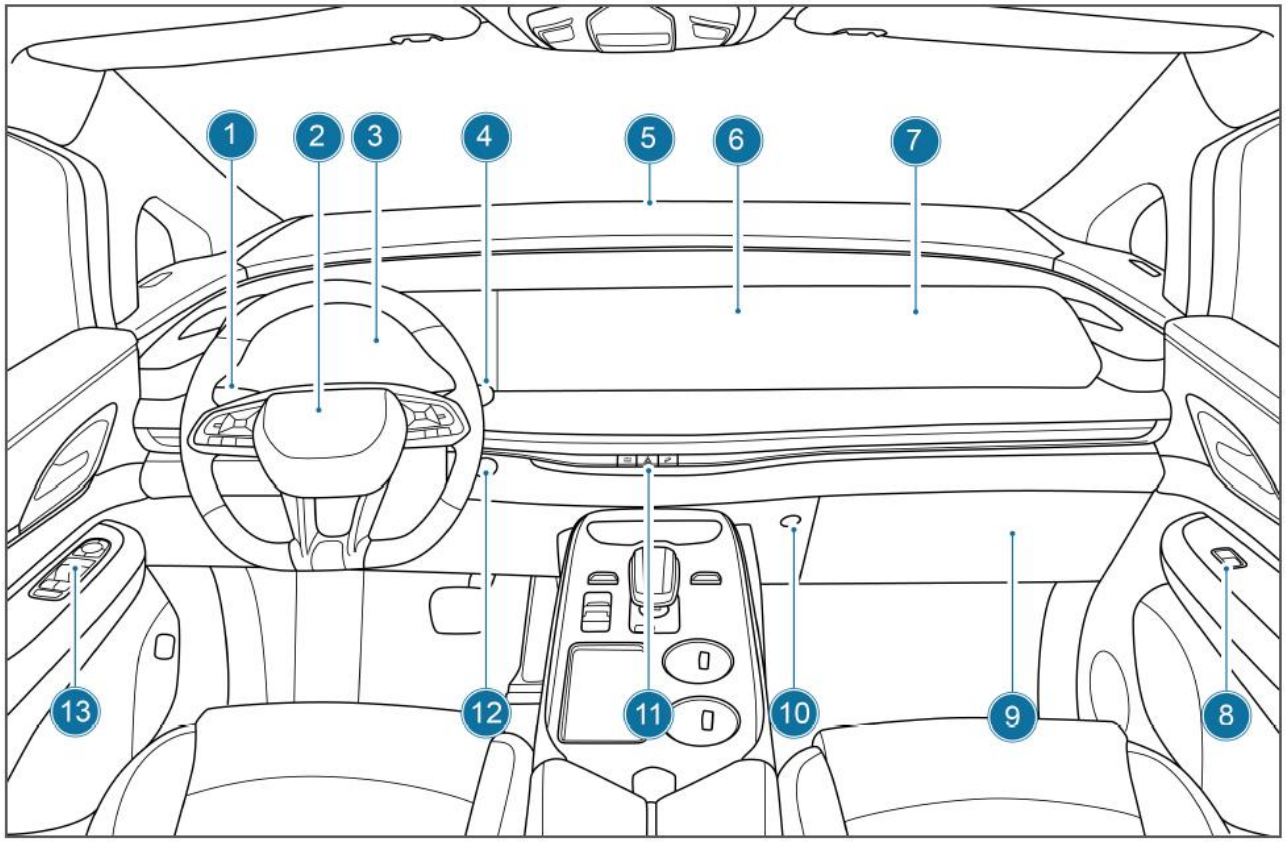
Interior roof



1. Left sun visor
2. Front interior lamp
3. Trunk lid switch*
4. SOS button *
5. Right sun visor
6. Interior rearview mirror

10 Vehicle Illustrated Index

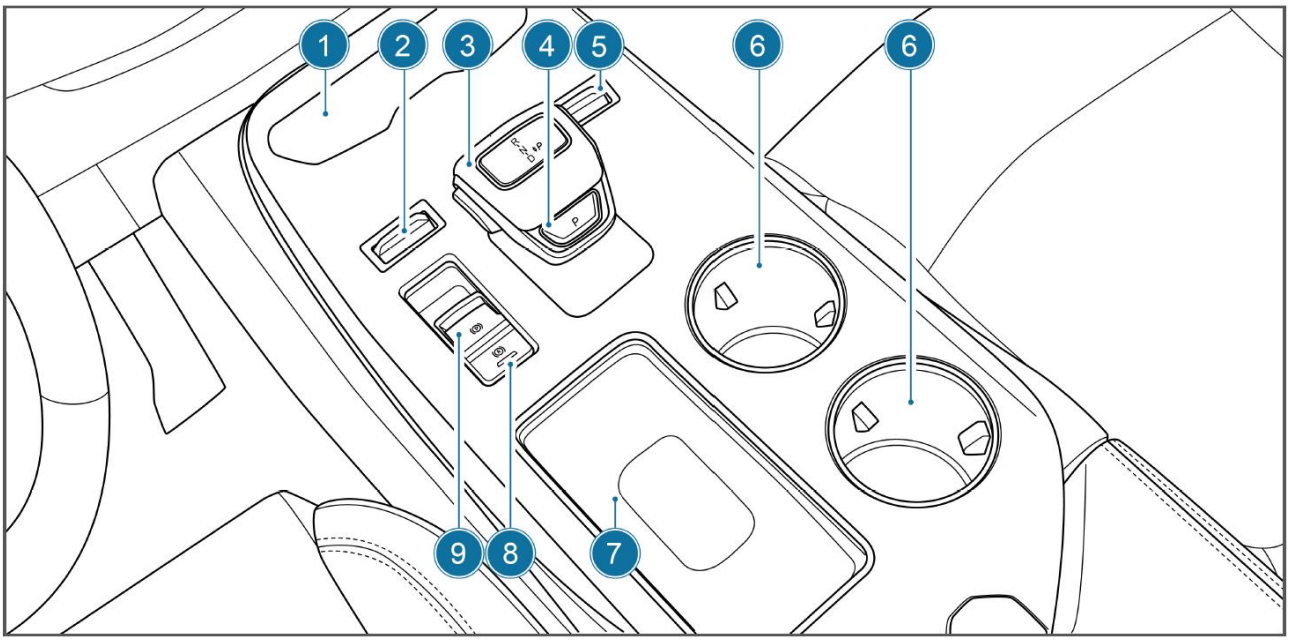
Dashboard



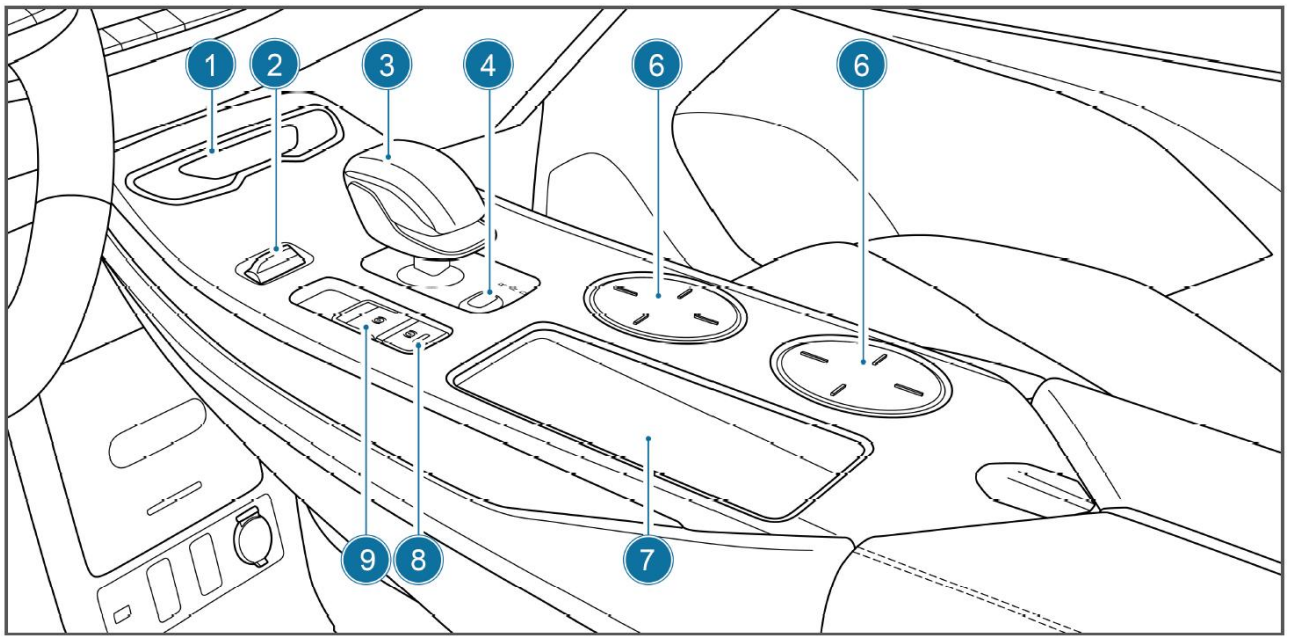
1. Light control handle
2. Steering wheel
3. Combination instrument
4. Wiper control handle
5. Sunlight sensor
6. Multimedia display screen
7. Front passenger display*
8. Power window control switch of front passenger seat
9. Glove box
10. Glove box opening button
11. Hazard warning lamp switch
12. Ignition switch
13. Driver side power window regulator switch

Console

Type I



Type II



1. Front A/C control panel
2. A/C temperature control lever
3. Gearshift lever
4. P gear button
5. A/C airflow control lever
6. Front passenger cup holder
7. Glove compartment at the upper part of console/mobile phone wireless charging*
8. AUTO HOLD switch
9. Electronic parking brake (EPB) switch

12 Charging*

Precautions for charging

1. After charging, please ensure that the charging interface cover is closed. Closing only the charging port cap without the charging port cover may allow water or foreign objects to enter the charging interface, resulting in charge failure.

2. Do not try to perform jump start on a 12V LV battery when charging the traction battery. Otherwise, it may cause damage to the vehicle or charging equipment and could lead to personal injury. Please refer to "Jump start" in Chapter X "Emergency self-handling" for specific methods of the jump start.

3. Do not insert any object other than the charging plug into the charging interface; otherwise, the charging interface may be damaged.

4. Make sure that a special charging power supply is used before connecting the portable charging plug or AC charging pile. Do not use a power strip or 10A-to-16A adapter to connect a portable charging plug for charging.

5. Charging temperature range of traction battery: -20°C~55°C.

6. The temperature of the traction battery is not equal to the ambient temperature. The traction battery's temperature will be consistent with the ambient temperature after being placed in the environment for about 12~18 hours when it is stationary.

7. The traction battery is a ternary lithium battery, and its electrolyte consists of chemical materials. Due to the composition and proportion of chemical materials, charging the traction battery at low temperatures easily leads to its service life attenuation, which poses potential safety hazards. Charging it at a temperature above 0°C as far as possible is recommended.

8. During charging, if the traction battery temperature is low, the vehicle will activate the battery heating system to heat the traction battery. During charging in the heating process, the vehicle will prioritize using the external power source to heat the traction battery. Therefore, it is normal that the SOC of the traction battery remains unchanged, rises slowly, or even dips before climbing.

9. The charging time is greatly affected by ambient temperature and charging pile parameters and may be different under different working conditions. The estimated charging time in this document is for reference only and shall not be used as the basis for judging the quality of vehicle components.

10. When the ambient temperature is lower than 0°C, please try to charge the vehicle immediately after stopping driving.

11. During charging, if the temperature of the traction battery is high, the vehicle will activate the cooling system to cool the traction battery. During charging in the cooling process, the vehicle will prioritize using the external power source to cool the traction battery. Therefore, it is normal that the SOC of the traction battery remains unchanged or rises slowly. When the external power supply is underpowered, the vehicle will also use the traction battery and the external power supply to cool the traction battery at the same time. It is normal that the SOC of the traction battery decreases first and then increases.

12. Do not open or close the engine hood when the charging port cap is open.

13. This vehicle is a hybrid, combining the power of both an engine and a drive motor. Utilizing two sources of propulsion enhances fuel efficiency and reduces exhaust emissions. The engine can also drive the drive motor to charge the traction battery.

Caution

To prevent damage to the vehicle charging equipment, please observe the following requirements:

- Do not close the charging port cap when the charging interface cover is open.
- Do not strike any charging equipment.
- Do not drag the charging plug or charging cable.
- Do not store or use charging equipment in locations where the temperature exceeds 50°C
- Do not place the charging equipment near a heater or other heat sources.
- Do not drive the vehicle without a traction battery heating system to an area with a temperature below 0°C.
- When the weather is cold, choose warm locations such as basements for charging, as this can reduce the charging time.
- When the traction battery temperature is low, full -power charging may not be possible at the initial charging stage. As the power battery temperature increases, the charging power will also increase.
- If the power supply resumes after a short-time outage of the external power grid, the charging equipment will re-start charging automatically(the time for restarting charging may be extended). In case of multiple power failures, please stop charging and check whether the power supply is normal.
- During vehicle charging, if the power grid fluctuates greatly, the charging power will fluctuate, and even charging may be suspended.
- When the traction battery is fully charged, the system will automatically stop charging.

Caution

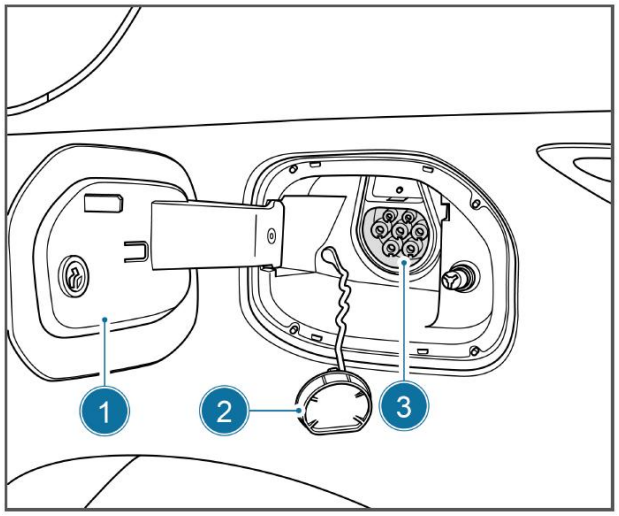
- When using a portable household AC charging plug, pull out the AC charging plug and then disconnect the power plug when stopping charging.

Warning

- During charging, the cooling fan may start at any time. Please ensure that hands, hair, jewelry, or clothing do not come into contact with the cooling fan.
- Do not charge outdoors during thunderstorms, as lightning strikes could damage the charging equipment. Moreover, exposure to heavy rain may lead to damage to the traction battery due to short-circuiting.
- If you detect any pungent odor or see smoke coming out of the vehicle, please stop charging or discharging immediately and keep away from the vehicle as soon as possible.
- Before charging or discharging, please make sure that there is no water or foreign matter in the charging interface, charging plug, or power plug, and that the charging equipment is not damaged or corroded. If any condition is found, do not charge or discharge the vehicle.
- The charging equipment must be well grounded. If the charging equipment fails or is damaged, the grounding wire can reduce the risk of electric shock.
- Before starting the vehicle, make sure that the charging plug has been removed from the charging interface.
- During charging, the cooling fan may start at any time. Please ensure that hands, hair, jewelry, or clothing do not come into contact with the cooling fan.
- Do not charge outdoors during thunderstorms, as lightning strikes could damage the charging equipment. Moreover, exposure to heavy rain may lead to damage to the traction battery due to short-circuiting.
- If you detect any pungent odor or see smoke coming out of the vehicle, please stop charging or discharging immediately and keep away from the vehicle as soon as possible.
- Before charging or discharging, please make sure that there is no water or foreign matter in the charging interface, charging plug, or power plug, and that the charging equipment is not damaged or corroded. If any condition is found, do not charge or discharge the vehicle.
- The charging equipment must be well grounded. If the charging equipment fails or is damaged, the grounding wire can reduce the risk of electric shock.
- Before starting the vehicle, make sure that the charging plug has been removed from the charging interface.

Charging interface

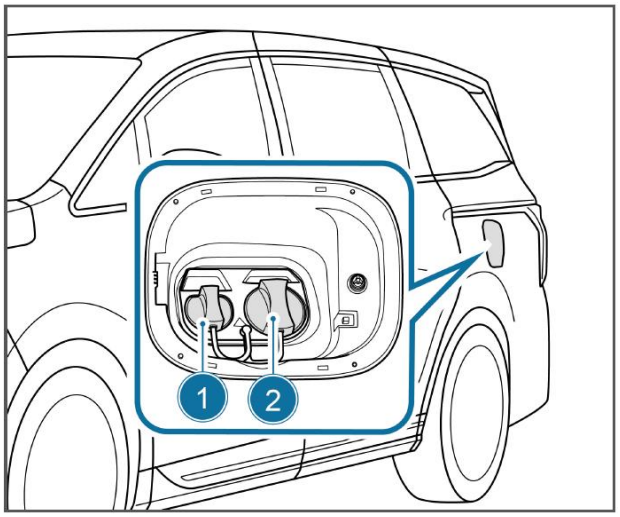
Type I



1. Charging port cap
2. AC charging interface cover
3. AC charging interface

The AC charging interface is located on the left side of the left exterior rearview mirror.

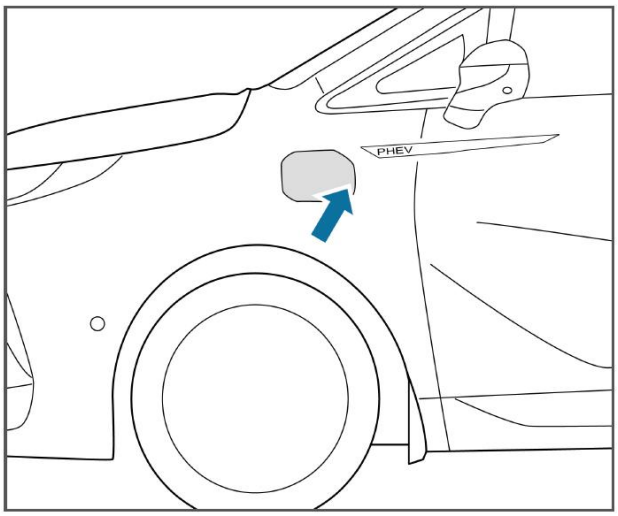
Type II



1. AC charging interface cover
2. DC charging interface cover

The charging interface is located on the rear left side of the vehicle.

Opening and closing of charging port cap



Normal opening

When the door is unlocked, press the right side of the charging port cap to open it, pull out the corresponding charging interface cover, and connect the charging connection equipment with the charging interface.

Normal shutdown

After charging is completed, pull out the charging plug, cover the charging interface cover and the charging port cap in turn, press the right side of the charging port cap to close and lock the charging port cap.

AC charging interface lock

When the AC charging interface is locked:

1. If the vehicle is being charged and in the OFF mode, press the unlock button on the intelligent key twice to unlock the AC charging interface and pull out the charging plug normally.

2. If the vehicle is being charged and not in the OFF mode, press the central door unlock button twice to unlock the AC charging interface and pull out the charging plug.

3. If the vehicle is not being charged, press the unlock button on the intelligent key (with the vehicle in the OFF mode) or the central door unlock button once to unlock the AC charging interface and pull out the charging plug normally.

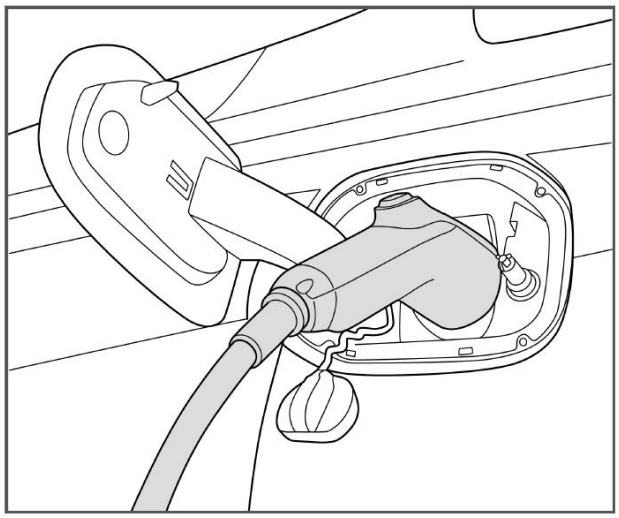
DC charging interface lock

When charging stops, if the DC charging interface is locked, unlock it according to the unlocking steps of the charging pile, and then pull out the charging plug normally.

AC charging with portable charging plug

The portable charging plug is not provided with the vehicle and needs to be prepared by the owner. Please use a portable charging plug that meets the national standards GB/T 20234.1-2015 and GB/T 20234.2-2015. The following only introduces the operation method of the portable charging plug, and the specific configuration is subject to the actual vehicle.

Operation steps



1. Set the gear to the P position and pull up the EPB switch.

2. Before charging the vehicle, it is recommended to put the Start switch in the "OFF" position and turn off the A/C.

The following phenomena may occur if the ignition switch is not set to "OFF" position:

a) The vehicle cannot enter sleep mode after charging.

b) The 12V LV battery is seriously lack of power.

c) The vehicle cannot be started and charged.

3. Open the charging port cap and AC charging interface cover.

4. Take out the portable charging plug.

5. Remove the shield from the portable charging plug.

6. Check whether the three-pin socket of household power supply is reliably grounded.

7. Plug the power plug of the portable charging plug into a household power socket.

8. Connect the portable charging plug to the AC charging interface on the vehicle.

9. During charging, the charging plug will be locked automatically. When charging is completed, if you need to pull out the charging plug, please press and hold the unlock switch at the driver's door or on the intelligent key to unlock the AC charging interface before pulling out the charging plug.

10. Install the portable charging plug shield, pull out the portable charging plug from the household power socket, wind up the portable charging plug, and put it back in the fixing position in the vehicle.

11. Close the AC charging interface cover and charging port cap, press the right side of the charging port cap, and close and lock the charging port cap.

Danger

When charging with a household power supply, ensure that the selected socket and patch cords can handle a current no less than the rated current specified on the nameplate of the AC charging socket. Ensure that the three-pin socket of the household power supply is reliably grounded; otherwise, there is a danger of electric shock.

Estimated charging time of household 16A socket

For AC charging with a portable charging plug, the estimated time for charging the traction battery from 7% to 100% is shown in the following table (the endurance is marked according to CLTC standard):

The Temperature of Traction Battery	Estimated Time	
	Endurance mileage of 100 km	Endurance mileage of 200 km
20℃~ 45℃	About 6.5 hours	About 11.5 hours

Note

- The charging time of the traction batteries may vary depending on different factors, such as outside temperature, service life, or charging current. The time in the table is for reference only and shall not be used as the actual basis of charging time.
- The charging system will automatically adjust the charging time according to temperature changes to ensure the best performance of the traction battery.

Charging with AC charging pile

The AC charging pile is not equipped with the vehicle and needs to be provided by the owner. Please use an AC charging pile that conforms to national standards GB/T 39752-2021 and GB/T 20234.2-2015.

For specific operation methods, please refer to the instructions for the purchased charging pile.

Operation steps

1. Set the gear to the P position and pull up the EPB switch.

2. Before charging the vehicle, it is recommended to put the Start switch in the "OFF" position and turn off the A/C.

The following phenomena may occur if the ignition switch is not set to "OFF" position:

a) The vehicle cannot enter sleep mode after charging.

b) The 12V LV battery is seriously lack of power.

c) The vehicle cannot be started and charged.

3. Open the charging port cap and AC charging interface cover.

4. Remove the charging plug from the AC charging pile.

5. Connect the charging plug to the AC charging interface on the vehicle. If the connection is normal, the charging connection indicator on the combination instrument will be normally on.

6. Start the charging function according to the operation steps and methods indicated on the AC charging pile.

7. During charging, the charging plug is locked automatically. When charging is completed, if you need to pull out the charging plug, please press and hold the unlock switch at the driver's door or on the intelligent key to unlock the AC charging interface before pulling out the charging plug.

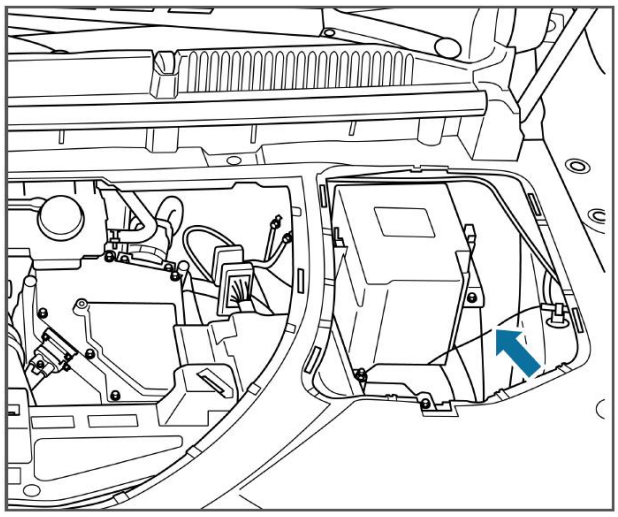
8. Turn off the power supply of the AC charging pile, and put the charging plug on the AC charging pile back to the designated position.

9. Close the AC charging interface cover and charging port cap, press the right side of the charging port cap, and close and lock the charging port cap.

Emergency unlocking of AC charging plug

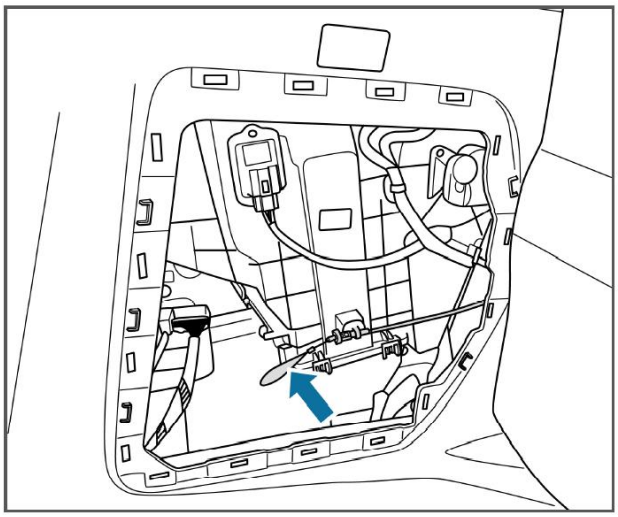
When the vehicle is under AC charging, if the charging plug cannot be unlocked due to power failure or other reasons, it can be unlocked as follows.

Type I



Open the engine hood, remove the trim panel of the engine compartment fuse box, and pull the emergency opening cable of the AC charging plug.

Type II



Open the trunk lid, remove the rear left side wall maintenance cover, and pull the AC charging plug emergency opening cable.

Estimated charging time of AC charging pile

On the premise that the power of the AC charging pile is 7kW, the estimated time for charging the traction battery from 7% to 100% is shown in the following table (the endurance is marked according to CLTC standard):

The Temperature of Traction Battery	Estimated Time	
	Endurance mileage of 100 km	Endurance mileage of 200 km
20℃~ 45℃	About 6.5 hours	About 11.5 hours

Note

- The charging time of the traction batteries may vary depending on different factors, such as outside temperature, service life, or charging current. The time in the table is for reference only and shall not be used as the actual basis of charging time.
- The charging system will automatically adjust the charging time according to temperature changes to ensure the best performance of the traction battery.

220V AC exterior discharging

Operation steps

1. Set the gear to the P position and pull up the EPB switch.

2. Please confirm that the combination instrument shows that the traction battery capacity is greater than 10% (discharging is prohibited when it is lower than 10%).

3. Take out the discharging plug and remove its shield.

4. Open the charging port cap and the AC charging interface cover, and connect the discharging plug to the AC charging interface on the vehicle.

5. Press the switch (if any) on the power strip to discharge.

6. When discharging, if it is necessary to lock the discharging plug (if this function is provided), make sure that all doors are closed tightly. Press the lock button on the intelligent key or, while carrying the intelligent key, press the lock area on the driver's door handle to lock the doors. For more details, please refer to the "Door opening and closing" section in Chapter V.

Stop 220V AC exterior discharging

1. Turn off the electrical equipment and press the power strip switch (if any) to disconnect the power supply.

2. When discharge is completed, if you need to unplug the discharging plug, first press the unlock button on the intelligent key, or hold the unlock area on the inside of the driver's door handle while carrying the intelligent key, to unlock the doors. For more details, refer to the "Door opening and closing" section in Chapter V. Once the doors are unlocked, press the release button on the discharge plug and remove the discharge plug.

3. Install the discharging plug shield, and then put it back in the designated position and fix it.

4. Close the AC charging interface cover and charging port cap, press the right side of the charging

port cap, and close and lock the charging port cap.

Caution

- When the traction battery SOC is lower than 10%, it will automatically stop discharging and the AC discharging function cannot be used(to ensure the vehicle can drive properly, when the fuel level in the tank is low, the lower limit for the discharge may be dynamically raised to 30%).
- The charging interface for 220V AC discharging is the same as that for AC charging, so the locking and unlocking operations of the discharging plug are also the same as those of the AC charging plug.
- When using a discharging plug for vehicle-to-vehicle charging, please use a portable charging plug that meets the national standards. At this time, it is normal that the charging plug grounding fault indicator illuminates.
- When using the AC discharge function, it is recommended to set the start switch to the "OFF" position. When in the "ON" position, the vehicle will increase power consumption from the traction battery, and it is necessary to monitor the SOC of the traction battery in real time.

Warning

- Do not impact or drag the discharging equipment, and do not pull out the discharging cable.
- Do not store or use the discharging equipment in a place with water or near heat sources.
- Please use the specified discharging equipment. Otherwise, safety accidents may be caused.
- Do not use the discharging equipment when the insulation layer or power strip is damaged.
- When using the AC discharging function, please use a discharging plug conforming to standards GBT20234.1-2023 and GB/T 20234.2- 2015; otherwise, it may cause vehicle failure or a safety accident.
- When using the AC discharging function, it is recommended to put the start switch in the "OFF" position and turn off the A/C.
- When using the AC discharging function, the total power of electrical appliances shall not exceed 3.3 kW; otherwise, it may cause safety accidents.

Charging with DC charging pile

The DC charging pile is not equipped with the vehicle and needs to be provided by the owner. Please use a DC charging pile that meets the national standards GB/T20234.3-2023 and GBT 27930- 2023.

The following only introduces the operation method of DC charging piles.

Operation steps

1. Set the gear to the P position and pull up the EPB switch.

2. Before charging the vehicle, it is recommended to put the Start switch in the "OFF" position and turn off the A/C.

The following phenomena may occur if the ignition switch is not set to "OFF" position:

a) The vehicle cannot enter sleep mode after charging.

b) The 12V LV battery is seriously lack of power.

c) The vehicle cannot be started and charged.

3. Open the charging port cap and DC charging interface cover.

4. Insert the DC charging plug into the DC charging interface.

5. Conduct DC charging according to the operation instructions of the DC charging pile.

6. After the vehicle's charging is complete, the automatic control system of the AC charging pile can automatically terminate the charging session. Alternatively, you can manually stop the charging according to the operating instructions of the DC charging pile.

7. After charging, pull out the charging plug and put it back to its original position.

8. After charging, put back the DC charging interface shield and charging port cap, press the right side of the charging port cap, and close and lock the charging port cap.

9. During DC charging, if the DC charging pile detects abnormality and stops charging, "Charging pile fault" will be displayed on the combination instrument. In this case, it is recommended to replace the charging pile for charging. If "Charging pile fault" still appears on the combination instrument after replacement with a different one, it is recommended to contact a Dongfeng Forthing authorized service station for inspection of the vehicle.

Caution

- It is recommended to use DC charging piles conforming to GB/T 20234.3-2023 and GBT 27930-2023 for DC charging; otherwise, it may cause malfunctions or fire, leading to personal injury or death.
- Before DC charging, please read the operating instructions on the DC charging pile carefully and use it in strict accordance with the operating instructions.

Caution

- It is strictly prohibited to pull out or insert the DC charging plug at will during charging. If you need to stop charging, please operate in strict accordance with the operating instructions on the DC charging pile.
- After charging stops, the DC charging pile will still run for a while. Pull out the DC charging plug after the charging pile stops running.

Estimated charging time of DC charging pile

On the premise that the DC charging pile can output 80kw charging power, the estimated time for charging the traction battery from 0% to 80% is shown in the following table:

The Temperature of Traction Battery	Estimated Time
-20℃~ 0℃	About 1.5 hours
0℃~ 15℃	About 1 hour
15℃~ 45℃	About 40 minutes
45℃~ 55℃	About 1 hour

Note

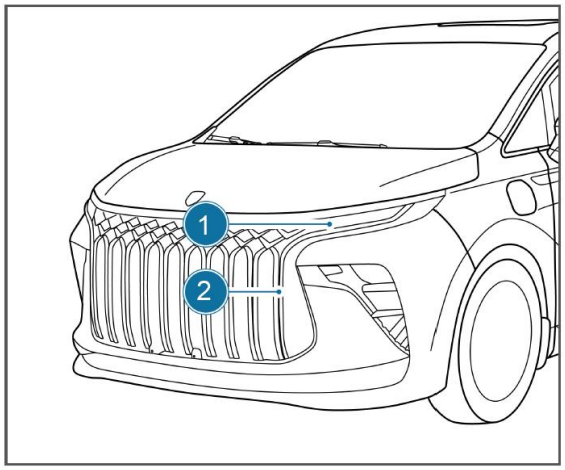
- The charging time of the traction batteries may vary depending on different factors, such as outside temperature, service life, or charging current. The time in the table is for reference only and shall not be used as the actual basis of charging time.
- The charging system will automatically adjust the charging time according to temperature changes to ensure the best performance of the traction battery.
- According to the traction battery properties, it is recommended to fully charge the power battery at least once within one week after frequent use of the vehicle. If the vehicle is not fully charged after long-distance driving, there may be phenomena such as rapid SOC increase during the later stage of charging or an extended duration at the end of charging. These phenomena are normal and have no damage to the traction battery.

During charging, changes in traction battery temperature and grid voltage will change the charging output power of the charging pile, resulting in a change in the remaining charging time displayed on the combination instrument. This is a normal phenomenon. The lower the traction battery temperature, the longer the charging time required.

To prolong the service life of the traction battery, the charging current requested by the vehicle from the DC charging pile will gradually decrease as the SOC increases. After the SOC is greater than 80%, the vehicle will switch from high-power charging to low-power charging. It takes about 40 minutes to charge from 80% to 100%. When the grid voltage is stable, the time it takes for the traction battery to be charged from 80% to 100% is the estimated time listed in the table plus an additional 40 minutes.

Charging status indicator

Turn on the exterior light signal switch. When the vehicle is being charged, the exterior lighting will illuminate in coordination with the charging state, indicating that the vehicle has started charging.



During charging: ② There is a bright spot moving from the top downwards, eventually entering a constantly illuminated area that displays the current battery level; ① The breathing light illuminates for a total of 30 seconds.

Charging completed: Both ① and ② are constantly illuminated.

Charging fault: Neither ① nor ② is illuminated.

Scheduled charging

Enter the presetting interface

Tap [Vehicle control] - [Vehicle settings] - [Charging] - [Scheduled slow charging] on the home

page of the multimedia display screen in turn to turn on/off the scheduled charging feature.

Conduct presetting settings

Set the scheduled charging time, with the option to start every day or just once. Select the charging time according to your needs.

Caution

- When the vehicle is charged within the scheduled time, if the charging plug is not removed but there is no AC power supply, the timing will continue.
- The start time for the scheduled charging cannot be earlier than the current time.

Scheduled charging cannot be performed in any of the following cases:

- The charging pile does not work (including power grid outage, charging pile fault, etc.).
- The vehicle has a charging prohibition fault.
- You need to set scheduled charging first, and then insert the AC charging plug. Scheduled charging cannot be set when the charging plug is inserted.

Scheduled traction battery thermal insulation

The traction battery insulation reservation function can be activated through the multimedia display screen. After a full charge is scheduled in cold weather, the traction battery insulation reservation function can be activated about 1 hour before driving to heat the power battery to an appropriate temperature range and improve the endurance mileage of the vehicle.

Enter the presetting interface

Tap [Vehicle control] - [Vehicle settings] - [Charging] - [Scheduled slow-charge battery thermal insulation] on the home page of the multimedia display screen in turn to enable/disable the traction battery thermal insulation reservation function.

Conduct presetting settings

1. Set the traction battery thermal insulation time, with options to activate daily or just once. Choose the thermal insulation time according to your needs.

2. This feature, when engaged in cold temperatures, prioritizes the use of electric power from the charging pile to keep the traction battery warm. This enhances the endurance mileage of the power battery in a low-temperature environment but will increase the charging power consumption.

3. It is recommended to use this feature when charging with a charging plug that exceeds a 32A specification. Otherwise, there may be a situation where the charging pile does not have enough power, and the electricity stored in the traction battery is used to complete the plug-in insulation.

Caution

- If the vehicle is currently being charged (not fully charged) and the scheduled time for the traction battery insulation has been reached, the vehicle will automatically enter battery insulation mode after it has been fully charged.
- The thermal insulation function of the traction

Caution

battery will be automatically turned off 1 hour after it is turned on.

The scheduled thermal insulation of the traction battery will not be possible in any of the following cases:

- The AC charging plug is not connected.
- The battery pack temperature is greater than 10°C.
- The charging pile does not work (including power grid outage, charging pile fault, etc.).
- The vehicle has a charging prohibition fault.

The upper limit setting of traction battery charging energy

Tap [Vehicle control] - [Vehicle settings] - [Charging] - [Upper limit setting of charging energy] on the home page of the multimedia display screen in turn, and tap [+] or [-] to increase or decrease by 5%, with the adjustable range between 80% ~ 100%.

Common troubleshooting for charging

Symptom	Possible Cause	Solution
Unable to charge or unable to discharge at 220V	The vehicle is not in P gear	Shift to the P position before charging.
	The charging equipment is not connected correctly	Check whether the charging equipment is connected correctly and charge in the correct way.
	Traction battery temperature too high or too low	Check the traction battery temperature to ensure that it is within the allowable range. If it's too hot or too cold, cooling or heating is required before charging.
	12V LV battery voltage is too low	If the voltage of the 12V LV battery is lower than 9V, charge it or jump-start the vehicle before charging. Please refer to "Jump start" in Chapter X "Self-service emergency treatment".
	The vehicle is faulty	If the vehicle is faulty, please first confirm whether the warning lamp on the combination instrument illuminates or indicates a charging fault. If a warning or charging fault is displayed, stop charging and contact a Dongfeng Forthing authorized service station.
Unable to charge	The traction battery has been charged to the set charge level	If the battery has been charged to the set level, charging cannot continue. If you need to continue charging, please reset it. The upper limit of charging power can be set in "Charging" on the multimedia display screen.
	The charging power supply is not grounded	Check whether there is any relevant fault display. If the relevant fault is displayed, stop charging and contact a Dongfeng Forthing authorized service station.
	The charging source is not supplying power normally	
	The power source being used does not conform to the State Grid's requirement of 50HZ, 200V	Check whether there is any relevant fault display. If the relevant fault is displayed, stop charging and contact a Dongfeng Forthing authorized service station.
	The traction battery is fully charged	Unplug the charging plug, start the vehicle, and check whether the power meter of the vehicle points to 100%. If the display shows 100%, the traction battery is fully charged, and charging stops.
	Scheduled charging is set	Check if the scheduled charging has been set and the scheduled time has not yet been reached. If it has been set, please either cancel the scheduled charging or wait until the scheduled time. Refer to the "Scheduled charging" section in this chapter.
	The fast charging pile is malfunctioning	Confirm whether the combination instrument prompts a charging pile fault. If "Charging pile fault" is displayed, it indicates that the fault is caused by abnormal fast charging pile. It is recommended to replace the charging pile for charging. If "Charging pile fault" is still displayed after replacement, it is recommended to contact a Dongfeng Forthing authorized service station for inspection.
	Charging facilities do not meet the requirements of national standards	Use a portable charging plug or charging pile that meets the requirements of national standards for charging.
Unable to execute the scheduled charging	Charging plug not connected	Correctly connect the charging plug.
	Immediate charging button is pressed	When immediate charging is selected, scheduled charging cannot be performed.

24 Charging*

Symptom	Possible Cause	Solution
function	No scheduled charging timer has been set	Set the schedule for the scheduled charging timer. Refer to the "Scheduled charging" section in this chapter.
	The scheduled charging function is not set correctly	Please perform the scheduled charging operation in the correct order. Refer to the "Scheduled charging" section in this chapter.
Charging stops halfway	The power supply is disconnected	Check whether the power supply is disconnected. If so, please connect the power supply and re-execute the charging steps for charging.
	The charging plug is disconnected	Check whether the charging plug is disconnected. If so, please connect it and re-execute the charging steps for charging.
	Traction battery temperature too high	Check the traction battery temperature to ensure that it is within the allowable range. In case of overheating, please cool it for a while before recharging.
	The pause or stop button in the charging equipment has been pressed	Check whether the pause button or stop button in the charging equipment is pressed. If pressed, the charging device needs to be activated to restart charging.
	The vehicle is faulty	If the vehicle is faulty, please first confirm whether the warning lamp on the combination instrument illuminates or indicates a charging fault. If a warning or charging fault is displayed, stop charging and contact a Dongfeng Forthing authorized service station.
Discharging stops halfway	The power supply is disconnected	Check whether the power supply is disconnected. If so, please connect the power supply and re-execute the discharging steps for discharging.
	Discharging plug is disconnected	Check whether the discharging plug has been disconnected. If so, please connect it and re-execute the discharging steps for discharging.
	Traction battery temperature too high	Check the traction battery temperature to ensure that it is within the allowable range. In case of overheating, please cool it for a while before discharging.
	The vehicle is faulty	If the vehicle is faulty, please first confirm whether the warning lamp on the combination instrument illuminates or indicates a charging fault. If a warning or charging fault is displayed, stop charging and contact a Dongfeng Forthing authorized service station.

Seat belts

Introduction to seat belt

In accidents caused by emergency braking, sudden turning, and collision, the seat belts will restrain the driver and passengers on the seats to prevent their bodies from moving forward, thus protecting them from secondary impacts. Correct use of seat belts can reduce injuries to passengers in the vehicle.

Caution

- Before driving, make sure that all passengers in the vehicle have worn seat belts correctly and always use them when the vehicle is running. Seat belts can protect the driver and passengers to the greatest extent in an accident.
- The seat belts in the vehicle are mainly designed based on the body shape of adults and not suitable for children. Please select a suitable child restraint system according to your child's age and body shape.
- If the seat belt or retractor is damaged or abnormal, please contact an authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing immediately for confirmation and handling. Do not use the corresponding seat before handling.

Seat belt retractor

Each seat belt is equipped with a seat belt retractor. During normal driving, the retractor keeps a certain tension on the seat belt so that the driver and passengers can still move freely on the seat. In case of an emergency, the retractor will automatically tighten to restrain the driver and the passenger on the seats to avoid injury. In case of abnormal locking function of the retractor, please contact an authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing.

Seat belt pretensioner *

When the vehicle suffers from some serious frontal or side collisions, the seat belt pretensioner will automatically tighten to protect the driver and passengers quickly.

Caution

The pretensioner may not be activated in case of a slight frontal collision, side collision, rear collision, or overturn.

Warning

Users are not allowed to repair, adjust or disassemble the seat belt and retractor by themselves. If maintenance or replacement is required, please contact an authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing.

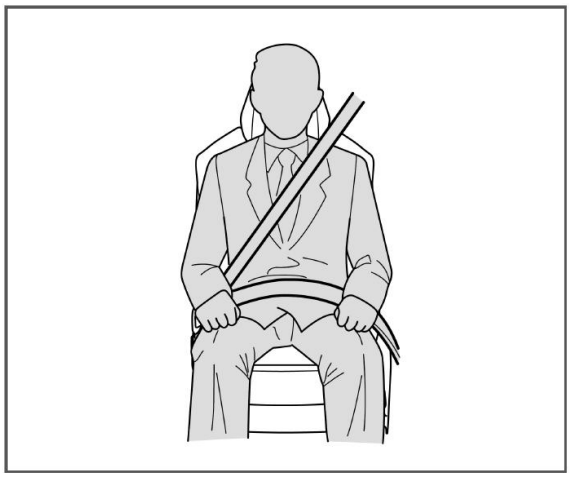
Seat belt reminder *

The vehicle is equipped with a driver's seat belt reminder, and some models also have front passenger's and middle passenger's seat belt reminders. When it is detected that the driver's seat belt in the vehicle is not fastened, the corresponding warning lamp on the combination instrument will illuminate, and the buzzer will continue to alarm until the driver and passengers in the vehicle fasten the seat belt.

Precautions for using seat belt

Please read the following contents carefully and strictly observe them, which will help you master the correct operation method.

Correct use of seat belt



1. Pull out the shoulder belt diagonally across the entire shoulder without contacting the neck or falling from the shoulder.

2. Wear the waist seat belt as low as possible across the hips.

3. Adjust the position of the seat backrest to make it in a relatively comfortable position.

4. Do not twist the seat belt.

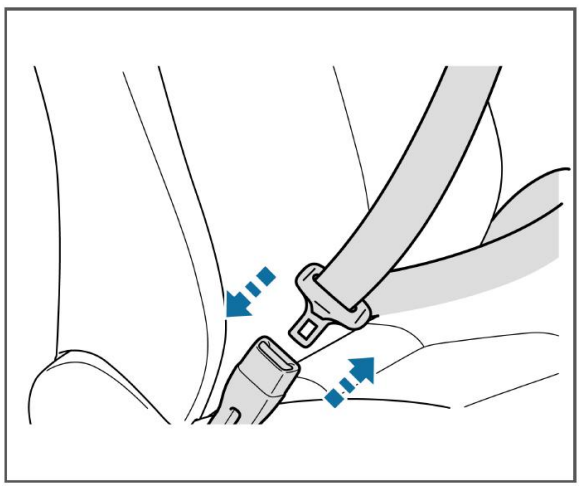
Caution

- Be sure to wear the seat belt correctly.
- Do not cross the seat belt across your lower abdomen. Otherwise, the seat belt will strongly press against your lower abdomen in case of an accident.
- Do not place the shoulder seat belt under your arm.
- Tighten the seat belt as much as possible. A loose seat belt will slide from a hard part of your body to a soft part (e.g., belly), increasing the risk of injury.

Warning

- Incorrect wearing of seat belt may cause injury in case of accident or emergency braking or sudden driving.
- The shoulder belt must go over the middle of the shoulder without tightening the arm or neck.
- The waist belt must pass the front of the hip without tightening the abdomen. The seat belt must be flat and close to the hip. If necessary, slightly tighten the seat belt.
- Pregnant women should also, like other passengers, keep the seat belt across the hip as low as possible and stretch the shoulder belt obliquely along the shoulder to prevent it from touching the raised abdomen. If the seat belt is not fastened properly, it may cause injuries to the pregnant woman and fetus in case of emergency braking or collision.
- Do not tilt the seat backrest excessively when the vehicle is running. The seat belt can provide effective protection only when the backrest angle is about 25°; otherwise, it may cause serious injuries or death in case of an accident.
- Do not twist the seat belt when wearing it.
- Do not adjust the seat belt height during driving.
- Do not pull the seat belt away from your body with your hands.
- Seat belts shall not be tied to hard or fragile objects, such as glasses, ballpoint pens or keys. Do not alter the direction of the seat belt by means of belt clamps, retaining rings or similar objects.

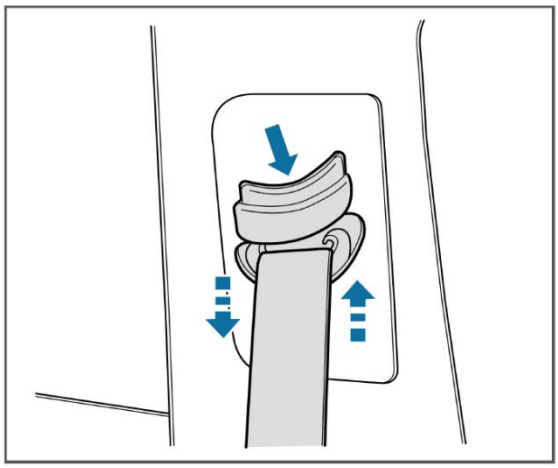
Fastening and unfastening of seat belt



Fastening: Pull out the seat belt from the retractor, cross the seat belt across your chest and hips, and insert the latch into the buckle until you hear a "click", which indicates that the seat belt is locked.

Unfastening: Press the red release button at the buckle socket and pull out the latch.

Seat belt shoulder belt height adjustment



1. Press the upper part of the seat belt shoulder belt height adjuster, move it up and down to the desired position, and then release it until a "click" sound is heard.

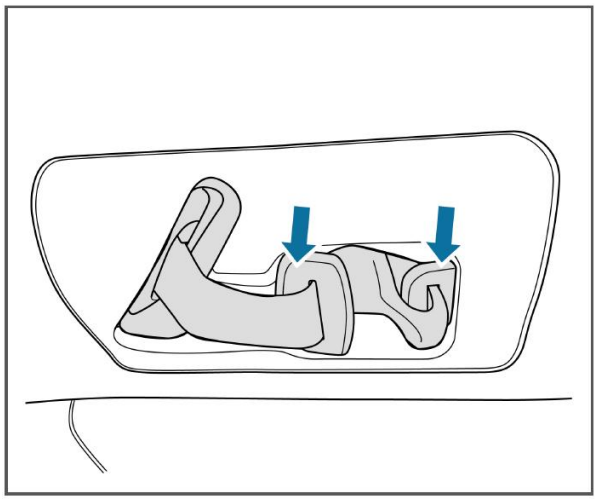
2. Try to move the adjuster down without pressing to make sure it is locked in place.

Force-limiting function of seat belt *

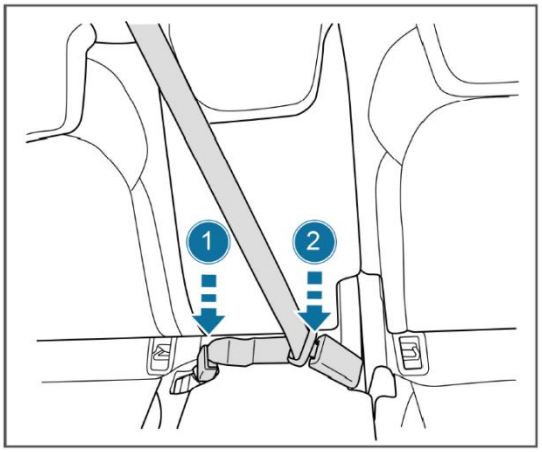
Some models feature the force-limiting function for the front and middle seat belts. When the vehicle suffers from some serious frontal or side collisions, the force limit function will limit the force acting on the seat belt to a certain extent to relieve the impact on the chest of the occupant.

Rear middle seat belt

Wearing seat belt



1. Pull out 2 latches of the seat belt from the roof above the rear middle seat.



2. Pull the seat belt across your body, and be careful not to twist it.

3. There are two latches on the seat belt. First, insert the small latch ① into the small buckle on the right side of the seat, and then pull the large latch in the middle of the seat belt to insert it into the large buckle ② on the left side of the seat.

4. A "click" sound indicates that the seat belt is securely locked.

Unlocking seat belt

1. Press the release button of the large buckle ② to unlock the large latch.

2. Then insert the large latch of the middle seat belt or the latch of the rear-row side seat belt into the side of small buckle to assist in unlocking the small buckle ①.

3. Insert the two latches into the roof in the order of the small latch first and then the large latch.

Work related to seat belt

1. Regularly check the status of all seat belts.

2. Keep the seat belt clean.

3. Keep foreign matters and liquid away from the seat belt, latch plate, and buckle of the seat belt lock.

Airbag

Introduction to airbag

The Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) is an auxiliary restraint device of the seat belt. When the degree of front or side collision meets the deployment requirements of the airbag, the SRS will be inflated and deployed to reduce the impact injuries to the head and chest of the driver and passengers.

The airbag is only designed to provide extra protection. Airbags cannot replace seat belts. Seat belts must always be fastened.

Airbag function

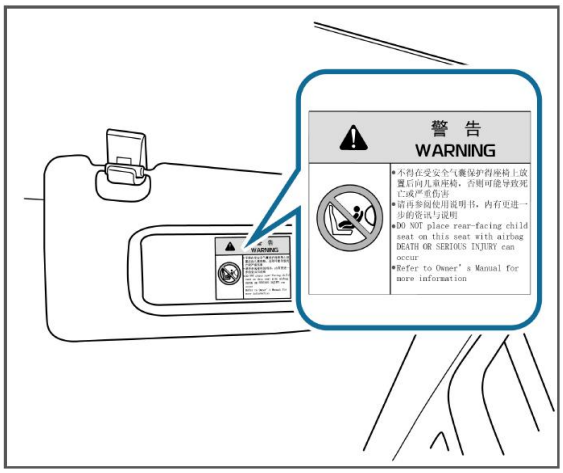
In case of a frontal or lateral collision accident, the airbag can restrain the passengers from moving towards the collision direction, so as to protect them.

Key factors affecting airbag deployment include the type of accident, collision angle, vehicle speed and characteristics of objects contacted by the vehicle. Therefore, the airbag may not be triggered in every collision accident.

Warning

- When the vehicle is running, all passengers must wear seat belts correctly and keep correct sitting posture.
- The airbag system can be triggered only once. Any airbag triggered in an accident must be replaced.
- Do not attempt to modify any component of the airbag system.
- The airbag can only provide auxiliary protection. Do not rely solely on the airbag for protection.

Precautions for use of airbag



1. There is an airbag warning sign on the right sun visor. Do not place a rear-facing child safety seat on the seat protected by the airbag (activated). Otherwise, the inflated frontal airbag will impact the child with great force and cause serious injury in case of a collision accident.

2. Do not place any object on the dashboard or attach to the steering wheel trim cover or other positions, as these objects may be ejected when the airbag is deployed, resulting in casualties of the driver and passengers.

3. Do not hang hangers or other hard objects on the clothes hooks. When the side curtain airbag deploys, these items may eject and cause casualties to passengers.

4. Do not carry objects on the front passenger's seat. In case of sudden braking or emergency driving, these objects may enter the expansion range of the airbag and be thrown away when the airbag is triggered, bringing life risk.

5. Do not hold objects in your hands or children and pets in your arms while the vehicle is running. Otherwise, the risk of injury will increase when the airbags are triggered.

6. The temperature is very high after the airbag is deployed. Do not touch any relevant components immediately.

7. When the airbag deploys, it will be accompanied by a loud noise, which may temporarily affect hearing.

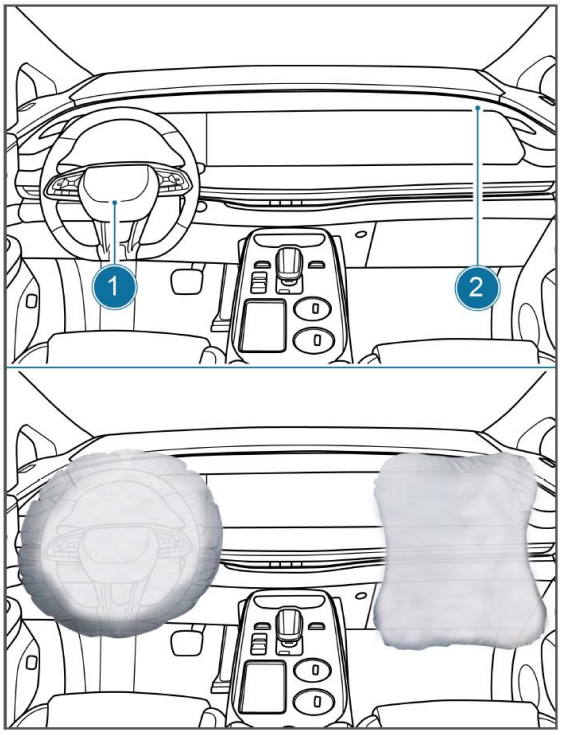
8. If the airbag feels difficult to breathe after deployment, please open the door or window for ventilation or leave the vehicle under the condition of ensuring safety, and flush the residue on the body as soon as possible to avoid skin irritation.

9. Do not use detergent containing solvent to clean the surfaces of the instrument panel and airbag module. Otherwise, the surface of airbag module will be changed, resulting in increased risk of personal injury due to falling plastic parts when the airbag is triggered.

10. If the part where the airbag is located is damaged or broken, please contact an authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing for replacement.

Position and deployment of airbag

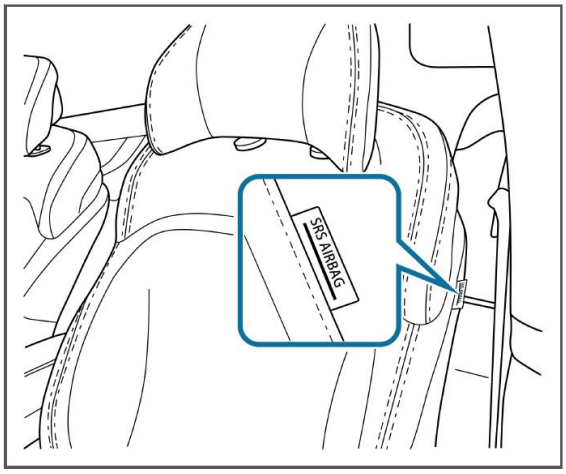
Front airbag



1. Driver seat airbag
2. Front passenger airbag

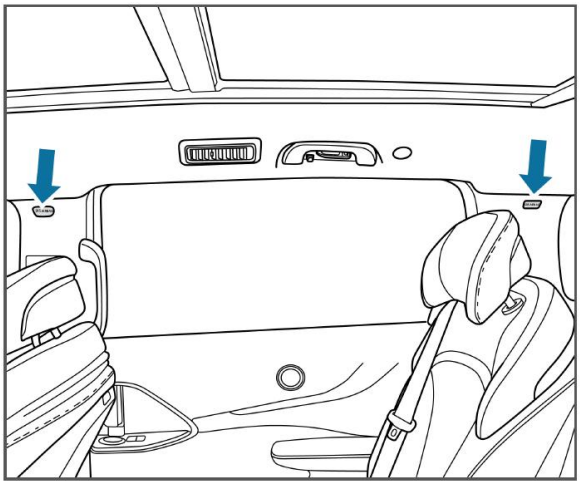
The front airbag helps to protect the head and chest of the driver and front passenger from the impact of interior components.

Front airbag *



The front side airbags are installed in the backrests of both the driver seat and the front passenger seat; the backrests are marked with the sign “SRS AIRBAG”. In case of medium to heavy lateral collisions, the front side airbags will function simultaneously through inflation and seat belts to reduce the severity of personal injuries.

Side curtain airbag*



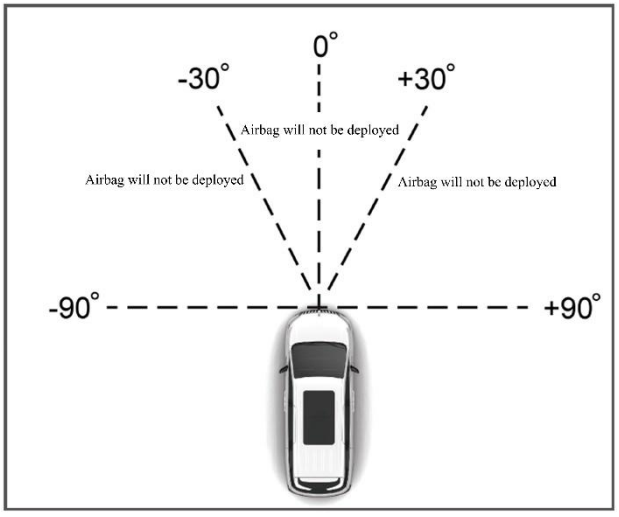
The side curtain airbags are mounted above the vehicle doors on the left and the right sides, where the signs of "SRS AIRBAG" are marked. In case of medium to heavy side collisions, the side curtain airbag will be deployed to protect the heads of the driver, front passenger, middle row, and rear outer passengers from hitting the inner wall of the vehicle.

Warning

As the front side airbag and side curtain airbag are deployed with considerable speed and force, do not approach the head near the deployment area of the side airbag and side curtain airbag during driving. Otherwise, personal injury may be caused.

Deployment condition of front airbag

The front airbags are deployed when the vehicle collides with a solid wall at a speed of 25 km/h or more.

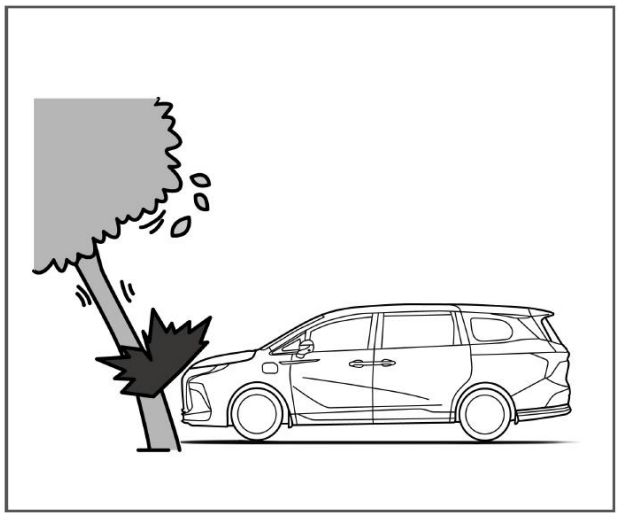


The front airbag deploys in case of a severe impact within the included angle of ±30° from the front of the vehicle.

Deployment conditions of front side airbag and side curtain airbag *

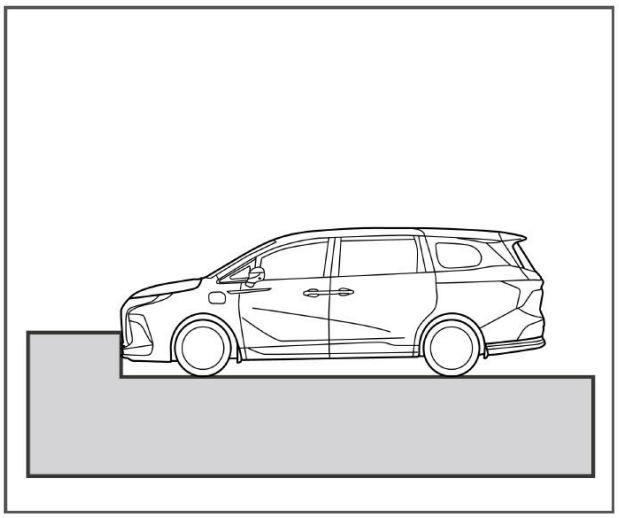
The front side airbag and side curtain airbag deploy when the vehicle experiences a moderate to severe side impact and reaches the designed threshold.

Conditions under which front airbags may not deploy

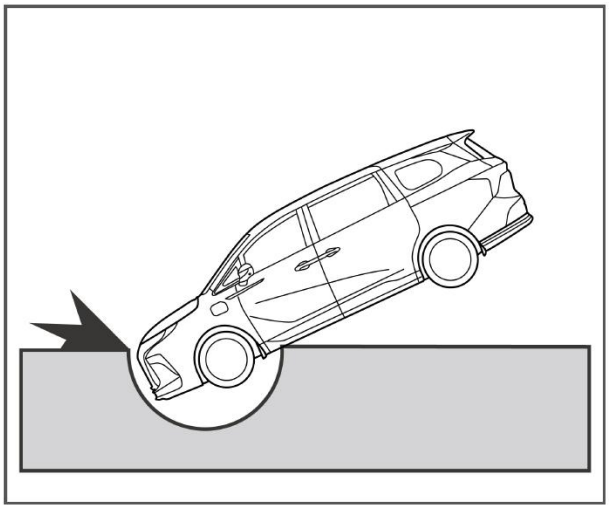


Vehicles that do not start.

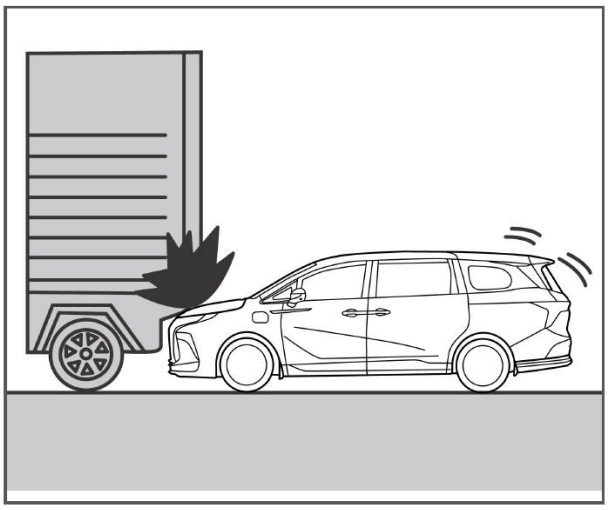
The vehicle collides with easily deformable objects such as trees.



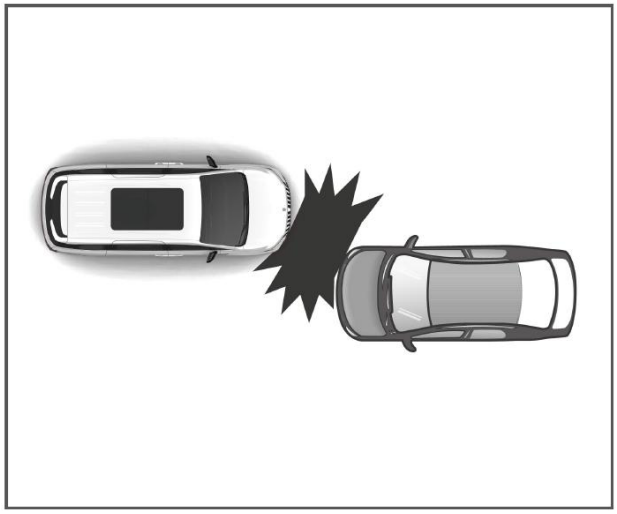
The vehicle collides violently with low objects such as steps during driving.



The vehicle suddenly falls into a deep pit or trench.

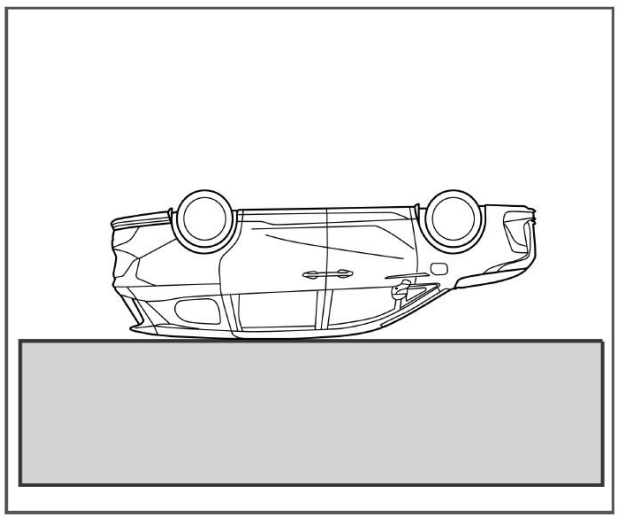


The vehicle hits the rear end of (runs under) a truck.



The vehicle collides with a stationary vehicle of the same weight.

When the impact direction and impact point deviate from the center of the vehicle by more than 30°.



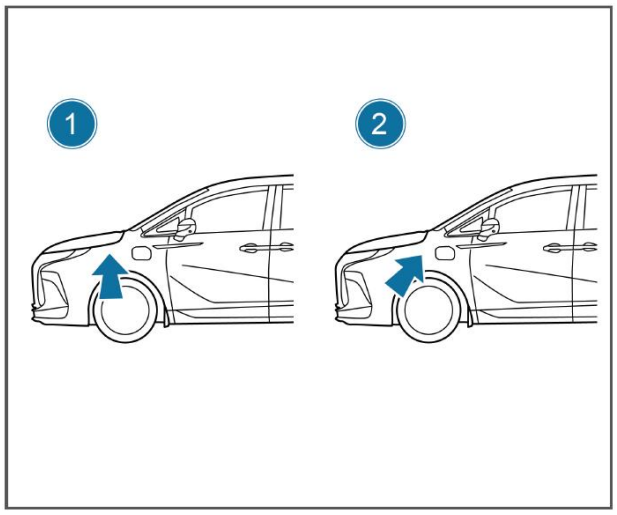
Rollover.

Side collision, rear collision, slight frontal collision.

The airbag system is faulty.

Other special circumstances.

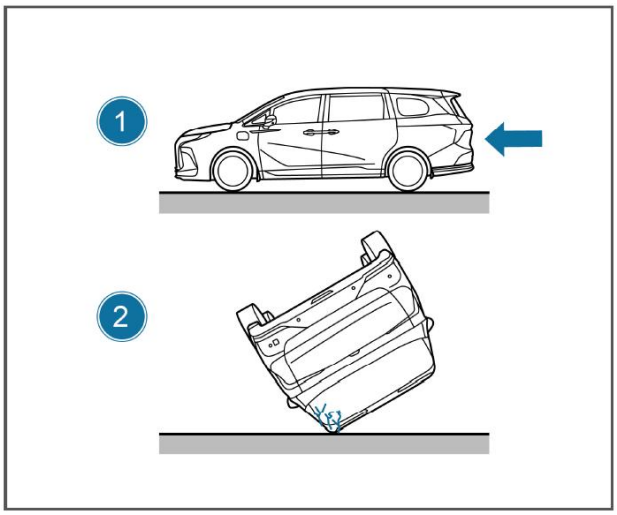
Types of collision without deployment of front side airbags and side curtain airbags *



1. The side collision of the body (not the passenger compartment)

2. Side collision at a certain angle to the vehicle body

The front side airbag and side curtain airbag may not be deployed if the side collision of the vehicle at a certain angle to the vehicle body, or the side collision of vehicle body is not the passenger compartment.



1. Rear collision

2. Tip-over

The front side airbag and side curtain airbag may not be deployed in case of rear collision, rollover, low -speed side collision and low-speed frontal collision.

Airbag indicator

Before driving, put the Start switch in the "ON" position. The SRS will perform self-inspection and the airbag fault indicator will illuminate and then go out a few seconds later.

In case of the following situations, please contact an authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing:

1. When the Start switch is turned to the "ON" position, the airbag indicator does not illuminate.
2. After the vehicle is started, the airbag indicator remains on.
3. The airbag indicator illuminates or flashes when the vehicle is running.

Event Data Recorder (EDR)

The vehicle is equipped with EDR, and the recorded data can be used for collision accident analysis. Specific recorded parameters are detailed in the following table:

S/N	Parameter Name	Designation	Unit
1	Longitudinal delta-V	Change in longitudinal speed of the vehicle.	km/h
2	Maximum record of longitudinal delta-V	Maximum cumulative change in longitudinal vehicle speed.	km/h
3	Maximum recorded longitudinal Delta-V time	The time when the maximum cumulative change in longitudinal vehicle speed is reached.	ms
4	Clipping sign	It indicates the time point when the EDR acquisition acceleration (horizontal and longitudinal) reaches the sensor range for the first time.	ms
5	Vehicle speed	Wheel-hub linear speed.	km/h
6	Service brake, on or off	Used to detect whether the driver depresses the brake pedal.	/
7	Driver's seat belt status	Driver's seat belt buckled or unbuckled.	/
8	Percentage of actual position of accelerator pedal to its fully-pressed position	The percentage of the actual accelerator pedal position to the fully depressed position by the driver.	/
9	Revolutions per minute	Revolutions per minute of main crankshaft of the vehicle's engine.	r/min
10	Power-on cycle during event	Number of power cycles of the ECU for recording EDR data from the first service time of the ECU to the event occurrence time.	Period
11	Power on cycle when reading	Number of power cycles of the ECU for recording EDR data from the first service time of the ECU to the data reading time.	Period
12	Complete status of event data record	Whether the event is completely recorded.	/
13	Time interval between current event and previous event	Time interval between two events.	s
14	Vehicle identification number	Vehicle VIN	/
15	ECU hardware No. for recording EDR data	Hardware number of the EDR device.	/
16	ECU S/N for recording EDR data	Product serial number of the EDR device.	/
17	ECU software No. for recording EDR data	Software number of the EDR device.	/
18	Longitudinal acceleration	Component of vector acceleration at a point on the vehicle in the X-axis direction.	G
19	Lateral acceleration	Component of vector acceleration at a point on the vehicle in Y-axis direction.	g
20	Lateral delta-V	Change in lateral speed of the vehicle. Lateral delta-V is only	km/h

S/N	Parameter Name	Designation	Unit
		the component of total delta-V in the Y-axis direction.	
21	Maximum record of lateral delta-V	Maximum value of cumulative change in the vehicle speed along Y-axis direction recorded by EDR.	km/h
22	Maximum record of square of resultant delta-V	The maximum value of the sum of squares of longitudinal delta-V and lateral delta-V recorded by EDR.	km/h* km/h
23	Time elapsed for reaching maximum record of lateral delta-V	EDR records the time taken for the cumulative change of vehicle speed in Y-axis direction to reach the maximum value.	ms
24	The time to reach the maximum recorded resultant delta-V	The time taken for the sum of the squares of the longitudinal delta-V and the transverse delta-V recorded by the EDR to reach the maximum value.	ms
25	Yaw rate	The change of vehicle angle relative to Z-axis before and during the event, which is applicable to vehicles with electronic stability control system.	Degree/s
26	Steering angle	The angular coordinates of the steering wheel are applicable to vehicles equipped with steering angle sensors.	Degree (°)
27	Tend	End of a collision event. If this condition has not been met until the end of the recording period, Tend can be defined as the time of the last recorded data point.	ms
28	Year	The year when the event occurs.	/
29	Month	The month when the event occurs.	/
30	Day	The date when the event occurs.	/
31	Hour	Time of event.	/
32	MM	Time of event.	/
33	SS	Time of event.	/
34	Gear	Actual gear, which is applicable to vehicles with bus transmitting this signal.	/
35	Engine throttle position, percentage of full open position	Percentage of engine throttle opening.	%
36	Brake pedal position	Actual position of brake pedal, applicable to vehicles with brake pedal position sensor.	%
37	Parking system status	Status used to detect whether the parking brake is activated, which is applicable to vehicles with a bus transmitting the parking system status.	/
38	Turn signal switch status	Status of the switch used to indicate the vehicle's intention to turn or change lane, which is applicable to vehicles with a bus transmitting turn signal.	/
39	Deployment time of driver's seat belt pretensioner	The time from the start of the event to the ignition command of the driver's seat belt pretensioner.	ms
40	Deployment time of driver's frontal airbag (first stage)	The time from the start of the event to the first stage of the driver frontal airbag issuing the ignition command.	ms
41	Deployment time of driver's frontal airbag (second stage)	The time from the start of the event to the second stage of the driver frontal airbag issuing the ignition command.	ms
42	Deployment time of driver's side airbag	The time from the start of the event to the ignition command from the driver side airbag.	ms
43	Deployment time of driver's side curtain airbag	Time from the start of the event to the ignition command from the driver side curtain airbag device.	ms
44	Front passenger's seat belt status	Front passenger's seat belt buckled status, which is applicable to vehicles equipped with seat belt reminder.	/

S/N	Parameter Name	Designation	Unit
45	Deployment time of front passenger's seat belt pretensioner	The time from the start of the event to the ignition command from the front passenger seat belt pretensioner.	ms
46	Suppression status of front passenger's frontal airbag	It is the suppression state displayed by the front passenger front airbag, and the state is applicable to vehicles with a front airbag suppression switch.	/
47	Deployment time of front passenger's frontal airbag (first stage)	The time from the start of the event to the first stage of the ignition command of the front passenger frontal airbag.	ms
48	Deployment time of front passenger's frontal airbag (second stage)	The time from the start of the event to the second stage of the ignition command of the front passenger frontal airbag.	ms
49	Deployment time of front passenger's side airbag	The time from the start of the event to the ignition command from the front passenger side airbag.	ms
50	Deployment time of front passenger's side curtain airbag	The time from the start of the event to the ignition command from the front passenger side curtain airbag device.	ms
51	Occupant protection system alarm status	Fault status of occupant protection system, which is applicable to vehicles with a bus transmitting occupant protection system alarm status.	/
52	Alarm status of tire pressure monitoring system	Alarm status when the on-board tire pressure monitoring system monitors low pressure of one or more tires, which is applicable to vehicles with a bus transmitting this alarm status.	/
53	Brake system alarm status	Fault status of brake system, which is applicable to vehicles with a bus transmitting this alarm status.	/
54	Cruise control system status	Operating status of cruise control system.	/
55	Adaptive cruise control status	Operating status of adaptive cruise control.	/
56	ABS status	The operating status of anti-lock brake system, which is applicable to vehicles with a bus transmitting the anti-lock brake system status.	/
57	Autonomous emergency braking system status	The operating status of the autonomous emergency braking system.	/
58	Status of electronic stability control system	Operating status of electronic stability control system.	/
59	Status of traction control system	Operating status of traction control system.	/
60	Pre-event synchronous timing period	The relative time from the last data sampling point before T0 to T0, which is applicable to vehicles with pre-event synchronization timing function. It is used for time alignment of different data.	ms

The EDR system is integrated in the airbag controller, and the recorded data can be extracted through the special diagnostic equipment of the authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing.

The vehicle speed recorded by the EDR system comes from the wheel linear speed of the anti-lock braking system (ABS) equipped on this vehicle.

The data recorded by the EDR system is divided into unlocked event data and locked event data. Among them, the former refers to the data recorded when the EDR recording conditions are met but the airbag system deployment conditions are not met. The latter is the data recorded when the airbag system deployment conditions are met. Unlocked event data is overwritten sequentially by subsequent unlocked events, while locked event data remains unaffected by subsequent events. The system can record a total of three sets of event data.

Children protection measures

Safety instructions for children

When a child is in the vehicle, please be sure to read this chapter.

Children should use appropriate protective devices.

If a child is too young to wear the seat belt, he/she shall be placed in a rear approved child restraint system.

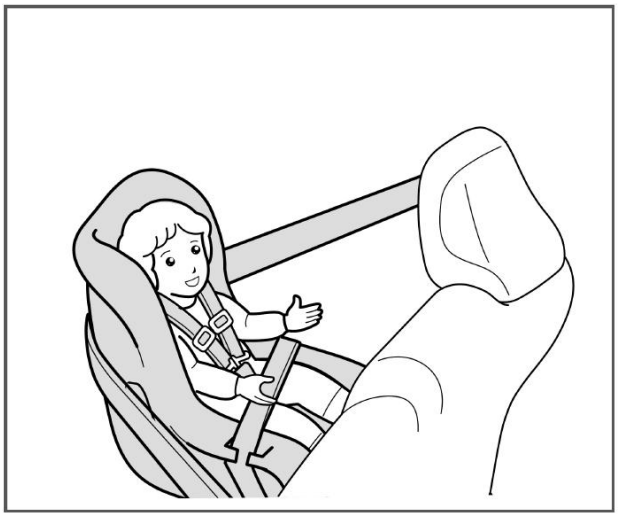
Older children must wear a three-point seat belt for protection, and if necessary, an auxiliary safety cushion shall be installed.

It is recommended that children sit in the rear seats. During driving, please use the child safety lock and window lock switch of the side sliding door to prevent children from opening doors or accidentally operating power windows.

Warning

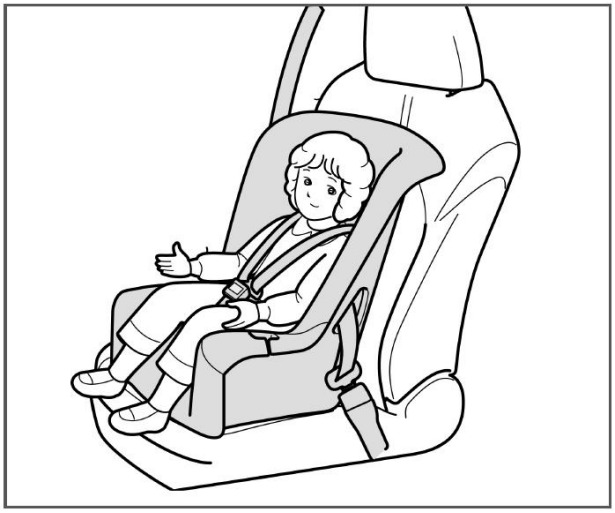
- Do not allow children to carry or use the intelligent key.
- Children may start the vehicle or put the gearshift lever in neutral. Children may also hurt themselves when playing with windows, sunroofs, panoramic sunroofs, or other vehicle equipment.
- Do not leave a child alone in the vehicle, which may cause injuries or deaths of children in an airtight vehicle due to excessively high temperature.
- Please use the child safety lock. Prevent children from opening the rear door and being thrown out of the vehicle accidentally.
- Do not allow any child to kneel on the seat or stand in the vehicle when the vehicle is running.

Protective measures for infants



The neck of infants under one year old is very fragile. If they ride facing forward, it is easy to cause neck injury in case of a frontal collision. Therefore, it is recommended to use a rear-facing child restraint system.

Protective measures for young children



According to the weight and height requirements specified by the manufacturer of the child restraint system, children over one year old should use a forward-facing child restraint system when riding.

Protective measures for older children

It is recommended that all children under 12 years of age be seated in the rear seat and protected. If the seat belt does not fit properly, an auxiliary seat cushion can be installed for children.

CRS (Child restraint system) (provided by the user)

The child restraint system needs to be provided by the user. Please use a child restraint system that meets local regulations and standards.

Applicability of child seat

In addition to the three-point seat belt system for child protection, the rear seats in this vehicle also provide two CRS with standard "ISOFIX" interfaces. You can choose the appropriate child restraint system as needed.

The child restraint system (CRS) applicable to this vehicle and the installation positions are shown in the table below:

Mass Group	Seating Position					
	Front passenger	Middle row left	Middle row right	Rear row left	Rear row middle	Rear row right
Group 0 (less than 10 KG)	X	U	U	U	X	U
Group 0+ (less than 13 KG)	X	U	U	U	X	U
Group I (9KG ~ 18KG)	X	U	U	U	X	U
Group II (15KG ~ 25KG)	X	U	U	U	X	U
Group III (22KG～36KG)	X	U	U	U	X	U

The meanings of the keywords in the above table are as follows:

U: Applicable to universal child restraint system certified by the mass group.

X: This seat is not applicable to the child restraint system of the mass group.

If the "ISOFIX" child restraint system is adopted, the adaptability information of the system and the vehicle is shown in the table below:

Mass Group	Size Category	Fixing Module	ISOFIX Position in Vehicle					
			Front passenger	Middle row left	Middle row right	Rear row left	Rear row middle	Rear row right
Carrycot	F	ISO/L1	X	X	X	X	X	X
	G	ISO/L2	X	X	X	X	X	X
Group 0 (Less than 10KG)	E	ISO/R1	X	IL	IL	IL	X	IL
Group 0+ (Less than 13KG)	E	ISO/R1	X	IL	IL	IL	X	IL
	D	ISO/R2	X	IL	IL	IL	X	IL
	C	ISO/R3	X	IL	IL	IL	X	IL
Group I (9KG ～ 18KG)	D	ISO/R2	X	IL	IL	IL	X	IL
	C	ISO/R3	X	IL	IL	IL	X	IL
	B	ISO/F2	X	IUF	IUF	IUF	X	IUF
	B1	ISO/F2X	X	IUF	IUF	IUF	X	IUF
	A	ISO/F3	X	IUF	IUF	IUF	X	IUF
Group II (15KG～25KG)		(I)	X	IL	IL	IL	X	IL
Group III (22KG ～ 36KG)		(I)	X	IL	IL	IL	X	IL

The meanings of the keywords in the above table are as follows:

IUF: Applicable to universal ISOFIX forward-facing child restraint system certified by the mass group.

IL: Applicable to special ISOFIX child restraint system. These restraint systems may be special vehicle, restricted or semi-universal.

X: This position is not applicable to ISOFIX child restraint system of the mass group or size category.

A—ISO/F3: Full-height forward-facing toddler CRS.

B—ISO/F2: Reduced-height forward-facing toddler CRS.

B1—ISO/F2X: Reduced-height forward-facing toddler CRS.

C—ISO/R3: Full-height rearward-facing toddler CRS.

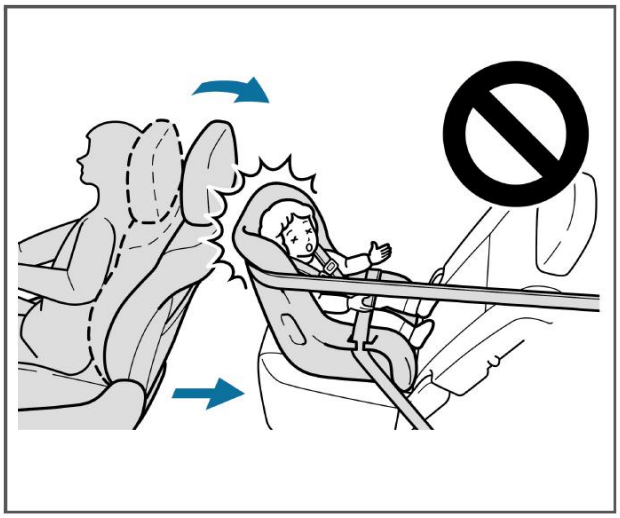
D—ISO/R2: Reduced-height rearward-facing toddler CRS.

E—ISO/R1: Rear-facing CRS for infants.

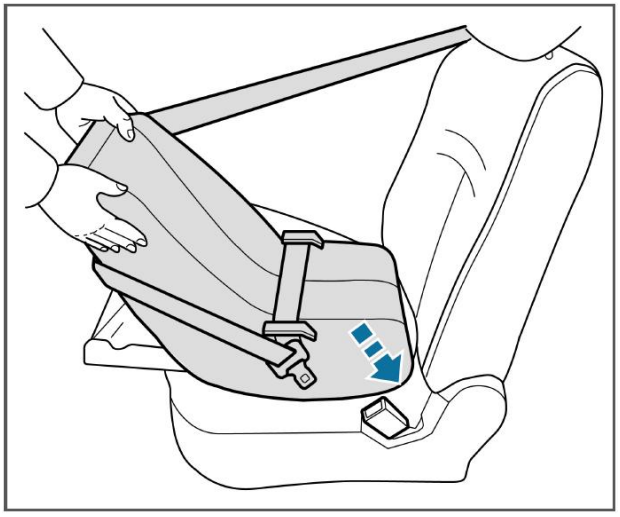
F—ISO/L1: Left-side facing child restraint system (carrycot).

G—ISO/L2: Right-side facing child restraint system (carrycot).

Installation of rear-facing child restraint system

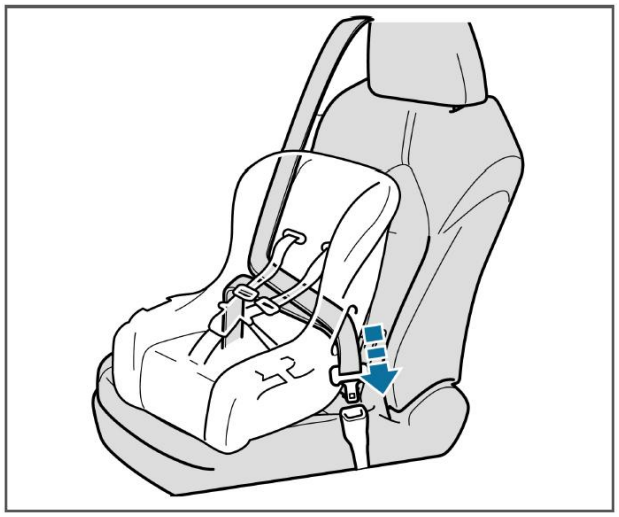


If the rear-facing child restraint system is obstructed by the driver's seat and thus cannot be installed correctly, the rear-facing child restraint system should be installed on the right rear seat.



According to the instructions provided by the manufacturer, pass the seat belt through or around the rear-facing child restraint system, and then insert the tongue into the buckle to ensure that the seat belt is not twisted and remains tight. Make sure that the tongue and buckle are firmly locked, and shake left and right to ensure that the child restraint system is firmly fixed.

Installation of forward-facing child restraint system



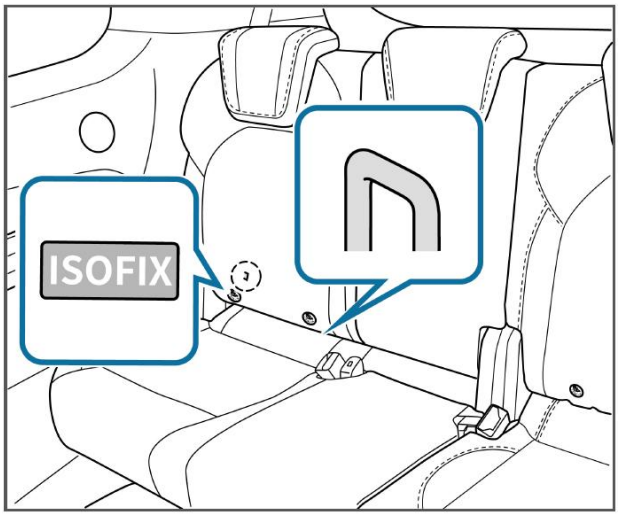
According to the instructions provided by the manufacturer, pass the seat belt through the forward-facing child restraint system and insert the latch into the buckle, ensuring the seat belt is not twisted and remains tight. Confirm that the latch and buckle are firmly locked, press the child restraint system against the seat cushion and seat backrest to fully retract the seat belt, so that the child restraint system is firmly fixed, and shake it left and right to ensure that the child restraint system is firmly fixed.

Installation of auxiliary seat cushion

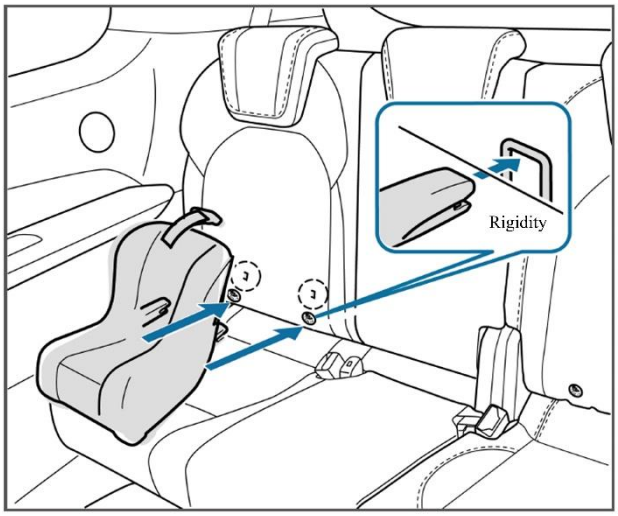
Place the auxiliary cushion on the seat and let the child sit on the auxiliary cushion. According to the instructions provided by the manufacturer, correctly cross the seat belt over the child's shoulder, lower the lap belt as low as possible to the child's hip position, and then insert the latch plate into the buckle to ensure that the seat belt is not twisted and kept tight.

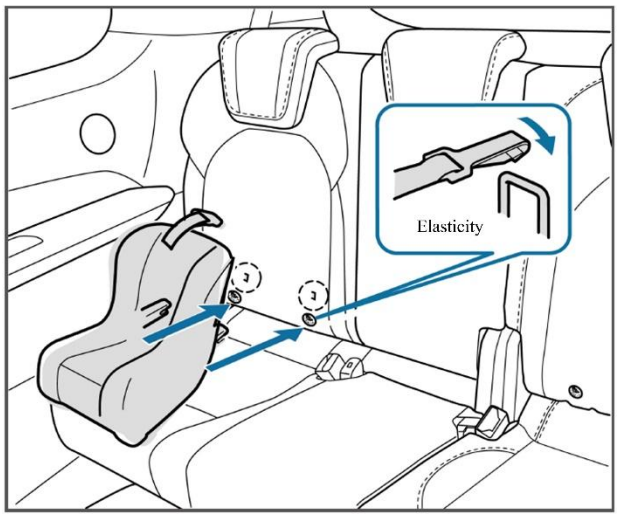
Installation of ISOFIX interface

Child restraint system complying with standard ISO specifications can be fixed by ISOFIX interfaces. Please follow the operating instructions and safety tips of the child restraint system manufacturer during installation and use, otherwise the protective effect may be compromised.

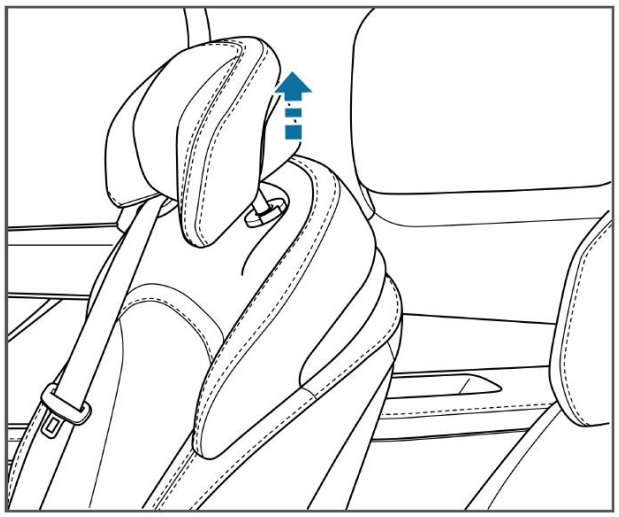


1. Find the ISOFIX interface position in the gap between the seat cushion and backrest at both sides of the middle or rear row.

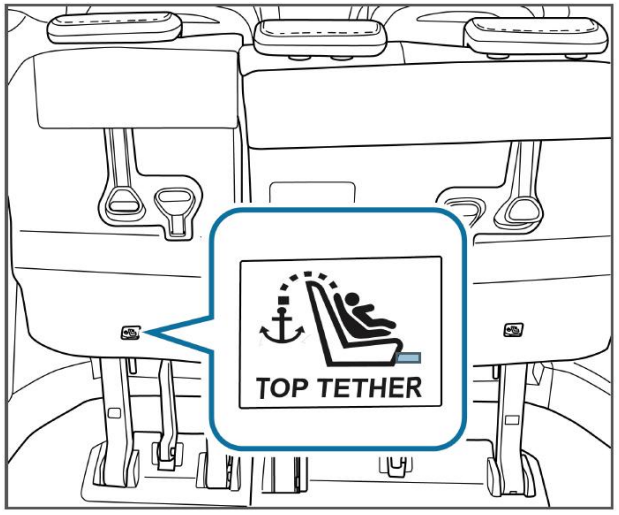




2. Align the ISOFIX interface of the child restraint system with the corresponding ISOFIX interface at the bottom of the seat cushion, inserting the rigid interface and buckling the elastic interface.



3. Lift the headrest to the highest position until a "click" sound is heard, and make sure that the headrest is locked in place.

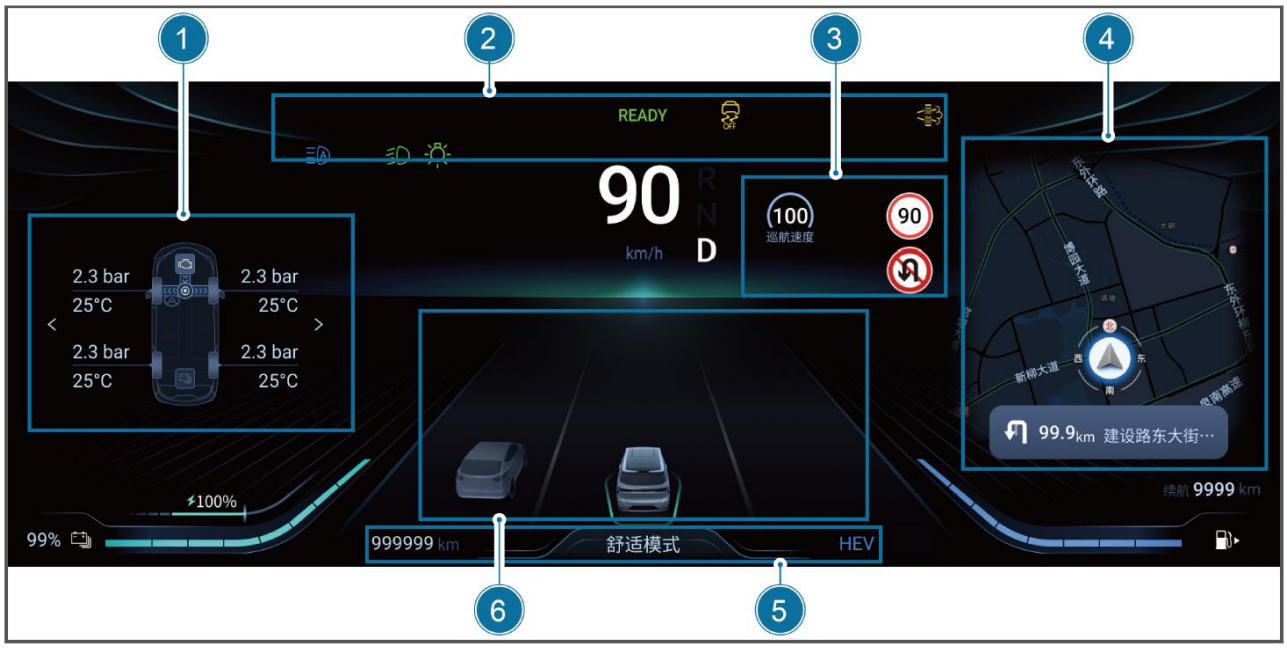


4. Pass the hook of the child safety device through the seat headrest, fasten it to the fixed anchor support on the back of the seat, and tighten the top tether to ensure that it is fastened firmly.

Warning

- The inflating front airbags will generate huge impact force, which may cause serious injury or death if the child hits them. Therefore, please select, install and use child restraint system correctly and ride the vehicle safely according to relevant requirements. In any case, observe the laws and regulations of the country where you drive.
- Do not hold a baby in your arms and share the same seat belt. Otherwise, it is easy to cause the death of the baby in case of an accident.
- Please install the appropriate child safety device on the rear seat according to the instructions provided by the manufacturer. Improperly installed child safety seat may cause injury.
- When the vehicle is running, all occupants, especially children, must always keep the correct sitting posture and fasten seat belts.
- Do not allow two children to share a child seat.
- Make sure that there are no hard or sharp objects such as toys on the child seat.
- Have older children sit in the rear seat as much as possible and wear the seat belt. If necessary, add an auxiliary seat cushion.
- If no child restraint system is installed, children below 1.5m shall not use conventional seat belts. Otherwise, the abdomen and neck of children may be injured in case of emergency braking or accidents.
- Do not twist the seat belt, or make it get stuck somewhere or rub against sharp edges.

Instrument display



1. Left information display area

The left and right arrow buttons on the steering wheel can be used to switch and view tire temperature and pressure/energy flow, mileage/energy consumption information, and multimedia entertainment information.

When some specific functions (such as panoramic low-speed steering and incoming Bluetooth calls) are triggered, relevant information will be displayed in this area.

2. Indicator display area

Different indicators are distributed at different positions in the area to display the current vehicle function and alarm status.

3. ADAS icon display area *

Display ADAS-related function status icons, such as cruise on/activated state, traffic sign recognition, and cruise speed.

4. Right navigation display area

When navigation is not initiated, the default schematic diagram will be displayed; when navigation is initiated, real-time navigation information will be displayed, including a navigation map, positioning identification, route information, and navigation guidance information.

5. Bottom status display area

Display the current driving mode (comfort mode, sport mode, and economy mode), EV/HEV status, and endurance mileage calculation standard of the vehicle.

6. ADAS information display/alarm area *, prompt information display area

Models equipped with ADAS functions will display simulated information about the vehicle's external environment and driving assistance features in this area, such as car models, lane lines, etc.

During operation, the prompts and text alarm information of each function module will be displayed in this area. When some specific alarms are triggered or certain functions are used, relevant information will be displayed in this area.

Warning lamp and indicator

Warning lamp and indicator remind the driver of the status of various systems in the vehicle.

Warning lamp

The warning lamp prompts the driver that some systems of the vehicle may be faulty.

Low fuel level warning lamp (yellow)

When the fuel is about to run out, this light will illuminate to indicate that the fuel is too little. Please refuel as soon as possible.

High coolant temperature warning lamp (red)

This indicator will light up when the coolant temperature is too high. At this time, please slow down and park the vehicle safely on the roadside. Open the engine hood and stop the vehicle for a while. After the coolant temperature drops, drive the vehicle at a speed not exceeding 40 km/h. If the warning lamp is still on, please contact an authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing.

Tire pressure monitoring system fault warning lamp (yellow)

When the tire pressure is abnormal or there is a fault in the tire pressure monitoring system, this indicator will light up.

1. If this indicator is on because the tire pressure is too high or too low, please adjust the tire pressure to the standard tire pressure in time. If the indicator is still on after adjustment, please contact an authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing in time.

2. If this indicator illuminates because the tire pressure system does not match or the sensor signal is lost, please contact an authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing in time.

EPB system fault warning lamp (yellow)

This indicator will illuminate when the EPB system becomes faulty. At this time, the parking system still has the ability to park, but cannot park automatically. Please pull up the EPB switch to park the vehicle and contact the authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing as soon as possible.

Battery fault/charging fault warning lamp (red)

If the light illuminates when the start switch is turned to the "ON" position and the vehicle's high voltage has not been initiated, and then the light goes off after the vehicle starts, it indicates that the charging system is operating normally.

After the vehicle is started, if this indicator illuminates, it indicates that the charging system does not work normally and needs to be repaired. At this time, all unnecessary electrical accessories should be turned off and contact an authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing in time.

Power steering system fault warning lamp (yellow)

This lamp will illuminate when the EPS is faulty. If this indicator illuminates when the vehicle is running, please reduce the speed in time and park the vehicle safely on the roadside. Turn off the power supply and restart the vehicle 5 minutes later. If this indicator no longer illuminates, the vehicle can run normally. If this indicator still illuminates continuously, please contact the

authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing as soon as possible.

ABS system fault warning lamp (yellow)

If this light illuminates during driving, indicating that the anti-lock brake system (ABS) is faulty. At this time, although the vehicle can still be braked normally, the anti -lock brake function is not available. Please drive carefully and contact an authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing as soon as possible.

Low brake fluid level / brake system fault warning lamp (red)

This light will illuminate when the brake fluid level drops to a low level. If this indicator illuminates when the vehicle is running, the brake system may be faulty. Please drive the vehicle away from the road carefully and stop the vehicle safely, and contact an authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing in time.

FCW system fault warning lamp (yellow)*

This indicator will illuminate when the FCW system becomes faulty.

Engine fault (SVS) warning lamp (yellow)

When the start/stop switch is turned to the "ON" position, this light will illuminate; after the vehicle is started, this light will go out, indicating that the system is in normal working condition. If this indicator stays on, it indicates that the engine control system may be faulty. Please restart the vehicle and check this warning lamp. If this indicator still stays on, please contact an authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing.

Airbag system fault warning lamp (red)

If this light continues to illuminate during driving, indicating that the airbag is faulty. Please contact the authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing.

Unfastened seat belt reminder (red)

When the start/stop switch is turned to "ON" position, if the driver or front passenger (some models) fails to fasten the seat belt, this light will illuminate, accompanied by an alarm sound. After the driver and front-row passengers fasten seat belts, the light will go out and the alarm will be released.

Unfastened middle-row seat belt reminder (red)*

Indicates the status of the middle row passenger seat belts not being fastened. Depending on the vehicle configuration, the indicator will behave slightly differently.

Low oil pressure warning lamp (red)

If this lamp keeps being on or flashing during driving, it indicates that the engine oil level is too low and the engine may be damaged if you continue driving. Please park the vehicle at the roadside immediately and safely and contact an authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing in time.

ADAS fault warning lamp (yellow)*

When the ADAS system fails, this indicator will be normally on. please contact an authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing in time.

Fault warning lamp

When this warning lamp is on, it indicates that some functions of the vehicle are abnormal. If the alarm cannot be released after handling, please contact an authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing.

Powertrain MIL

When the power system (traction battery and motor) of the vehicle fails, this indicator will illuminate. At this time, please drive the vehicle away from the road, safely stop the vehicle, and contact an authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing.

Indicator

The indicator is used to inform the driver of the working state of each system of the vehicle. When it is on or flashing, it is in normal state in most cases, and the vehicle is not faulty.

Sufficient fuel indicator (white)

When the fuel is sufficient, this lamp will be always on in white.

Turn and hazard signal indicator (green)

When the turn signal is operated, the corresponding turn indicator flashes or goes out. When the hazard warning lamp switch is pressed, the indicator lamp and the left and right turn signals will flash at the same time. If the turn signals do not flash or flash quickly at this time, indicating that the turn signal bulbs may be abnormal. In this case, immediately confirm whether the turn signal bulbs are damaged and contact an

authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing.

Parking status indicator (red)

This indicator will illuminate when the EPB switch is pulled up. If this indicator does not illuminate after parking or stays on after the EPB switch is pressed, please contact an authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing.

AUTO HOLD indicator (green)

This indicator illuminates when the AUTO HOLD system is working.

Hill descent control (HDC) system working indicator (green)

When the hill descent control switch is turned on, this light stays on.

Position lamp indicator (green)

This indicator illuminates when the position lamp is turned on.

Low beam indicator (green)

This indicator illuminates when the low beam is turned on.

High beam indicator (blue)

This indicator illuminates when the high beam indicator is turned on.

Rear fog lamp indicator (yellow)

This indicator illuminates when the rear fog lamp is turned on.

Electronic stability program (ESP) OFF indicator (yellow)

When the ESP switch is pressed, the ESP system will be turned off and this indicator will illuminate. Press the switch again, the ESP system will be turned on again, and this indicator will go out.

ESP operation/malfunction indicator (yellow)

This indicator flashes when the ESP system is working. If the indicator stays on during driving, it indicates a possible fault in the ESP system. Please contact an authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing.

FCW OFF indicator (yellow)*

This indicator illuminates when the FCW is turned off.

Intelligent high beam awaiting activation indicator (gray-white)*

When the intelligent high beam control function is turned on but not activated, this indicator will light up.

Intelligent high beam activated indicator (blue)*

When the intelligent high beam control function is activated, this indicator will light up.

Intelligent high beam fault indicator (yellow)*

When the intelligent high beam control function fails, this indicator will light up.

Limited power status indicator (yellow)

When the vehicle is in limited power (limp) mode, this indicator lights up. At this time, be careful, slow down or stop for inspection, and continue driving after clearing the fault.

System READY indicator (green)

When the vehicle is started, this indicator will illuminate, indicating that the vehicle is in a driving state.

EV/HEV status indicator (blue)

Indicates the current power output mode. When the vehicle is in HEV mode, this indicator lights up; when it is in EV mode, it displays EV.

Driving mode status indicator

It indicates the current driving mode. When the vehicle is in comfort mode, this indicator will light up; when it is in sport mode or economy mode, the display switches to the corresponding text.

Traffic sign recognition indicator

It indicates the currently identified traffic sign.

Charging plug connection status indicator (red)*

When the charging plug is inserted, this indicator will light up. When the charging plug is connected abnormally, this indicator flashes; when the charging plug is connected normally, this indicator stays on.

ACC working indicator (blue)*

When the ACC (or cruise control) function is activated and starts to work, this indicator will light up.

ACC on indicator (gray)*

When the ACC (or cruise control) function is enabled but not activated, this indicator will light up.

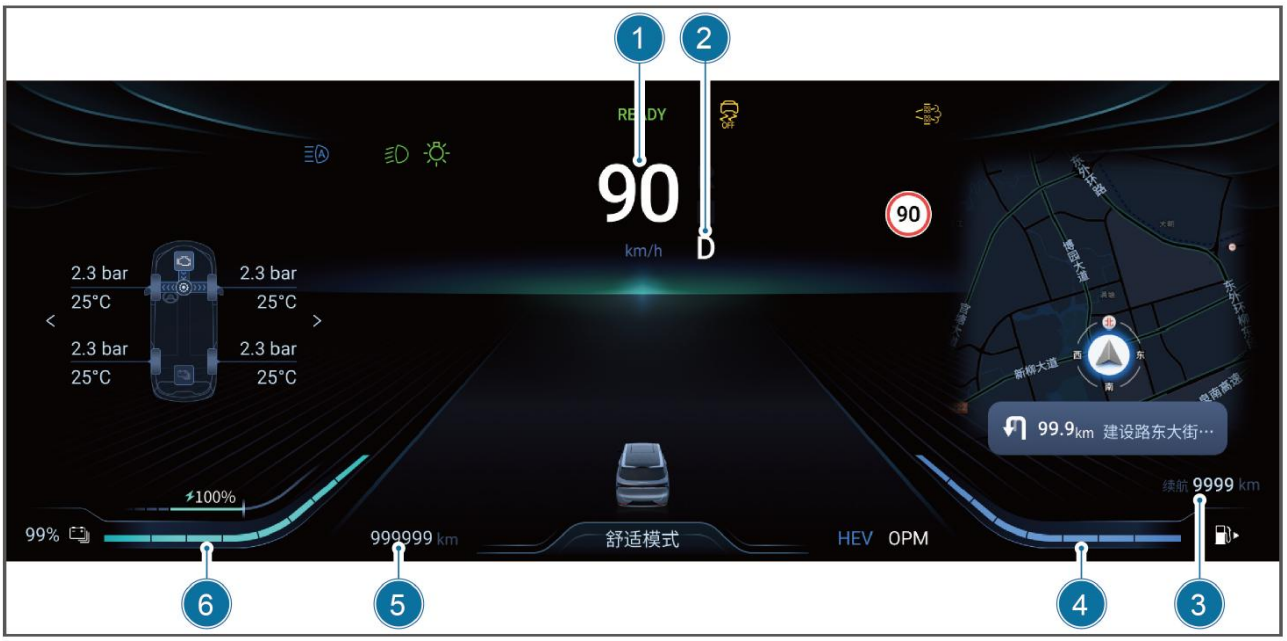
Advanced cruise assist working indicator (blue)*

When the advanced cruise assist function is activated and starts to work, this indicator will light up.

Advanced cruise assist on indicator (gray)*

When the advanced cruise assist function is enabled but not activated, this indicator will light up.

Combination instrument



1. Vehicle speed: Display the current vehicle speed.

2. Gear: Display the current gear.

3. Endurance mileage: Display the total distance that the vehicle can continue to travel with the SOC and remaining fuel.

4. Fuel gauge: Display the current remaining fuel.

5. ODO: Display the current total mileage of the vehicle.

6. Power and charge gauge: The power gauge displays the current energy output/energy recovery status; the charge gauge shows the current remaining battery level.

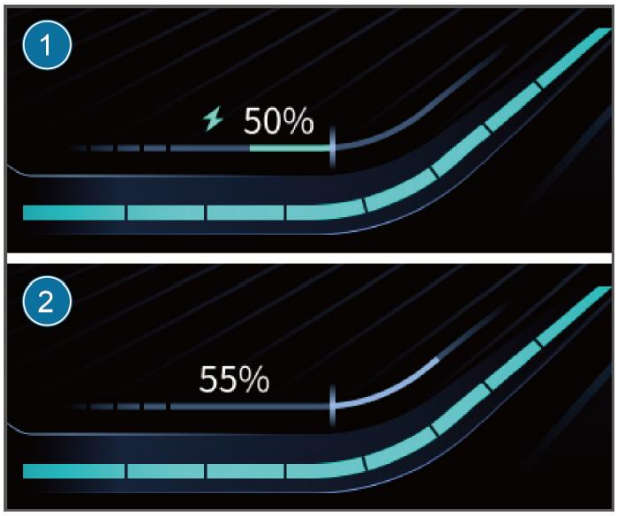
Note

The relevant information displayed may be different or not applicable to your vehicle depending on the model configuration and settings. Please refer to the actual vehicle for specific information.

Caution

When the fuel/battery charge drops below 15%, the fuel gauge and battery level indicator will turn yellow, indicating that you should refuel or charge the vehicle as soon as possible (on some models). Failure to do so may affect normal driving operations.

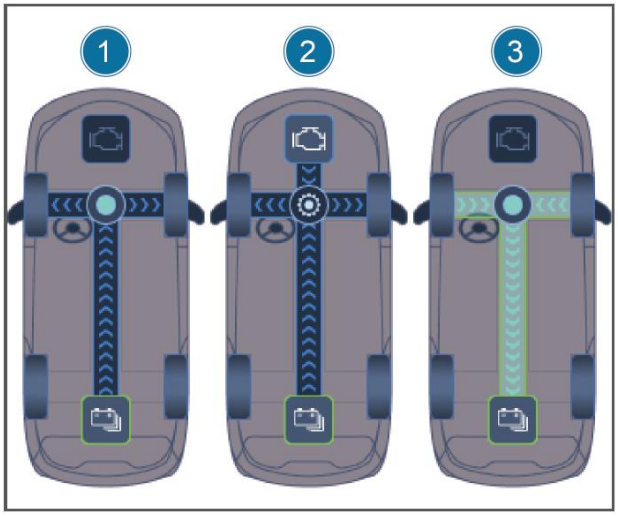
Power gauge



1. Energy recovery percentage: 0% ~ 100%
2. Power output percentage: 0% ~ 100%

When the gearshift lever is in the P position, the power meter does not display the percentage by default; when the gearshift lever is in the D/R position, the power meter displays 0% by default.

Energy flow



1. Driving under EV mode

The motor is running and can provide the required power.

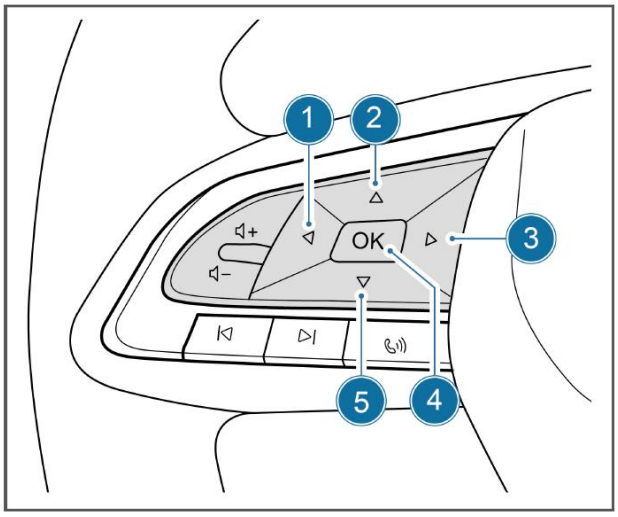
2. Hybrid driving

The motor and the engine provide power simultaneously.

3. Energy recovery

The traction battery is being charged.

Combination instrument control



1. Left button
2. Up button
3. Right button
4. OK button
5. Down button

Brightness control

Short press the up or down button to increase or decrease the display brightness of the instrument screen.

Energy consumption, tire pressure/energy flow, multimedia interface switching

On the mileage, tire pressure/energy flow interface, short press the left or right arrow button to switch between energy consumption, tire pressure/energy flow, and multimedia interfaces.

Multimedia pause/play control

Press the OK button to pause/continue playing the multimedia currently being played.

Caution

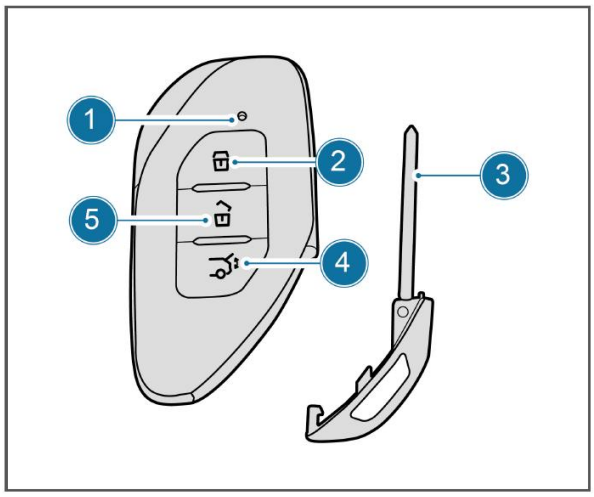
- Long press: The button time is greater than or equal to 2 seconds.
- Short press: The button-pressed time is < 2s.

Key, anti-theft and vehicle locating

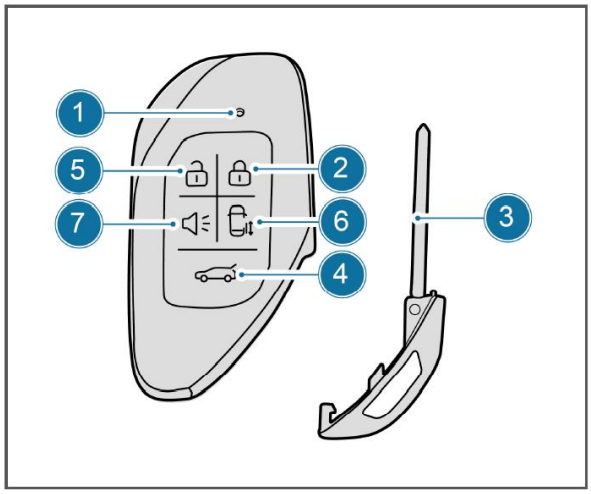
Introduction to Keys

Intelligent key

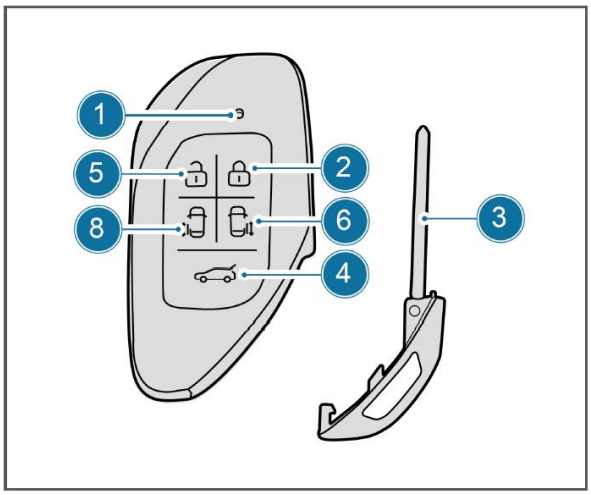
Basic version



Single power sliding door control *

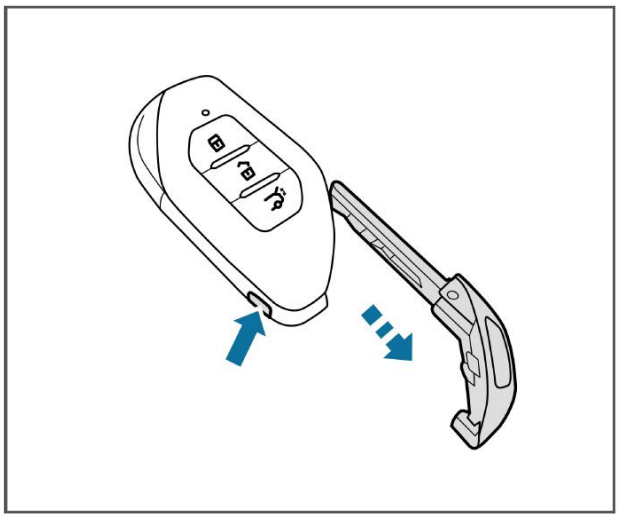


Double power sliding door control *



1. Button indicator
2. Lock button
3. Mechanical key
4. Trunk lid unlock button
5. Unlock button
6. Right sliding door control button*
7. Locate button *
8. Left sliding door control button*

Mechanical key



Press the mechanical key release button on the side of the intelligent key to take out the mechanical key.

Replace the intelligent key battery

If the intelligent key battery is low, the remote control distance may become shorter or the vehicle cannot be remotely controlled, or even the vehicle may fail to recognize the intelligent key. In this case, the battery in the intelligent key needs to be replaced.

Immobilizer system

If the intelligent key with an incorrect code is carried into the vehicle, press the Start switch, and the anti-theft indicator on the combination instrument will flash. The system will determine that the intelligent key is illegal or the anti-theft certification fails, and the vehicle will not start at this time.

Vehicle locating function *

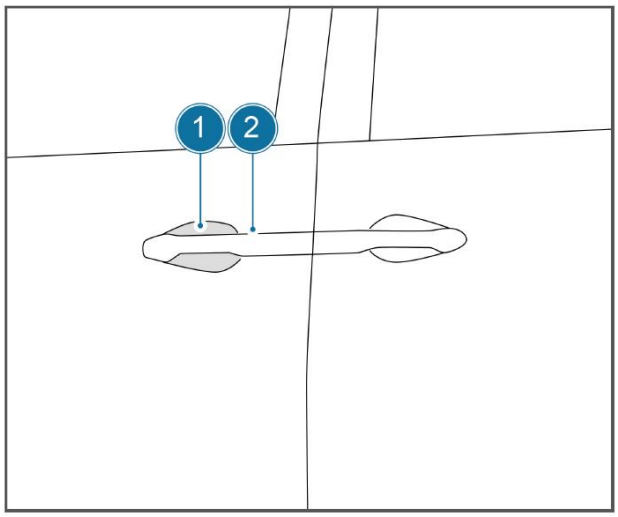
Short press the vehicle locating button on the intelligent key, and the vehicle will make a sound and flash lights to facilitate quick vehicle locating.

Doors and door locks

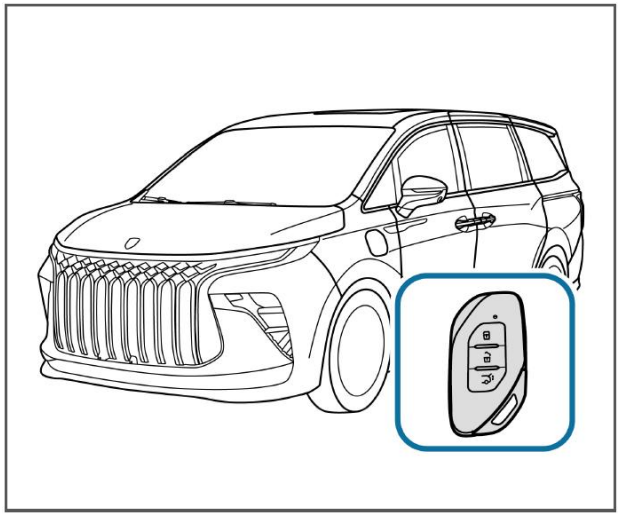
Door opening and closing

Opening and closing the door from outside

Passive Entry Passive Start (PEPS) *



1. Unlocking area
2. Locking area



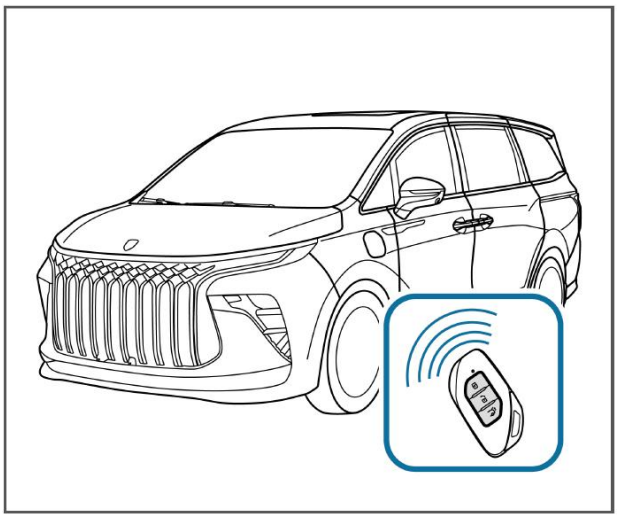
Unlocking: Carry the intelligent key and hold the inner unlocking area of the driver's or front passenger's door handle to unlock all doors.

Locking: Carry the intelligent key, close all doors, and touch the locking area on the driver's or front passenger's door handle with fingers to lock all doors.

Caution

During vehicle washing and rain, if the intelligent key is near the vehicle, water drops may frequently trigger the sensing module on the door handle, causing the doors to be locked/unlocked. This is not an abnormal phenomenon.

Unlocking and locking with intelligent key

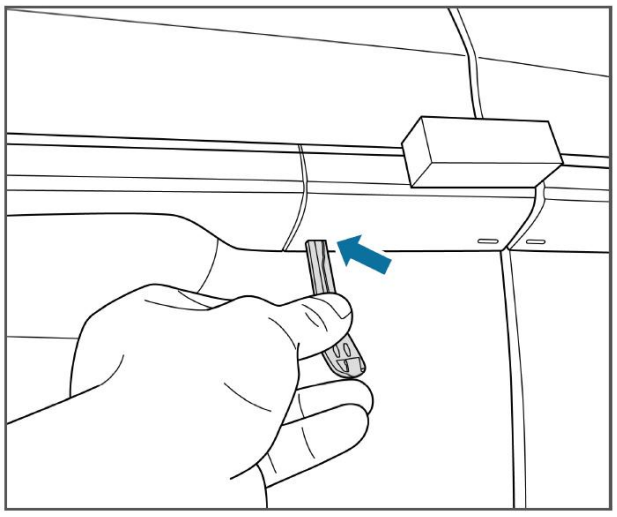


Unlocking: Short press the unlock button on the intelligent key, and the four side doors will be unlocked, and the turn signal will flash twice; press and hold the unlock button on the intelligent key to open the glass of the four doors.

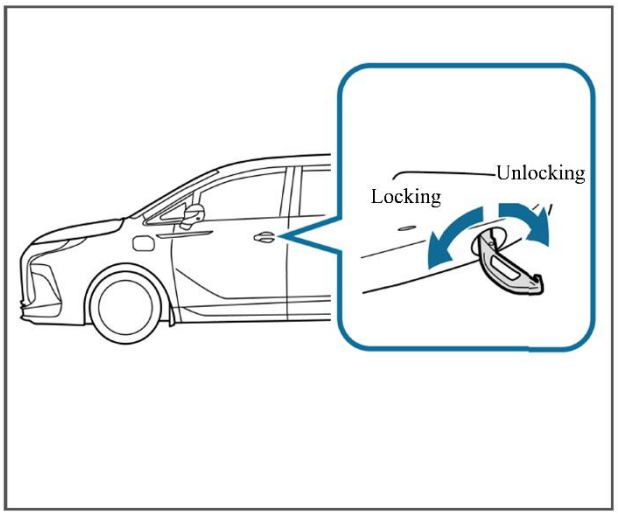
Locking: Press the lock button on the intelligent key to lock the four doors and the fuel filler cap, the turn signal flashes once, the horn sounds once, the interior lamp gradually goes out, and the IVI system is turned off; press and hold the lock button on the intelligent key to close the glass of the four doors(for some models).

Unlocking and locking with mechanical key (only driver's door)

1. Take out the mechanical key from the intelligent key.



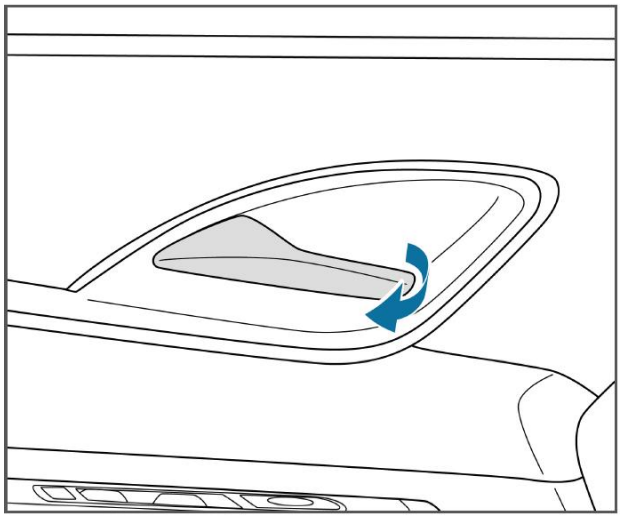
2. After the door is closed, insert the mechanical key into the lock cylinder cover notch under the driver's door handle. Pry up the door handle with the mechanical key to open the lock cylinder cover and expose the lock cylinder hole.



3. Insert the mechanical key into the lock cylinder hole, turn the key clockwise to unlock the driver's door and counterclockwise to lock the driver's door.

4. Take out the mechanical key and put the lock cylinder cover back on the outer door handle.

Opening and closing doors from inside the vehicle



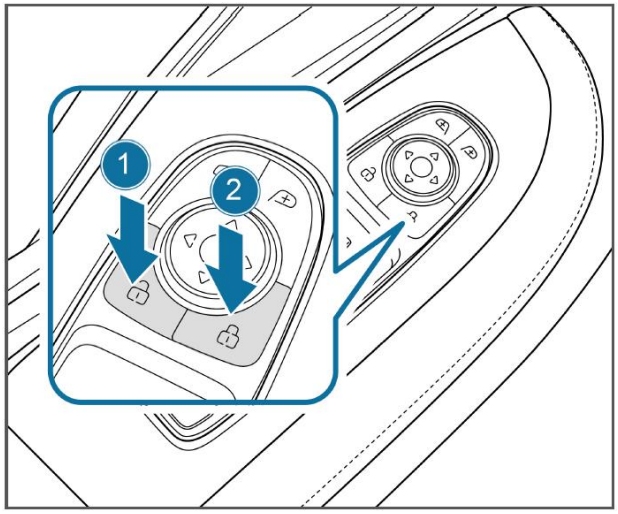
Pull the interior handle twice to open the door

When the doors are locked, pull the inner handle twice to open the front door.

Pull the interior handle once to open the door

When the door is unlocked, pull the inner handle once to open the door.

Central door lock unlocking and locking

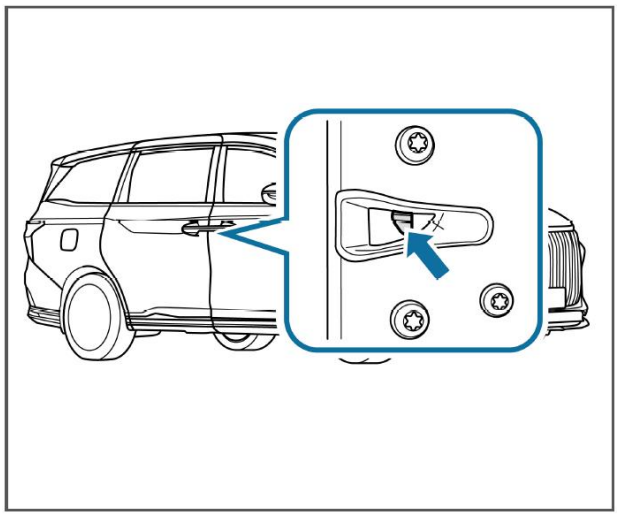


1. Press to unlock all doors
2. Press to lock all doors

Caution

The central lock can only be activated when all doors, fuel filler cap and charging port cap (of some models) are closed.

Unlocking and locking of front passenger's door



If the vehicle is powered off, press the inner white switch of the door lock to close the door, and then the door can be locked. Pull the inner door handle from the inside of the vehicle twice to unlock the door.

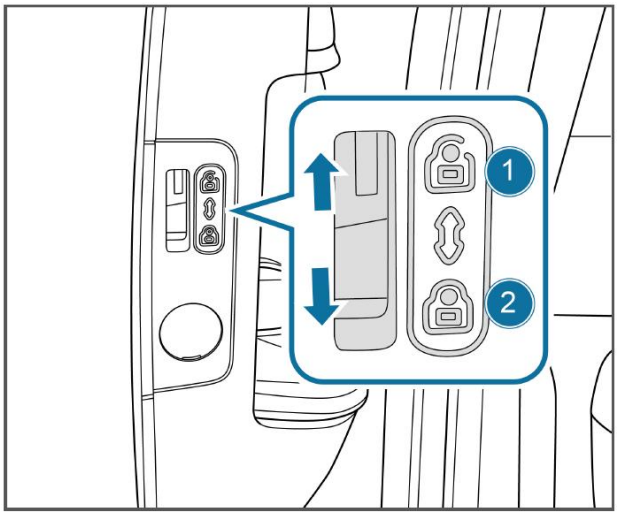
Automatic locking

Tap [Vehicle control] - [Vehicle settings] - [Off-vehicle safety] on the multimedia display screen in turn, and select to enable the function of [Automatic locking when off-vehicle]. The off-car locking feedback can be selected from [Lights and horns] or [Only lights].

Forced unlocking on collision

When the car doors are locked and the start switch is in the "ON" position, if the vehicle is subjected to a strong impact, all doors will automatically unlock. Depending on the intensity of the impact or the type of accident, the system may not function.

Child safety lock of side sliding door



1. Unlocking
2. Locking

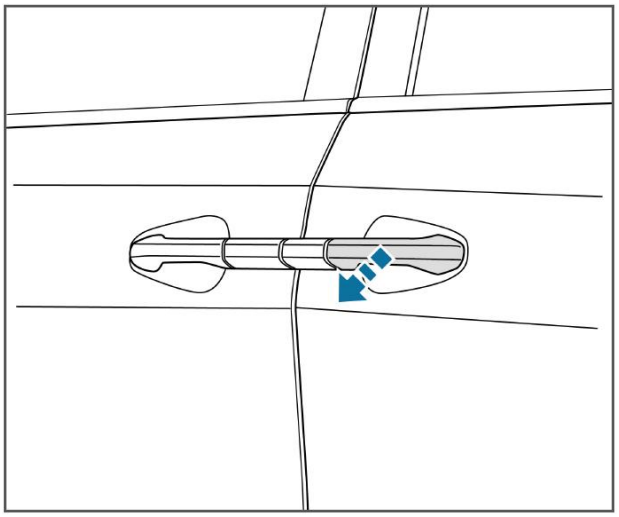
You can use a mechanical key or a long tool to pull the lever. When the lever is in locking position ②, the child safety lock of the side sliding door will be activated and the side sliding door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle, which helps prevent children from opening the side sliding door accidentally.

To release the side sliding door child safety lock, open the door from outside and move the lever to unlocking position ①.

Side sliding door

Opening and closing the side sliding door from outside

Manual operation



With the vehicle unlocked, pull the outer handle of the side sliding door outward, and then push it backward or forward to open or close the side sliding door.

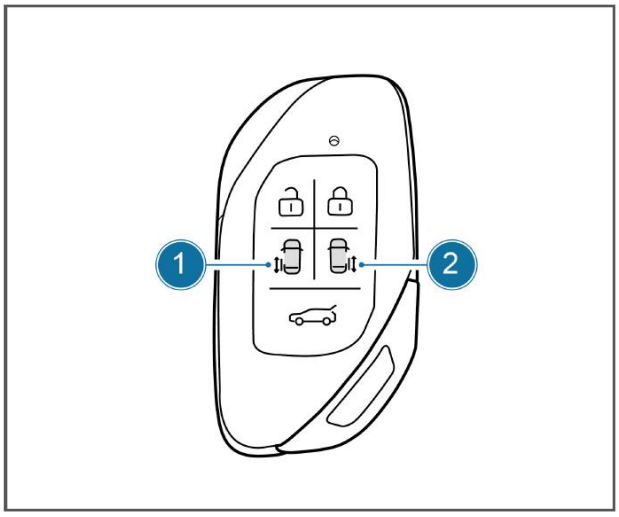
Electric operation *

With the vehicle locked, carry the intelligent key and pull the outer handle of side sliding door outward to unlock all doors except the trunk lid and open the side sliding door electrically.

With the vehicle unlocked, it is not necessary to carry an intelligent key. The side sliding door can be opened electrically by pulling its outer handle toward outside of the vehicle.

When the side sliding door is open, pull its outer handle outward to close it electrically.

Operation of intelligent key *



1. Left sliding door control button
2. Right sliding door control button

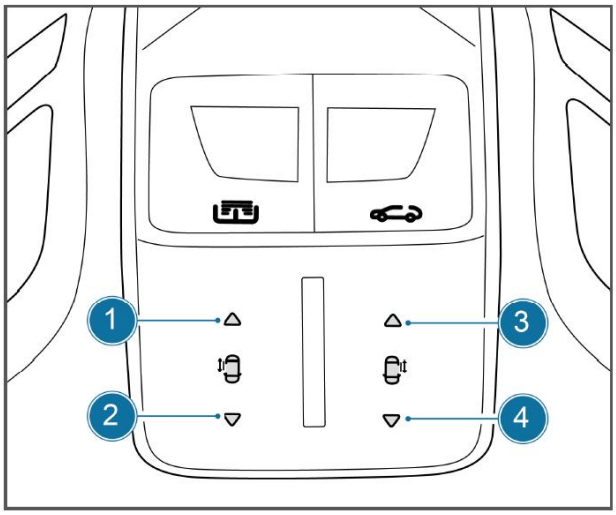
Press the left or right sliding door control button on the intelligent key to open or close the corresponding side sliding door.

Caution

- When the filler cap is opened, the right sliding door will be locked and cannot be opened to avoid the risk of collision.
- When the rear left charging port cap is opened (for some models), to avoid the risk of collision, the left sliding door will be locked and cannot be opened.

Opening and closing the side sliding door from inside

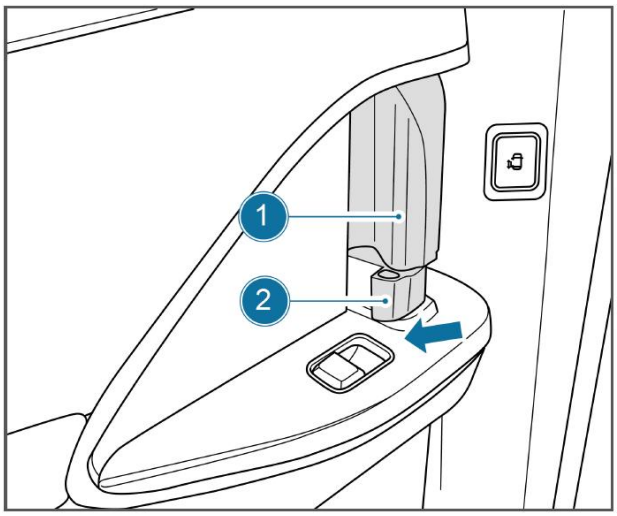
Operation of front interior light button *



1. Left sliding door open button
2. Close button of left sliding door
3. Open button of right sliding door
4. Close button of right sliding door

With the vehicle unlocked, press and hold the left or right sliding door open/close button on the front interior light to open/close corresponding side sliding door.

Inner handle operation of middle row



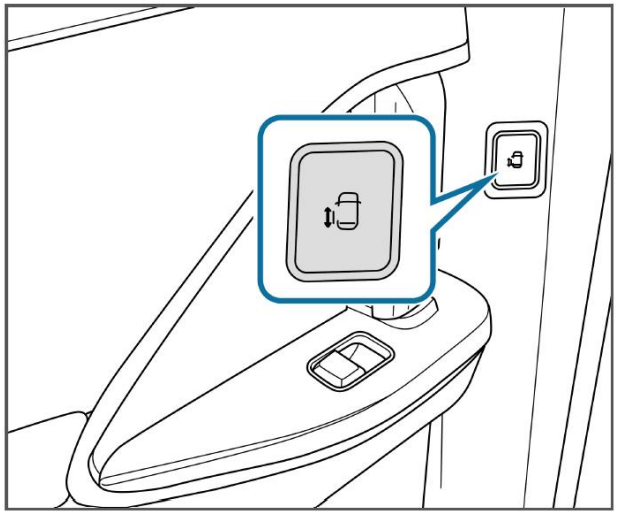
1. Inner handle of middle row
2. Internal lock switch

Opening: When the whole vehicle is locked, first turn the interior locking switch towards the rear of the vehicle until a red indication sign (unlocked) appears, and then pull the middle inner handle backwards once to open the side sliding door.

With the vehicle unlocked, pull the middle inner handle towards the rear of the vehicle once to open the side sliding door.

Close: Pull the middle inner handle toward the front of the vehicle until the side sliding door is completely closed.

Open and close the side sliding door with shortcut key *



With the vehicle unlocked and the interior locking switch unlocked, press the shortcut key near the B-pillar inner handle in the middle row to open the side sliding door. When the side sliding door is opened, press the shortcut key directly to close it quickly.

Caution

- When the child safety lock of the side sliding door is locked, the side sliding door cannot be opened by using the middle row inner handle or shortcut key.
- When the window glass on the electric side sliding door is not in the fully closed position, the opening of the electric side sliding door will be limited to a certain extent to avoid the risk of pinching.
- The electric side sliding door has the anti-pinch function. In case of any obstacle during opening, it will move reversely for a certain distance; in case of any obstacle during closing, it will move reversely until it is fully open.
- The anti-pinch function of the side sliding door can be performed continuously for up to 3 times. If an obstacle is still encountered after the third time, the side sliding door will stop moving and can continue electric operation only after being manually closed.
- If the 12V LV battery is lack of power or disconnected, or if the electric sliding door has been opened for more than 1 hour with the vehicle in OFF mode and there is no operation on the vehicle during this period, the electric sliding door will enter deep sleep. In this case, you need to manually close it once to restore its opening/closing function.

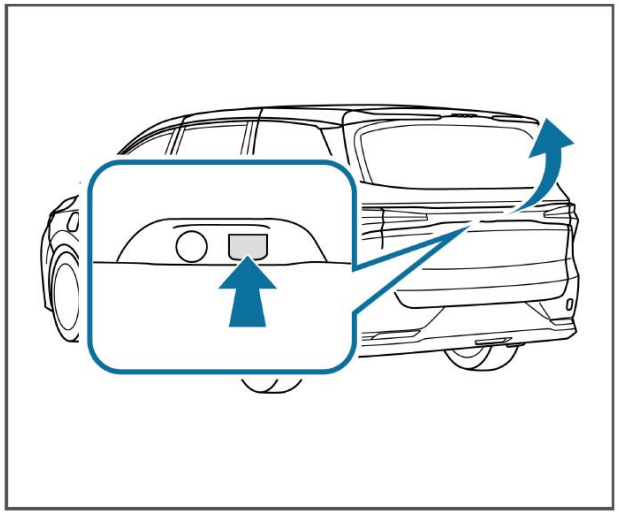
Warning

- The electric sliding door can only be used when the vehicle is in P or N position (brake pedal depressed or EPB pulled up) and stationary.
- When the vehicle is in OFF mode and parked on a slope, please fully open or close any electric sliding door. Otherwise, if the vehicle has not been operated for more than half an hour, the doors will slide freely under the influence of gravity, resulting in risk of collision and damage to the doors.

Trunk lid

Open the trunk lid from the outside

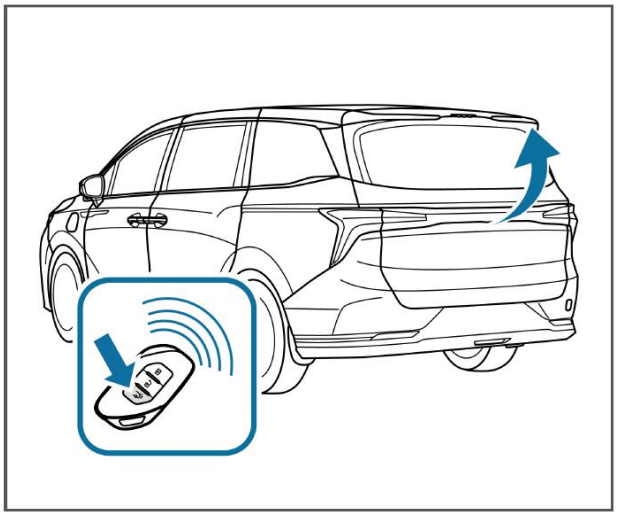
Keyless opening of trunk lid



Ordinary trunk lid: Carry the intelligent key behind the trunk lid, and press the microswitch to manually open the trunk lid at the same time.

Power trunk lid: Carry the intelligent key behind the trunk lid and press the microswitch to open the trunk lid automatically.

Opening trunk lid with intelligent key

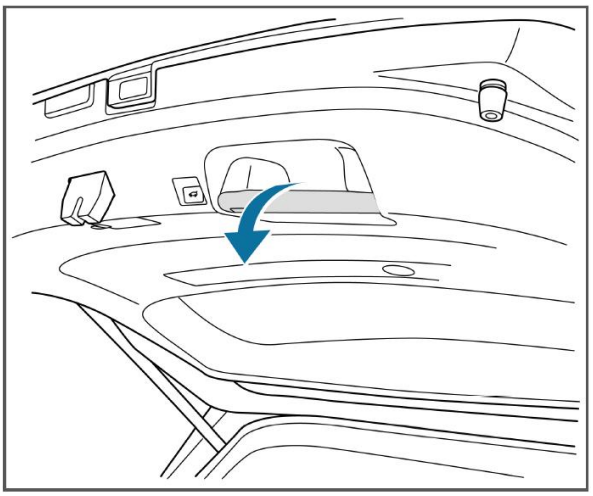


Ordinary trunk lid: When the trunk lid is closed, press and hold the trunk lid unlock button on the intelligent key to unlock the trunk lid, and then manually open the trunk lid.

Power trunk lid: When the trunk lid is closed, press and hold the trunk lid unlock button on the intelligent key, and the trunk lid will open automatically.

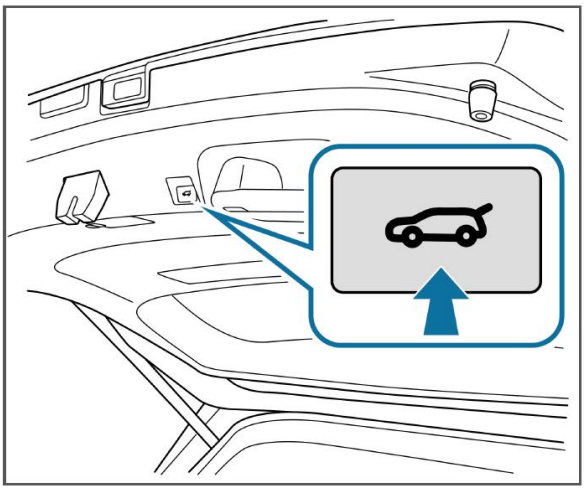
Close the trunk lid from the outside

Normal trunk lid

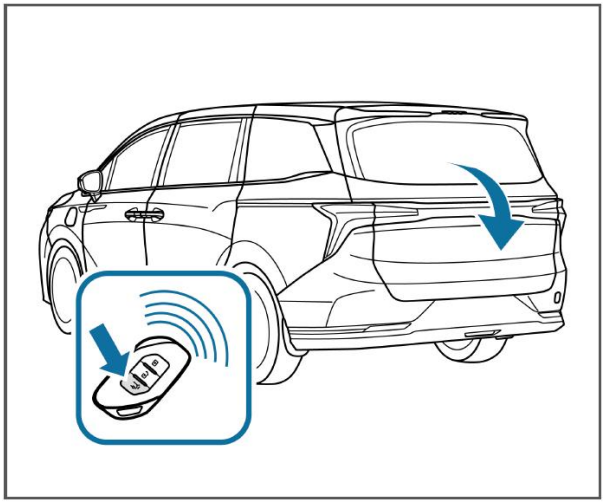


Pull the handle on the back door and buckle it downward to close the back door.

Power trunk lid*

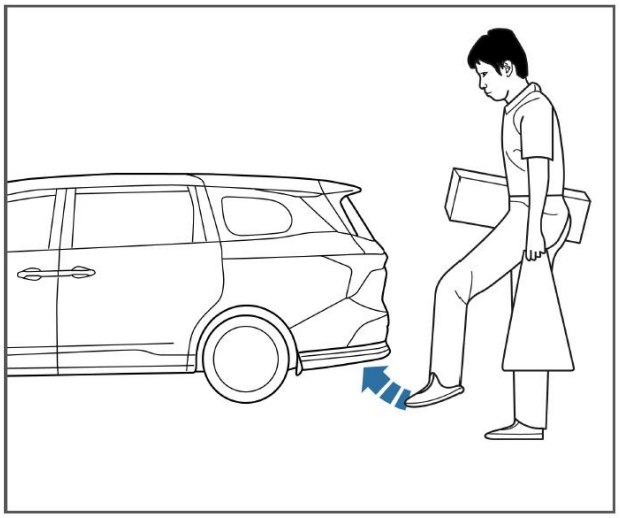


Press the trunk lid shield switch to automatically close the trunk lid. If this switch is pressed again during closing, the trunk lid will stop closing.



In addition, the trunk lid can be closed automatically by pressing and holding the trunk lid unlock button on the intelligent key.

Open and close trunk lid by Induction*



Stand behind the vehicle with the intelligent key and kick at the left lower part of the rear bumper. When the kicking action is sensed, the trunk lid will open or close automatically.

Caution

- Only when the vehicle is not in "READY" state can the function of opening trunk lid by sensing take effect.
- To use this function, you need to carry the intelligent key or place the intelligent key within an effective control range about 1m away from the trunk lid.
- In order to ensure the effectiveness of the operation, please use front and rear kicking operation, and the kicking time shall be controlled within 1 ~ 2 seconds. During operation, the distance between the foot/lower leg and the bottom/rear part of the rear bumper shall be controlled within 2 ~ 10 cm

Caution

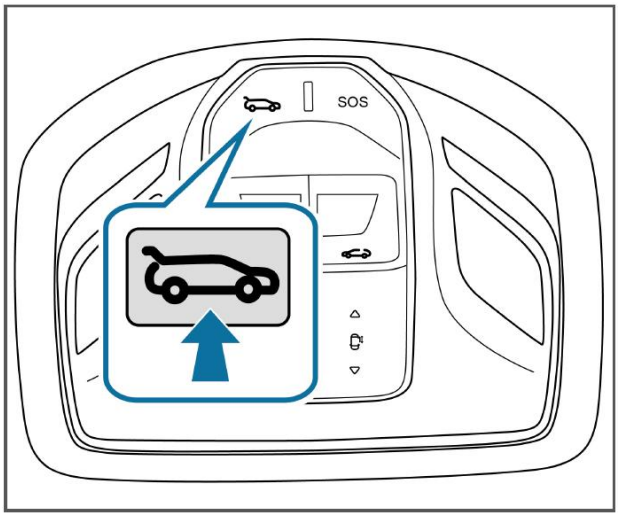
respectively. Please use the most suitable operation method after several kicking operations according to the actual situation.

- Please keep the sensor surface clean. If obstacles such as ice, snow and dirt are attached to the sensor surface, it may cause functional failure.
- The kick sensing area is located within the width range of 50 cm on the left and right sides below the left part of the rear bumper. Please operate in this area.
- If the trunk lid opening function is attempted for several times in a short time, this function may be temporarily disabled and cannot be restored in a short time.
- When the trunk lid is open, if you manually pull down the trunk lid for a certain distance but it is not locked, press the microswitch at this time, and the trunk lid will make no response. You need to manually press the trunk lid until it is locked, and then press the microswitch again, and the power trunk lid function returns to normal.

Warning

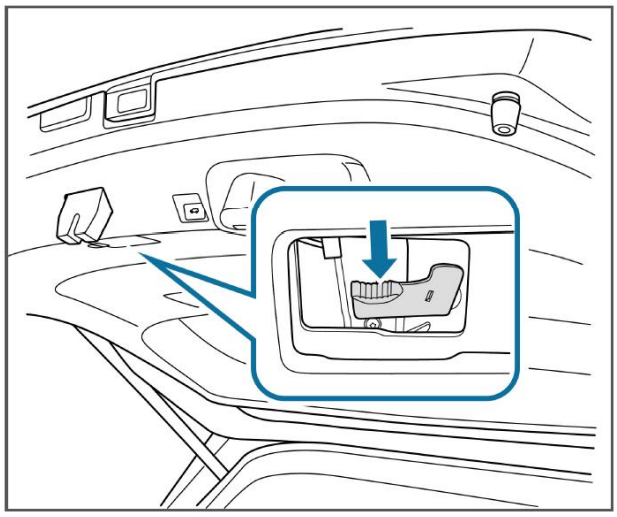
- When using this function, please ensure that there are no other persons or obstacles in the movement area of the trunk lid. After operation, please keep away from the movement area of the trunk lid to avoid injury to human body or vehicle.
- When the vehicle is cleaned automatically, please make sure that the intelligent key is not near the trunk lid. If the trunk lid is opened accidentally, it may be damaged.

Open and close trunk lid from inside the vehicle *



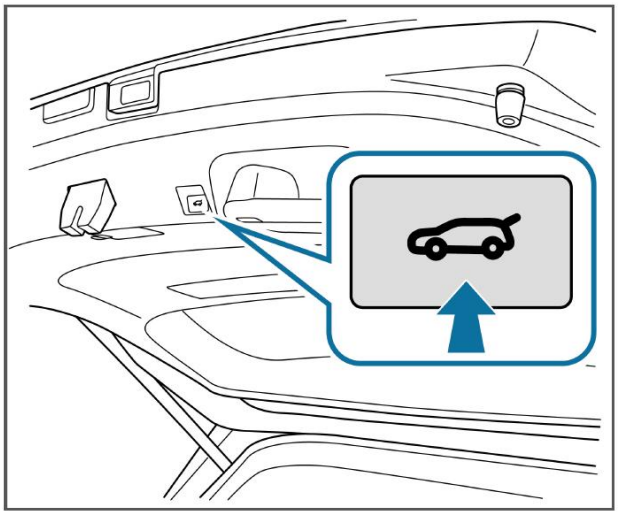
When the vehicle is not locked by remote control and stationary, long press the trunk lid button on the front interior light to open or close the trunk lid automatically. When the trunk lid is moving, press this switch again to stop the movement of the trunk lid.

Interior emergency opening of trunk lid



If the latch fails and the back door cannot be opened, you can first remove the emergency opening cover plate on the inner shield of the back door, press down the emergency opening handle of the back door lock body, and at the same time hold the back door backward with your arm to open the back door from inside the vehicle.

Set trunk lid opening height*



Set the opening height of trunk lid

The opening height of the trunk lid can be set through the trunk lid shield switch:

1. Manually open the trunk lid to the required height.

2. Press and hold the trunk lid shield switch until a sound signal is heard, indicating that the opening height is set successfully.

3. Close the trunk lid and reopen it to the set height.

Restore the maximum opening height

1. Manually open the trunk lid to the highest position.

2. Press and hold the trunk lid shield switch until a sound signal is heard, indicating that the maximum opening height is restored successfully.

3. Close the trunk lid and reopen it to the maximum height.

Warning

- Do not open or close the power trunk lid manually unless necessary.
- When the power trunk lid needs to be manually operated in case of power failure or fault, it shall be opened or closed at a uniform speed for not less than 2 seconds. Quick manual opening and closing operations may cause damage to the electric stay bar or controller.
- If the 12V LV battery is lack of power or disconnected, or if the power trunk lid is open for more than 20 minutes without any operation of the vehicle when the vehicle is in OFF position, the power trunk lid will enter deep sleep. The electric opening and closing function can be restored only after the trunk lid is manually closed once.

Warning

Set the opening angle of trunk lid through the IVI system

1. Tap the multimedia display screen in sequence: [Vehicle control] - [Vehicle settings] - [Driving experience] - [Electric

movable tailgate angle adjustment] Enters the tailgate height setting

Interface.

2. According to the actual needs, after tapping the required opening height value of the trunk lid on the setting page, the system will provide an audible prompt, indicating that the setting is successful.

Caution

The opening height of the trunk lid in the IVI system is for reference only. Please set the specific height according to the actual operation.

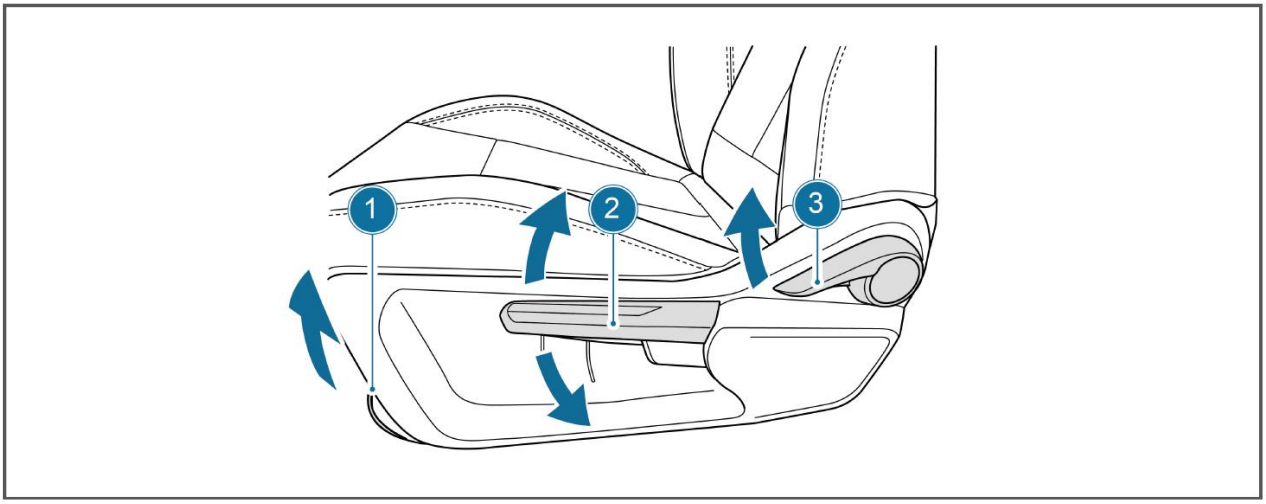
Anti-pinch protection *

When the trunk lid opens automatically, if an obstacle is detected, the trunk lid will stop opening; when the trunk lid closes automatically, if an obstacle is detected, the trunk lid will stop closing and return to the preset maximum opening height.

Seat adjustment

Front seats

Manual adjustment of driver's seat



1. Seat forward-backward adjustment pull rod

Lift the pull rod to adjust the seat to move forward and backward. After adjusting to the appropriate position, release the pull rod and make sure that the seat does not move forward or backward.

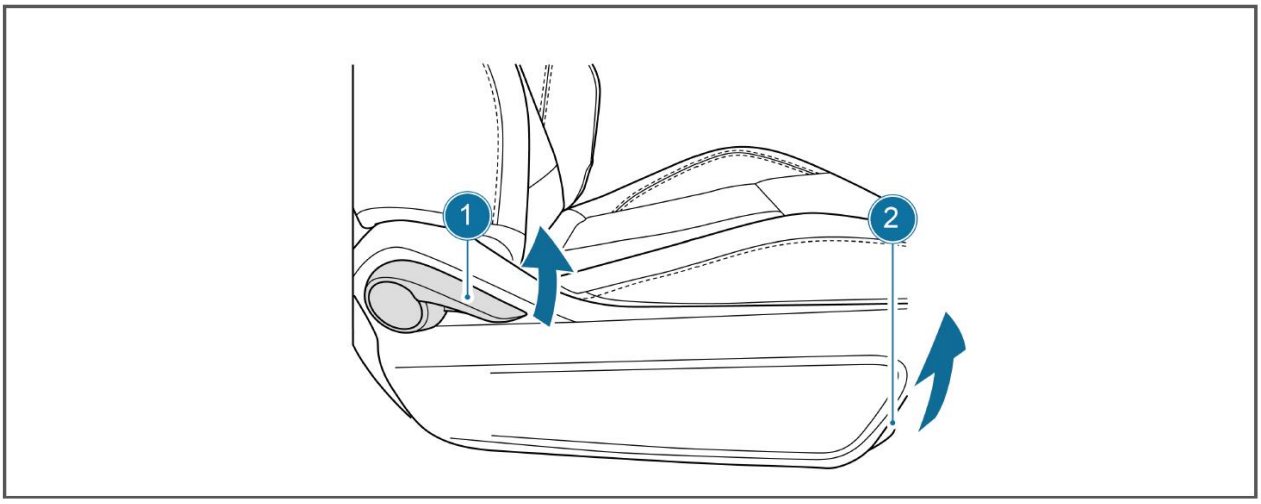
2. Seat height adjusting handle

Lift or press down the handle to raise or lower the seat. After adjusting to the appropriate position, release the handle.

3. Backrest angle adjustment handle

Sit in the seat, lift the handle, and lean forward or press back against the backrest. After adjusting the backrest to the appropriate position, release the handle, and shake back and forth a few times to ensure that the backrest is locked in place.

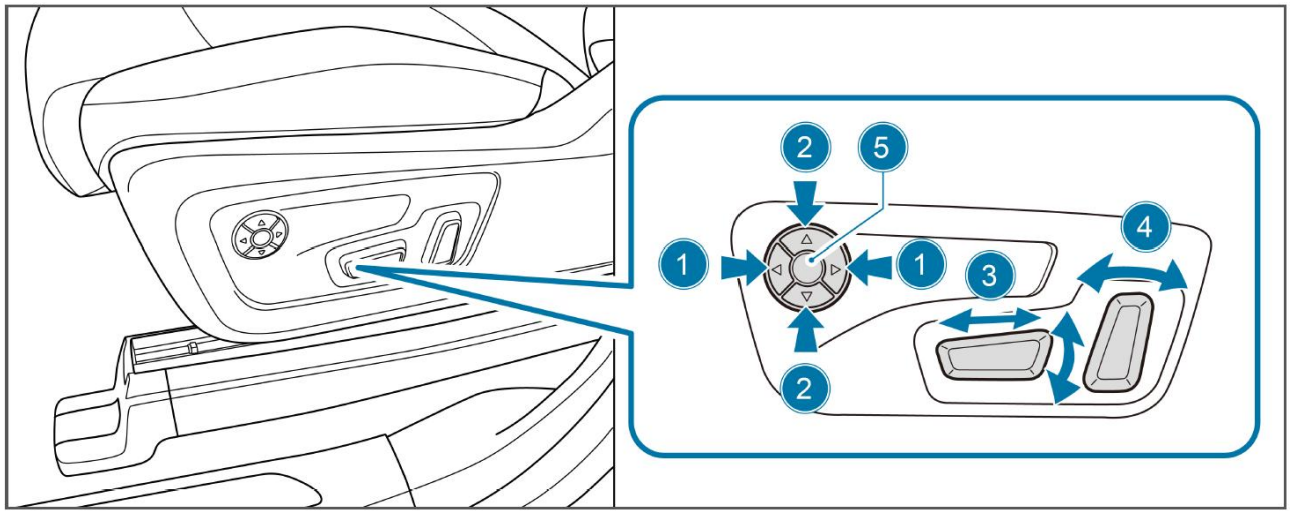
Manual adjustment of front passenger's seat



1. Backrest angle adjustment handle
2. Seat forward/backward adjustment pull rod

The manual adjustment method of the front passenger's seat is consistent with that of the driver's seat.

Electric adjustment of driver's seat*



1. Lumbar support forward-backward adjustment button

Press this button to adjust the lumbar support to move forward and backward. After adjusting to a proper position, release the button.

2. Up/Down adjustment button of lumbar support

Press this button to adjust the lumbar support to move up and down. After adjusting to a proper position, release the button.

3. Seat forward-backward and height adjustment button

Push the whole button forward and backward gently to adjust the seat to move forward and backward. Push the rear part of the button upward and downward gently to raise or lower the seat. After adjusting to a proper position, release the button.

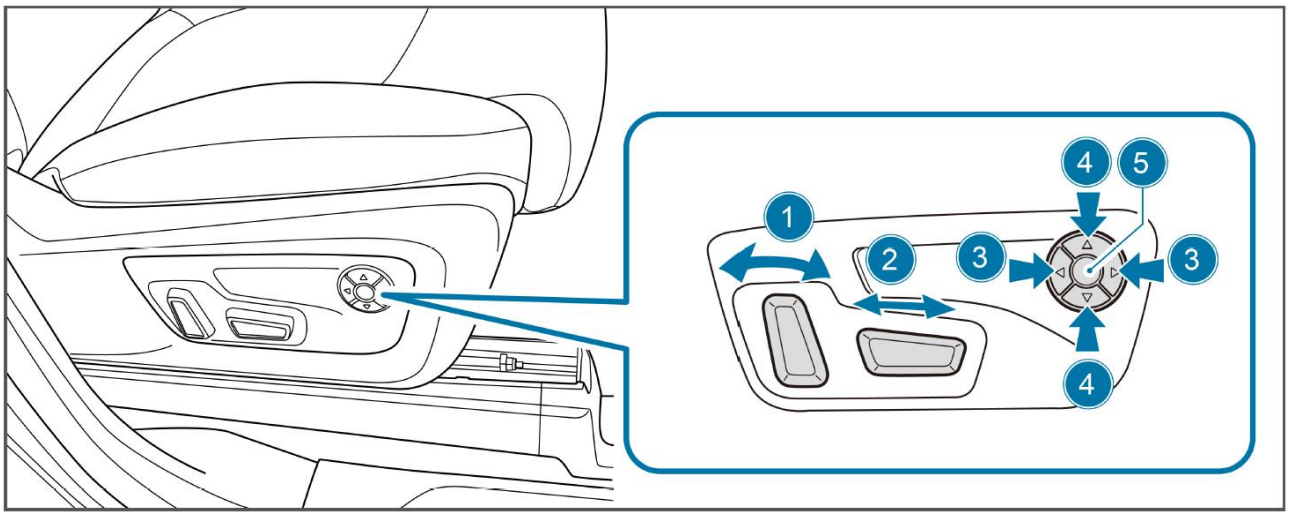
4. Backrest angle adjustment button

Push the button forward and backward gently to adjust the seat backrest angle. After adjusting to a proper position, release the button.

5. Massage function adjustment button*

Press this button to switch between lumbar support adjustment and massage adjustment. When switching to the massage function, press button 1 to adjust the massage intensity, and press button 2 to select different massage modes (see Chapter VI "Seat Settings in Entertainment System" for details of intensity and mode).

Electric adjustment of front passenger's seat*



1. Backrest angle adjustment button

   Push the button forward and backward gently to adjust the seat backrest angle. After adjusting to a proper position, release the button.

2. Seat forward-backward adjustment button

   Push the whole button forward and backward gently to adjust the seat forward and backward. After adjusting to a proper position, release the button.

3. Lumbar support forward-backward adjustment button

4. Up/Down adjustment button of lumbar support

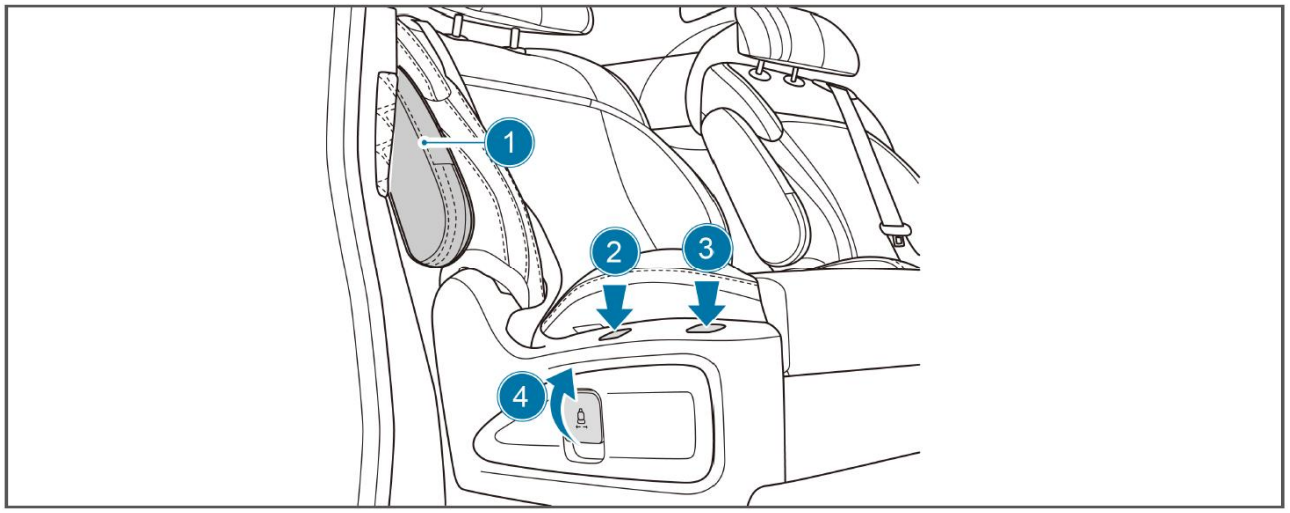
5. Massage function adjustment button*

   The adjustment method of lumbar support and massage function is the same as that of electric driver's seat.

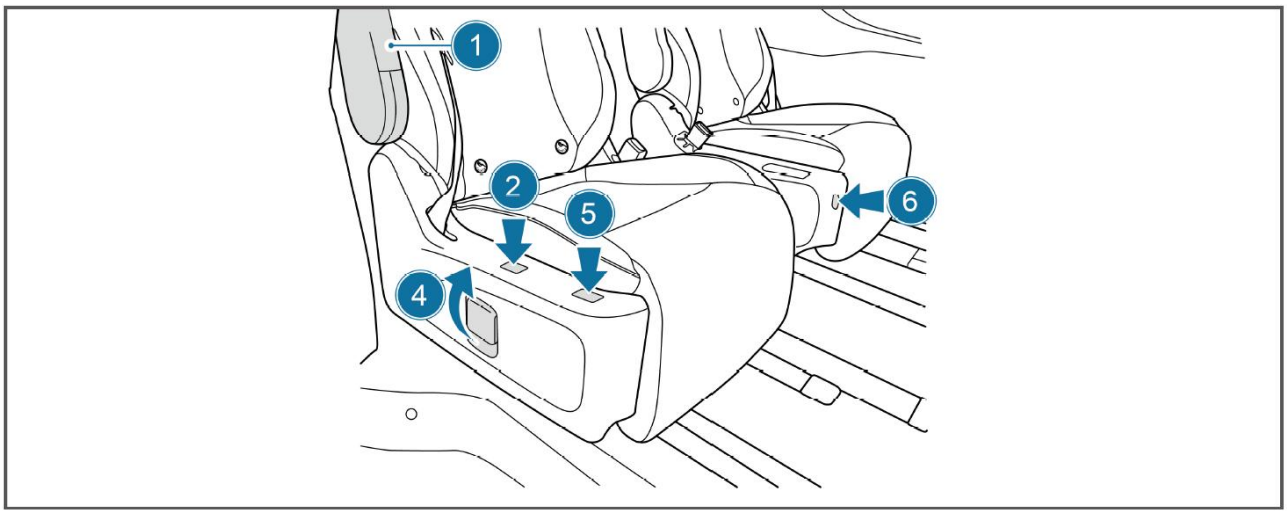
Middle seats

Power seat

Type I

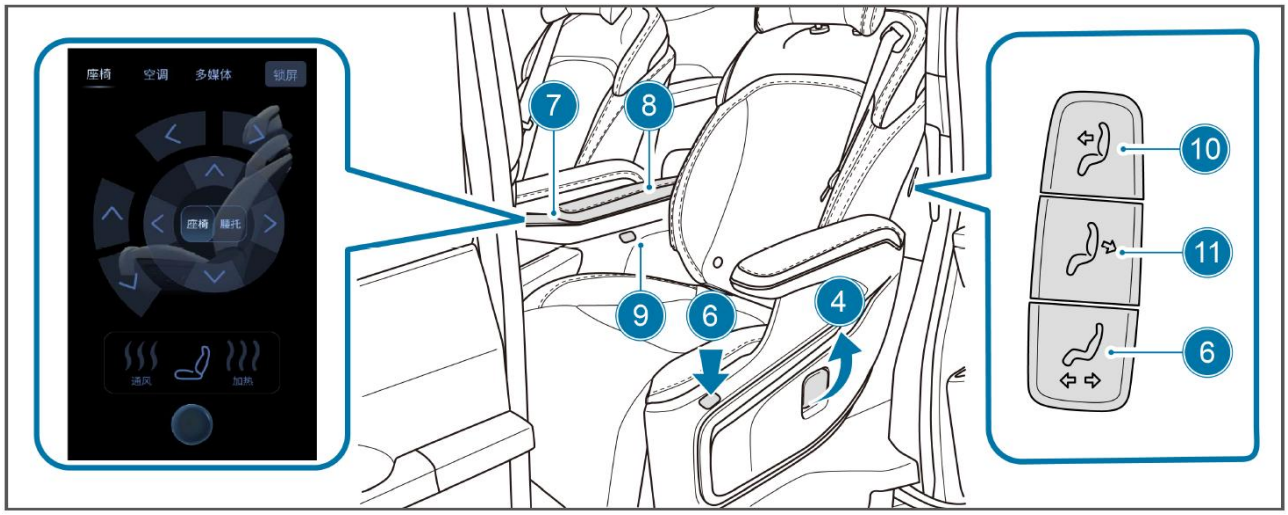


Type II

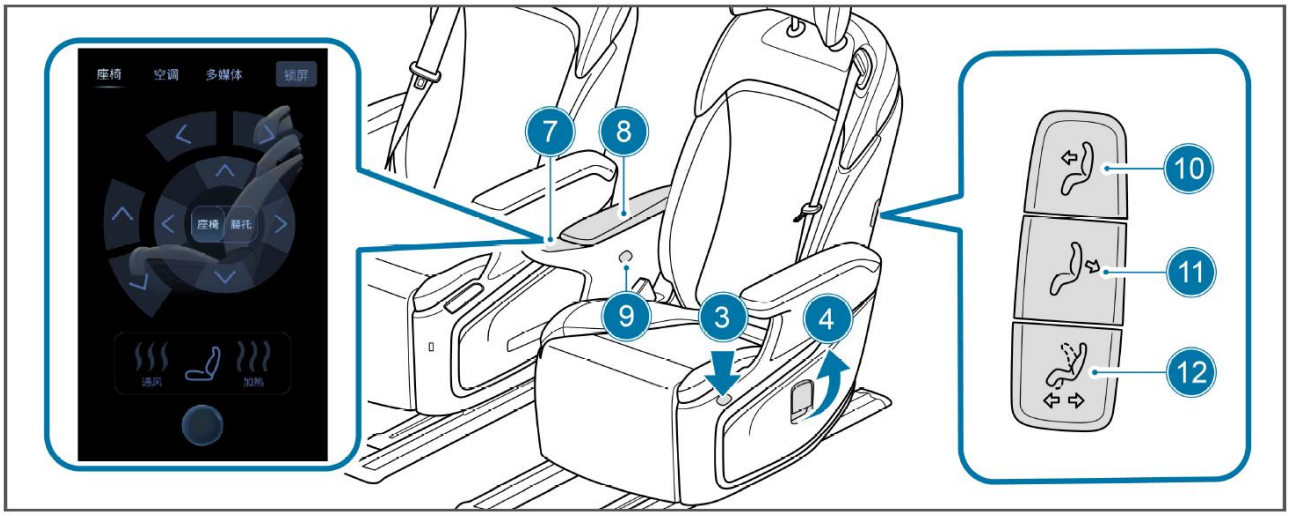


Intelligent seat *

Type I



Type II



1. Height-adjustable armrest

2. Backrest angle adjustment button

   Press this button to adjust the seat backrest angle to a proper position, and then release it.

3. Seat forward-backward adjustment button

   Press this button to adjust the seat forward and backward. Release the button after it is adjusted to a proper position.

4. Lateral sliding buckle of seat

   Pull up the handle to adjust the seat leftward or rightward in the vehicle. When the seat is inside the vehicle, the adjustable angle of middle seat backrest is relatively large. When the seat is outside the vehicle, the adjustable angle of the middle seat backrest is small.

5. Leg support adjustment button*

   Press this button to adjust the lifting height of the seat leg support. After adjusting it to a proper position, release the button.

6. Electric unlock button *

Press and hold this button to manually move the seat forward or backward. Release this button to lock the seat so that it cannot be moved forward or backward.

7. Armrest screen*

The seat ventilation, heating, massage, lumbar support and leg support can be adjusted through the armrest screen.

8. Fixed handrail*

9. Seat reset button*

Press this button to restore the seat function to its initial state.

10. Backrest forward adjustment button*

11. Backrest backward adjustment button*

12. Quick access button*

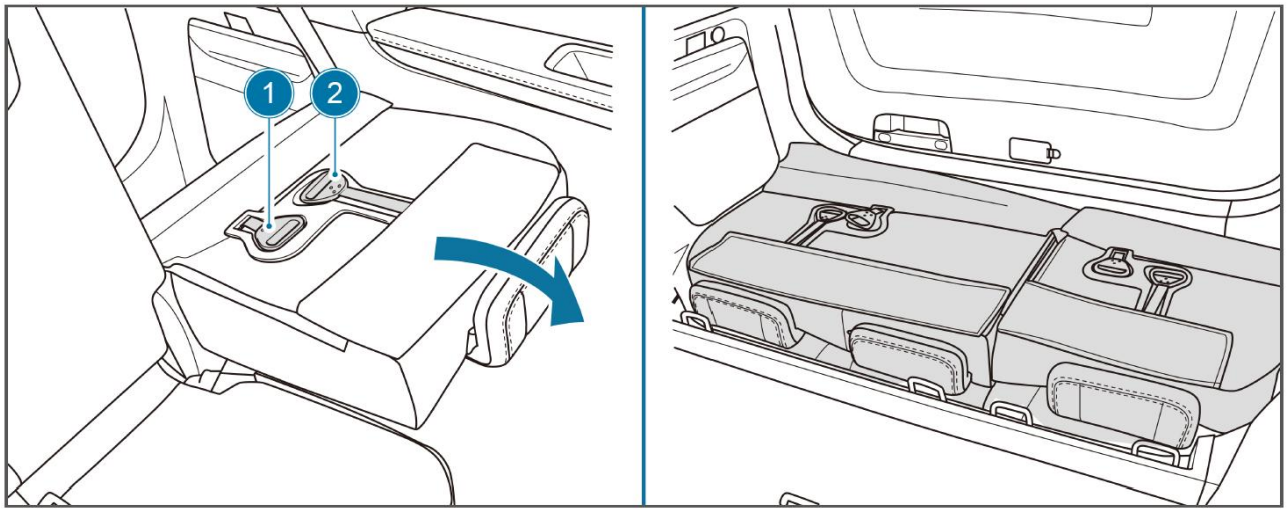
Press this button for the first time to retract the middle seat leg support, move the seat forward to the frontmost position, and fold the backrest forward at a certain angle so that passengers in the third row can get on the vehicle. Press this button again, and the seat will return to the design position.

Caution

When any switch on the middle seats is pressed, the second-row seats are occupied, gearshift lever is not in P position or vehicle speed is greater than zero, the middle seats will stop moving.

Rear seats

Folding in rear seats



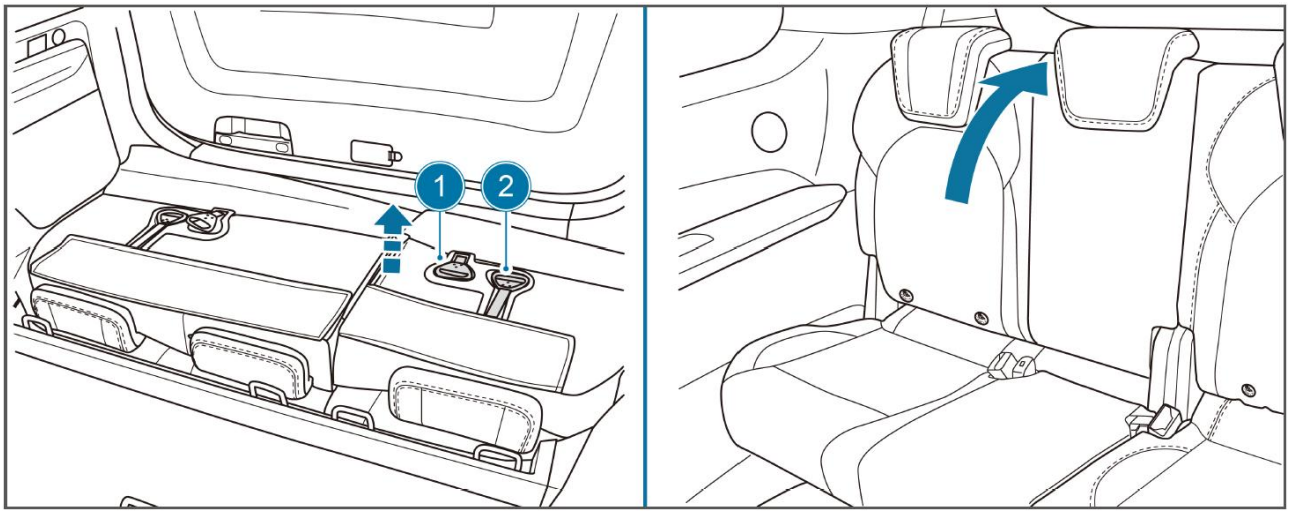
1. Adjust the seat headrest to the lowest position first.

2. Pull up the backrest release hand strap ② at the back of seat to unlock the backrest and gently fold it forward.

3. Pull the floor lock release hand strap ① at the back of the backrest backward to unlock the cushion, and then push the seat backward.

4. Put the rear seats in and fold them into the trunk seat slot.

Restoration of rear seat



1. Operate in an order reverse to the folding-down operation. Pull up the floor lock release hand strap ① and pull out the seat from the trunk seat slot.

2. Push the seat forward gently until a locking sound is heard.

3. Pull up the backrest unlocking strap ② to reset the seat backrest.

Warning

- During driving, the driver shall not adjust the seat and the passenger shall not fold the backrest.
- Be careful when adjusting the seat to ensure that it will not hurt other passengers when moving the seat.
- When adjusting the seat, do not put your hands under the seat or near moving parts to avoid injury.
- Do not fold the rear seat backrest when a passenger sits on the rear seat or the luggage is placed on the seat.
- When folding and resetting the rear seat, please slowly pull the backrest unlocking strap and floor lock unlocking strap to avoid damage to the straps due to excessive force.
- Check and confirm that the seat belt is not twisted or stuck in the seat backrest.
- When restoring the rear seat, gently shake the seat and backrest forward and backward to ensure that it is firmly locked in place.
- Do not tilt the seat excessively; otherwise, the waist seat belt may slip over the hip and directly strangle the abdomen, or make the shoulder seat belt touch the neck, which will cause serious injury or even increase the risk of death in case of an accident.
- When passengers in the middle and rear rows get on or off the vehicle, attention should be paid to avoid sharp objects (high-heeled shoes, umbrellas, etc.) from being inserted into the long slide rail groove. Especially when women wear high-heeled shoes, it is necessary to avoid inserting their heels into the slide rail groove, which will cause difficulty in movement and risk of falling.

Seat heating, ventilation and massage *

Control through multimedia display screen

See "Seat (Ventilation/Heating/Massage) Settings *" in Chapter VI "Entertainment System" for specific operation methods.

Controlled by middle seat armrest screen

For specific operation methods, please refer to "Middle Seat Armrest Screen" in Chapter VI "Entertainment System".

Warning

If the body cannot sense pain and temperature due to medication, paralysis, paralysis and other diseases, do not use the seat heating function, otherwise it may cause body burns.

Caution

- Do not kneel on the seat or make the seat bear concentrated load, so as not to damage the seat heating element.
- Do not clean the seat with wet cleaning method.
- Do not place the seat cushion when the seat heating function is turned on.
- As the seat heating and ventilation functions consume a large amount of power, they are only available when the vehicle is started.

Seat memory and convenient boarding and alighting *

Seat memory

The driver's seat of some models has a memory function. For specific operation methods, please refer to "Personal center - Personal memory" in Chapter VI "Entertainment System".

Convenient boarding and alighting

The convenient getting on/off function of the driver's seat can be activated and deactivated through "Car Setting" on the multimedia display screen.

Click [Vehicle control] - [Vehicle settings] - [Driving experience] - [Convenient getting on/off] on the multimedia display screen in turn, and click to enable this function.

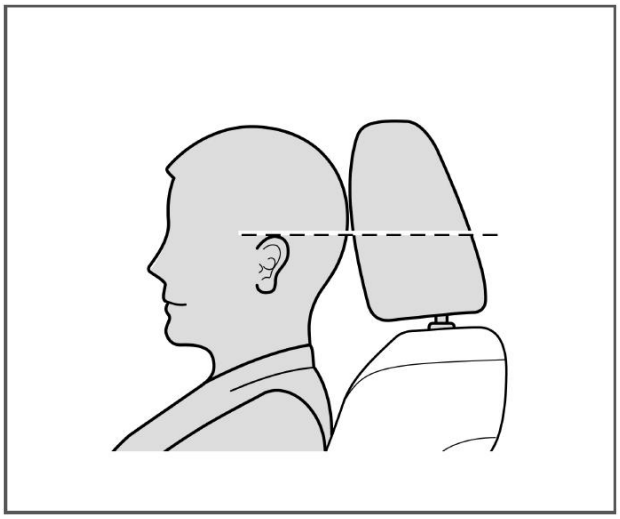
When convenient getting on/off and seat memory setting is enabled, the seat will move backward when the Start switch is switched to "OFF" mode from other modes. When the door state changes from ON to OFF and the Start switch is turned from "OFF" to "ACC" or "ON", the seat moves to the set memory position.

Seat adjustment parameters

Item	Front seats	Middle Seats	Rear Seats
Set forward and backward seat positions	200mm forward and 40mm backward	Comfortable/luxury model: front and rear stroke 210mm, side sliding stroke 90mm. Exclusive model: Before sideslip, the forward and backward travel is 375mm; after sideslip, the forward and backward travel is 465mm; The side sliding stroke is 90mm. Noble/Flagship model: Before sideslip, the forward and backward travel is 390mm; after sideslip, the forward and backward travel is 465mm; the sideslip travel is 80mm.	It can be folded into the trunk
Set backrest angle status	25°	25°	22°
Normal working status of seat backrest	30° forward 60° backward	30° forward and 65° backward	98° forward, 22° backward in design
Seat height adjustment travel	Only for the driver's seat: 20 mm upward and 40 mm downward	/	/

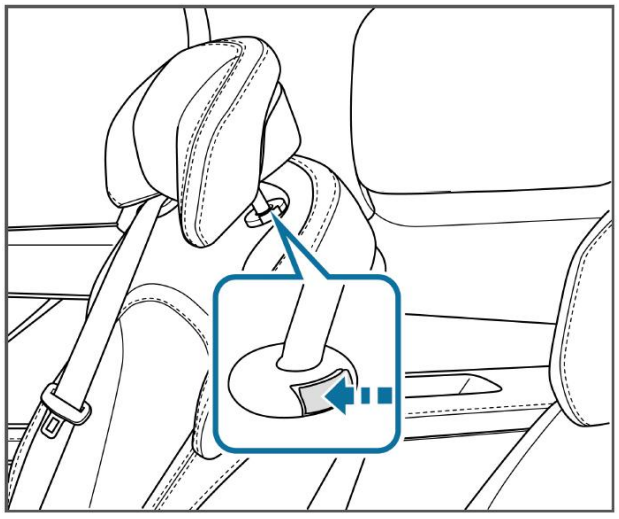
Headrest adjustment

Height of headrest



When adjusting the headrest, make sure that the center of the headrest and the upper part of the ear Qi Ping, so that the headrest can play the greatest protective role.

Upward and downward adjustment of headrest

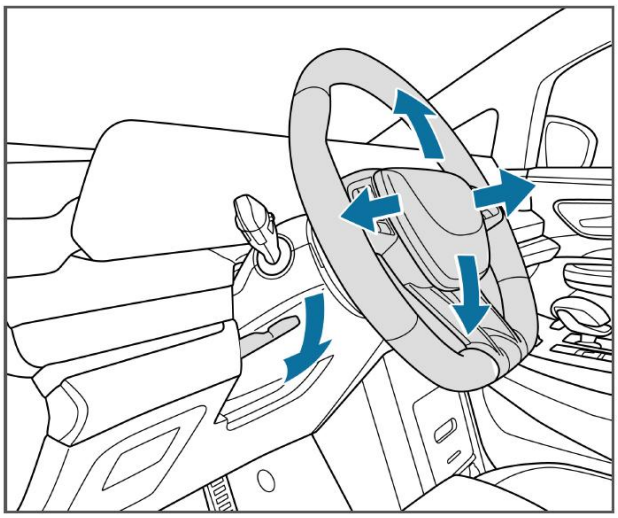


To raise the headrest, you can directly lift it to the desired position until a "click" sound is heard to ensure that the headrest is locked in place.

To lower the headrest, press and hold the adjustment switch on the side of the seat headrest, press the headrest downward to the desired height, and then release the switch until a "click" sound is heard. This ensures that the headrest is locked in place.

Steering wheel

Steering wheel adjustment



After holding the steering wheel with one hand and pulling the adjustment handle downward with the other hand, you can move the steering wheel in forward, backward and vertical directions to adjust it to the desired position. After adjustment, pull up the adjustment handle and confirm that it is locked in place.

Warning

Do not adjust the steering wheel when the vehicle is running, so as to avoid personal injury or death caused by loss of control of the vehicle.

Steering wheel heating*

1. Intelligent temperature control switch
2. Steering wheel heating switch

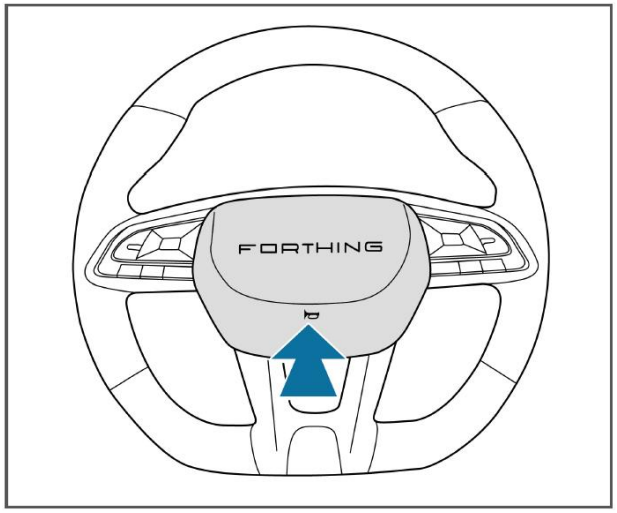
Tap the steering wheel heating switch above the seat adjustment interface of the multimedia display screen to turn on or off this function.

Click the intelligent temperature control switch at the upper part of the seat adjustment interface on the multimedia display screen, and then click [Steering wheel] after the position setting interface pops up to turn on the automatic heating of steering wheel. When the temperature inside the vehicle is lower than the set value, the steering wheel will automatically start heating.

Caution

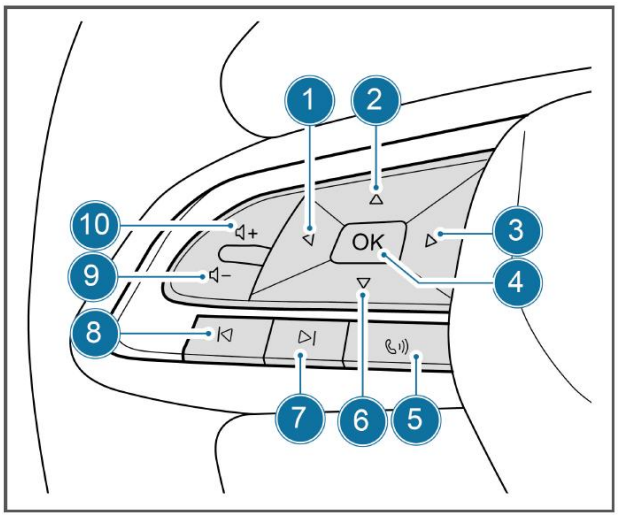
Due to the large power consumption of steering wheel heating, it is only available when the vehicle starts.

Horn



The horn is located in the middle of the steering wheel. Pressing the horn can remind pedestrians and vehicles outside the vehicle. Reasonable use of horns will help to ensure driving safety and reduce the frequency of accidents.

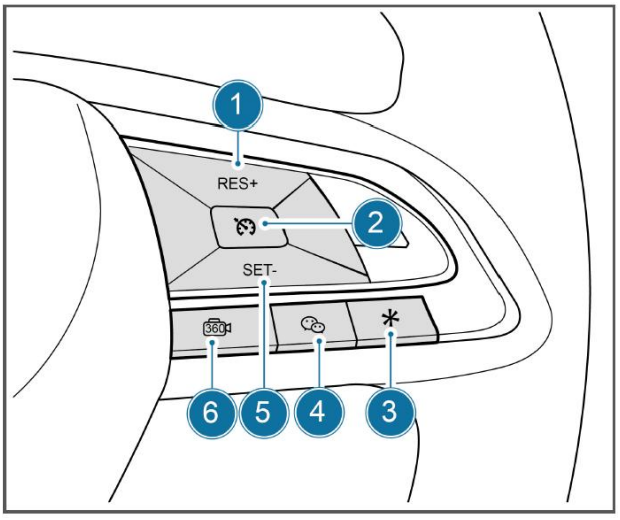
Steering wheel button (left)



1. Left button
2. Up button
3. Right button
4. OK button
5. Bluetooth voice button *
6. Down button
7. Backward button
8. Forward button
9. Volume down button
10. Volume up button

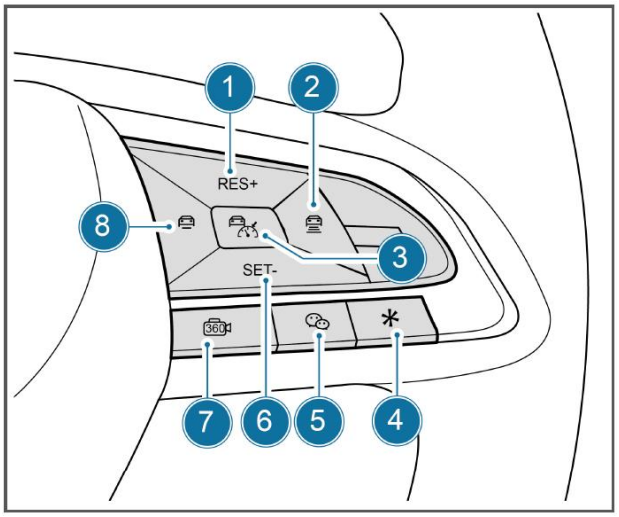
Steering wheel button on the right side

Type I



1. RES+: cruise resume/acceleration button
2. Cruise control button
3. Custom button
4. WeChat button *
5. SET-: vehicle speed setting/deceleration button
6. 360° panoramic view button*

Type II

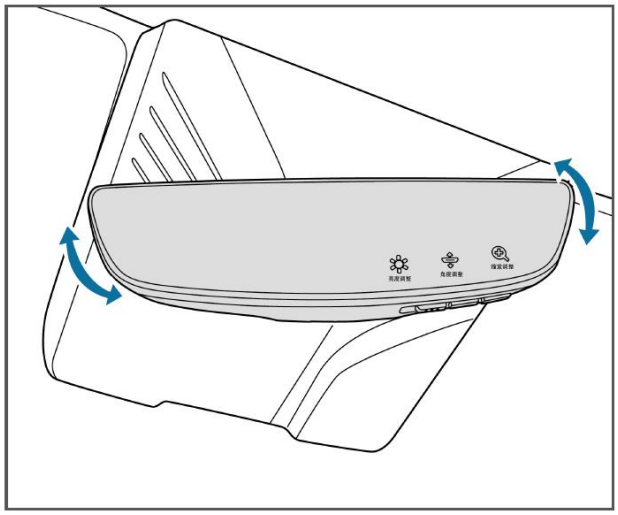


1. RES+: cruise resume/acceleration button
2. Distance increase button*
3. Cruise control button
4. Custom button
5. WeChat button *
6. SET-: vehicle speed setting/deceleration button
7. 360° panoramic view button*
8. Distance decreasing button*

Note

If the combination instrument and multimedia display screen do not respond or function abnormally, press and hold the "custom button" for more than 15s until the combination instrument and multimedia display screen turn black. The combination instrument and display screen will restart in about 30s. If the abnormality is still not solved, please contact an auto authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing.

Interior rearview mirror



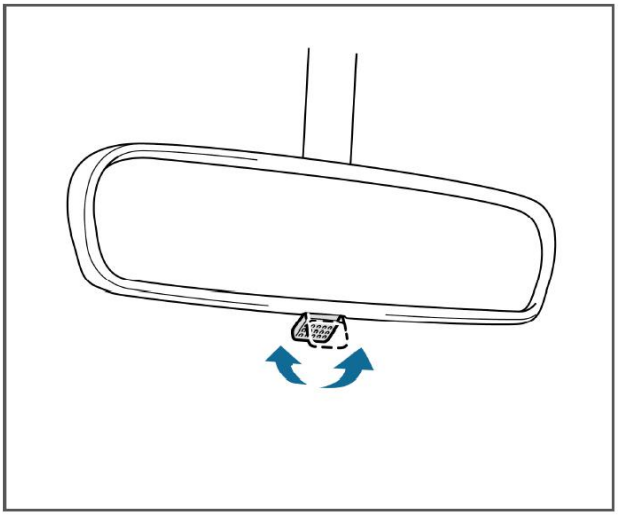
Hold the right side of the interior rearview mirror and adjust the mirror body up, down, left and right until the rear view can be fully seen from the mirror surface.

Caution

Due to the structural limitation of the interior rearview mirror, please adjust the interior rearview mirror gently and slowly to prevent the exterior rearview mirror body from coming off due to over-adjustment.

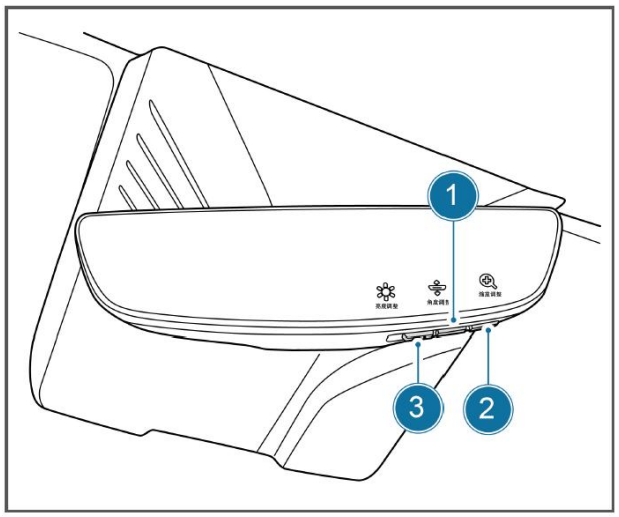
Anti-dazzling adjustment of interior rearview mirror

Manual anti-dazzling interior rearview mirror



Gently pull the tab at the bottom edge of the interior rearview mirror to switch the mirror reflection state to prevent dazzling.

Streaming interior rearview mirror*



1. Function adjustment button A
2. Function adjustment button B
3. Function combination keys

Function combination key

In the streaming media mode, long press this button to enter the reflector mode; short press it to enter backlight adjustment and view angle adjustment. In the reflector mode, long press or short press this button to enter the streaming media mode.

Function adjustment key

In the streaming media mode, adjust the required level of corresponding button function according to the screen prompt: Function adjustment button A: Adjust the brightness of interior rearview mirror backlight; Function adjustment button B: Adjust the angle of interior rearview mirror.

Note

- The interior rearview mirror is delivered with a protective film. Please tear it off manually to avoid affecting the user experience.
- Due to the difference in view angle between the streaming media interior rearview mirror and an ordinary interior rearview mirror, it is necessary to manually adjust the angle of the interior rearview mirror to a proper position after turning off the streaming media interior rearview mirror.

Cleaning of interior rearview mirror

The streaming interior rearview mirror camera is on the left side of the rear high-mounted brake light. After the vehicle runs for a long time, the camera of the interior rearview mirror will be blocked by dust, bird droppings and other foreign objects. Please manually clean it with soft cloth dipped in detergent to

prevent scratching the camera.

Note

On the road with serious water accumulation in rainy days, when the vehicle is running at a high speed, the rear wheels will bring up water mist and rise, resulting in the rear view being blocked. At the same time, there is water mist accumulated outside the streaming camera, and the image of the interior rearview mirror is hazy, which is normal. When the accumulated water on the road surface decreases or the vehicle speed is reduced, the fog on the camera will be automatically cleared to restore the field of vision.

Streaming interior rearview mirror disabled

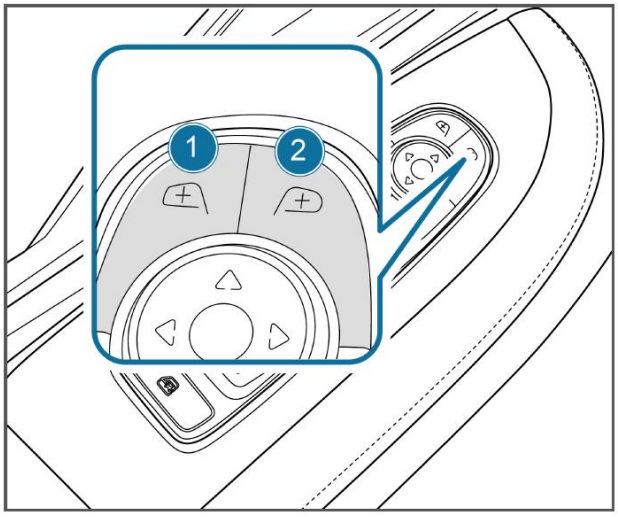
When the streaming media interior rearview mirror screen is blue and a camera warning sign with an exclamation triangle appears on the upper left, it indicates that the streaming media rearview mirror function is limited at this time. Please contact an authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing.

Warning

Do not adjust the position of the interior rearview mirror during driving; otherwise, an accident may be caused due to incorrect control, resulting in serious injury or even death.

Exterior rearview mirror

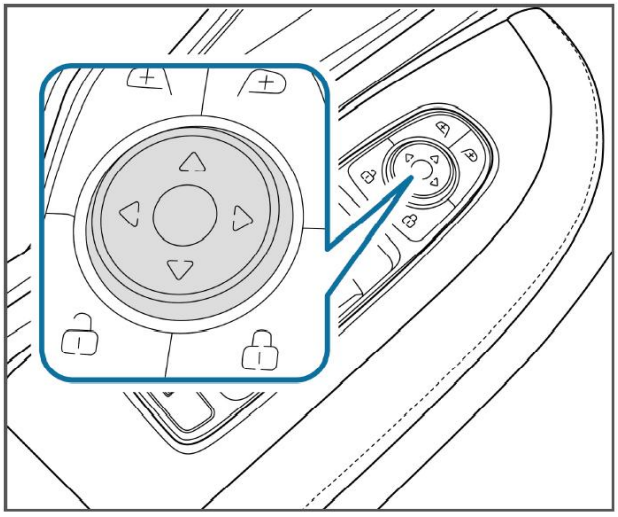
Exterior rearview mirrors power adjustment



1. Electric adjustment switch for lenses of left exterior rearview mirrors

2. Electric adjustment switch for lenses of right exterior rearview mirrors

Select the exterior rearview mirror adjustment switch on corresponding side to adjust the mirror angle.



Press the mirror adjustment switch up, down, left and right to adjust the exterior rearview mirror to the best view angle.

Folding and unfolding exterior rearview mirror

Tap [Vehicle control] - [Quick control] - [Rearview mirror folding] on the multimedia display screen in turn to fold or unfold the exterior rearview mirror.

Automatic folding and unfolding *

Tap [Vehicle control] - [Vehicle settings] - [Off-vehicle safety] on the multimedia display screen in turn to enable the function of [Automatic folding switch for exterior rearview mirrors]. With the Start/Stop switch at "OFF" position and the four doors closed, press the lock or unlock button on the intelligent key to automatically fold or unfold the exterior rearview mirrors.

Exterior rearview mirror memory*

Some models are equipped with exterior rearview mirror memory function. For specific operation methods, please refer to "Personal center - Personal

memory" in Chapter VI "Entertainment system".

Exterior rear-view mirror automatic tilting-down in reversing *

Tap [Vehicle control] - [Vehicle settings] - [Reversing Safety] on the multimedia display screen in turn to enable the function of [Tilting down rear-view mirror in reverse]. When the vehicle is reversing, the exterior rear-view mirror can automatically tilt down at a certain angle, which is convenient for the driver to check the road conditions.

The heating & defrosting of exterior rearview mirror

After the vehicle is started, press the rearview mirror heating button on the A/C control panel to activate or deactivate the defrosting function. This function can remove fog, frost and thin ice from exterior rearview mirrors.

Caution

- If the exterior rearview mirror is not folded or unfolded, it may be that the exterior rearview mirror has not been reset after collision. Manually push the exterior rearview mirror forward until a "click" sound is produced, and then operate the exterior rearview mirror to fold or unfold for two or three times.
- If there is snow on the exterior rearview mirror, please remove the snow before adjusting the exterior rearview mirror to avoid damaging the exterior rearview mirror.

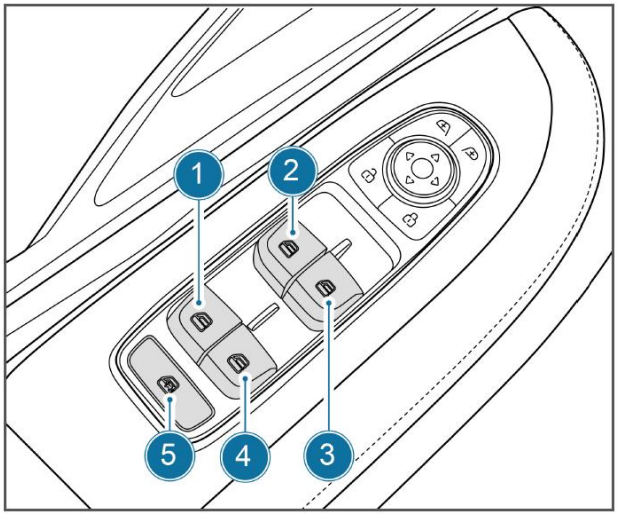
Warning

- Before driving, in order to ensure driving safety, it is necessary to ensure that the exterior rearview mirror is reset before adjusting the mirror angle.
- Do not adjust the exterior rearview mirror during driving.

Warning

driving.

Window



1. Rear left window switch
2. Front left window switch

3.Front right window switch

4. Rear right window switch
5. Window lock switch

Manually opening/closing the window

Pull up or press and hold the window switch downward to manually control the window to rise or fall.

Automatically opening/closing windows

Pull up or short press the window switch downward to automatically raise or lower the window. If you need to stop halfway, pull up or press this switch again.

Remotely opening/closing windows

When the Start switch is set to "OFF" and the fuel filler cap, trunk lid and four doors are closed, press and hold the unlock button on the intelligent key for more than 2 s, and the four windows will descend simultaneously until they are fully opened; press and hold the lock button on the intelligent key for more than 2 s, the four windows will ascend simultaneously until they are fully closed.

Window lock switch

To prevent children from accidentally opening or closing the window, pressing the window lock switch can disable the operation of the front-row passenger side window and the rear window. At this time, the window can only be controlled by the driver. If it

needs to be restored, press this switch again.

Window thermal protection

If the window is operated repeatedly in a short time, the motor protection function will be triggered and the power window control switch will fail. To resume window operation, wait for a while and then operate again.

Window anti-pinch protection

The window will stop closing and move in the opposite direction for a distance if it encounters an obstacle with certain resistance during closing. The automatic anti-pinch function will also work in case of impact or similar conditions to window obstacles.

Anti-pinch power window activation conditions

Within about 60s after the Start/Stop switch is turned to "ON" position or the vehicle is shut down.

Window initialization

1. After the 12V LV battery of the vehicle is disconnected, undervoltage and recharged.

2. After the door control module flashes the software.

3. After the window mechanism is replaced, such as replacing parts and components that affect the window lifting stroke, such as regulator, rubber strip, glass, weather strip and guide slot.

4. After the door shield and door control module are replaced.

It is necessary to conduct initialization learning of the power window with anti-pinch function for normal use.

Steps of initialization learning

1. Pull up the window switch and hold it until the window is completely closed, and then hold it for more than 2 seconds.

2. Press and hold the window switch downward until the window is fully opened, and continue to hold it for more than 2 seconds.

3. Pull up the window switch again until the window is closed.

4. Initialization learning ends.

The above steps need to be operated in a coherent manner to ensure successful learning. If the power window still cannot work normally after the above operations, please contact an authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing.

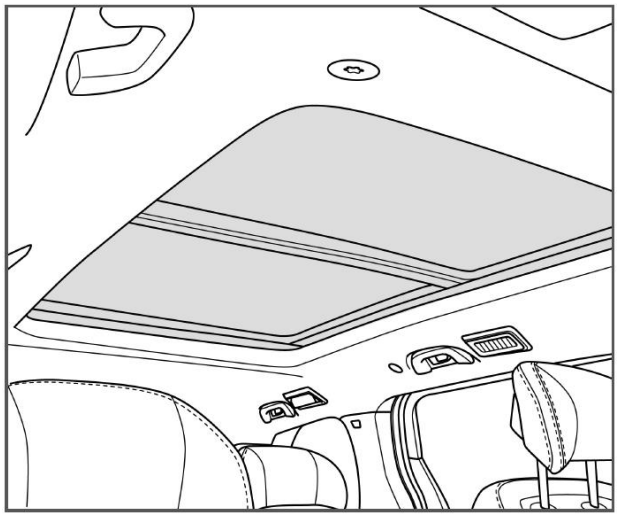
Caution

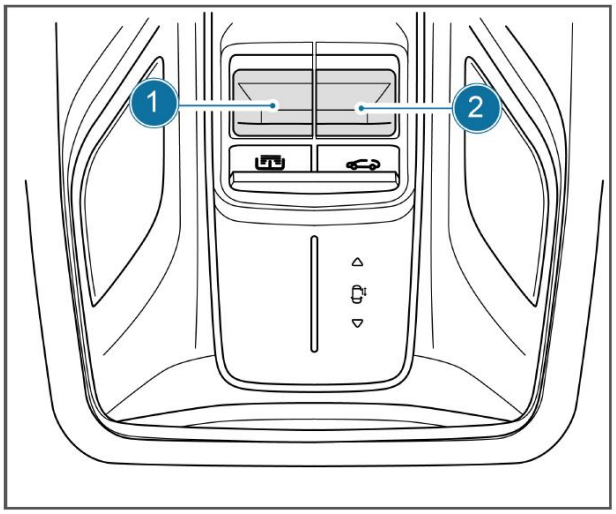
Caution

- When operating the window, make sure that no part of the passenger's body is pinched.
- Do not allow children to operate power windows.
- Do not deliberately test the anti-pinch function by pinching any part of the body.
- If an object is clamped when the window is about to be fully closed, the anti-pinch function may not work.

Sunroof *

Panoramic sunroof





1. Sunshade switch

2. Sunroof switch

To improve interior lamp and air circulation, the sunshade and the sunroof can be opened. To operate the sunroof, the Start/Stop switch must be turned to "ON" position.

Sunroof tilting and closing

When the sunroof is closed, pull the sunroof

switch backward for a short time, and the sunroof slides backward to the tilting state. The sunshade will open for a certain distance accordingly.

When the sunroof tilts, push the sunroof switch forward and shortly to close the sunroof.

Opening and closing of sunroof

When the sunroof is closed, short pull the sunroof switch backward to tilt the sunroof; short pull this button backward again to fully open the sunroof.

When the sunroof is open, pull the sunroof switch forward for a long time to manually close the sunroof. The sunroof will stop moving when it is released.

With the sunroof pressed to open or close, press the sunroof switch again, and the sunroof will stop at the current position. When the sunroof is closed by pressing one button, the sunshade will not close automatically. Operate the sunshade switch to close it.

Remote closing of sunroof *

When the vehicle is shut down, the sunroof cannot be operated with the interior buttons. If the sunroof is open at this time, it can be closed with the intelligent key.

If [Press] is selected for remote window closing setting on the multimedia display screen, the sunroof can be closed by short pressing the lock button of the intelligent key.

If [Press and hold] is selected for remote window closing on the multimedia display screen, press and hold the lock button of the intelligent key for more than 3s to close the sunroof.

Sunroof delayed closing

This function can be used to open or close the sunroof by pressing the buttons inside the vehicle within 30s after the engine is shut down.

Sunroof voice control and remote control*

After the voice system is activated in the vehicle, the sunroof can be controlled by the command "open or close the sunroof".

The sunroof can be remotely controlled through a mobile application connected to the vehicle.

Sunshade opening/closing

Press the sunshade curtain switch to open or close the sunshade curtain, and press this button again when the sunshade curtain is moving to stop it.

When the sunroof is open, the closed position of the sunshade cannot exceed the open position of the sunroof.

Sunroof anti-pinch protection

When the sunroof or the sunshade is subject to abnormal resistance or obstacles during automatic closing, the sunroof or the sunshade will automatically stop halfway and retract for a certain distance to prevent personal injury.

Caution

The sunroof anti-pinch protection is effective within 200 mm of the sunroof or the sunshade being fully closed.

Sunroof initialization

If the sunroof cannot be fully closed, it can be restored by the following operation:

1. Press and hold the sunroof closing button for about 6-8s, and the sunroof will move back and forth for a short distance (less than 10 mm).

2. Release the sunroof closing button, press and hold it again after 5s, and the sunroof will automatically go a cycle from fully open to fully closed. At this time, release the button, and the sunroof initialization is completed.

Sunroof thermal protection

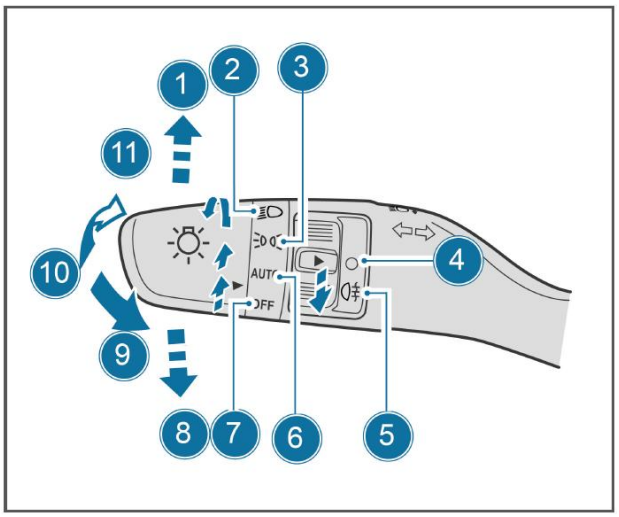
To prevent abnormal function caused by overheating of the sunroof motor, after the sunroof is continuously operated for 120s (under normal resistance state), the sunroof thermal protection will be activated. At this time, the sunroof cannot be operated temporarily. After about 30s of motor cooling, the sunroof can be operated again.

Warning

- When operating the sunroof or the sunshade, make sure that it will not clamp any part of the body.
- Do not allow children to operate the sunroof or the sunshade.
- Do not sit on the sunroof.
- When the vehicle is running, do not allow passengers to put their hands or heads out of the vehicle.
- Do not test the anti-pinch function with any part of your body.
- The anti-pinch function may not work if any object is pinched when the sunroof or the sunshade is about to be fully closed.

Lighting

Exterior lighting



1. Right turn signal
2. Low beam
3. Position lamp
4. Rear fog lamp off state
5. Rear fog lamp
6. Automatic lighting
7. Headlamp OFF
8. Left turn signal
9. High beam flashing
10. Low beam
11. High beam

Turn signal switch

Pull the light control handle upward or downward, and the right or left turn signal will flash. After the steering is completed, the handle will return to its original position and the turn signal will be turned off.

Switch between high and low beams

When the low beam is turned on, push the light control handle forward to the limit position to turn on the high beam; pull it back to turn off the high beam.

Position lamp

When the light switch is in ATUO position and the system detects that the ambient lamp intensity is dark, press the unlock button on the intelligent key to unlock the door, and the position lamp will automatically illuminate; after locking, starting the vehicle or sleeping, the position lamp will go out.

Daytime running lamp

The daytime running lamp is mainly used in the daytime and can be automatically turned on, so that other drivers can see your vehicle more clearly and ensure driving safety.

Fog lamp switch

When the low beam lamp is turned on, pull the adjusting ring▶ to make it point at the rear fog lamp. The rear fog lamp will be turned on and the adjusting ring will rebound to "O" position. Repeat the above operations to turn off the rear fog lamp.

Automatic lighting

When the adjusting ring▶ is toggled to point to AUTO, the headlamps and other exterior lights will be automatically turned on or off according to the ambient brightness.

Follow me home

Turn the light control handle back and forth once within 5 minutes after the vehicle is shut down, and the "Follow Me Home" function will be turned on. At this time, the low beam will be turned on automatically.

After the door is locked for 30s or the "Follow Me Home" function is turned on for 5 minutes, the low beam will be automatically turned off.

headlamp height adjustment

When the vehicle is heavily loaded, the rear part of the vehicle body will sink, so that the low beam will be raised, affecting the driver's sight and causing potential safety hazards. At this time, you should find a safe place to stop the vehicle and then adjust the headlamp height.

The specific methods are as follows:

1. Turn on the headlamp when the Start switch is at "ON" position.

2. Tap [Vehicle control] - [Vehicle settings] - [Driving experience] in sequence on the multimedia display screen to find the headlight height adjustment.

3. Select the height adjustment option according to the actual situation, with 4 gears.

Light signal mode

External light signal triggering conditions

1. The position lamp is turned off.

2. The external light signal mode of the entertainment system is turned on.

3. The vehicle is in the wake-up state.

Tap [Vehicle control] - [Vehicle settings] - [Driving experience] - [External light signal] on the multimedia display screen in turn to enable or disable the external light signal function.

After the function is enabled, the front and rear exterior lights of the vehicle can flash or illuminate according to different scenarios, including greeting light message, locking light message, parking light message, charging reminder and intelligent parking.

The specific light signal mode is as follows:

External Light Signal Mode	Triggering Conditions
Welcome lights *	The vehicle's immobilizer locking system is turned on when an intelligent key or Bluetooth key entering the passive entry area is identified.
Locking lamp language	When the vehicle is locked with the intelligent key or Bluetooth key identified, the vehicle power is OFF and the anti-theft start locking system of the vehicle is not turned on.
Parking lamp language	When the vehicle is started or in READY state and the gearshift lever is at P position, or AUTO/MANUAL parking is activated for 3s.
Charging reminder *	When the vehicle starts charging, it goes out after 30s.
Intelligent parking *	When remote parking, automatic parking and tracking reversing are used.

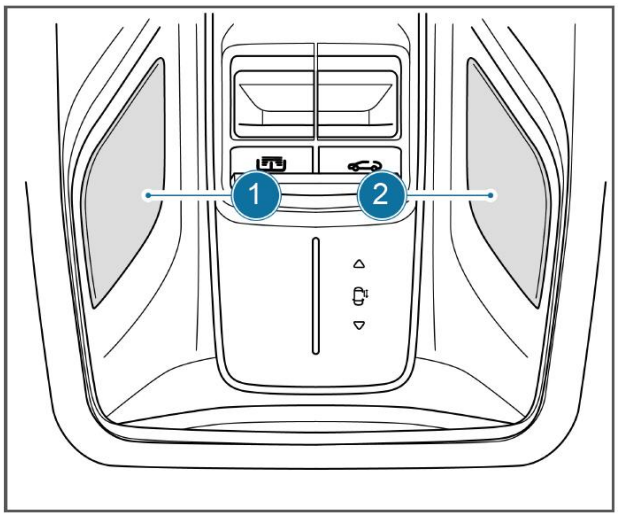
Caution

The external light signal is turned on by default.

Interior lighting

The interior lamps have the off-delay function.

Front interior lamp

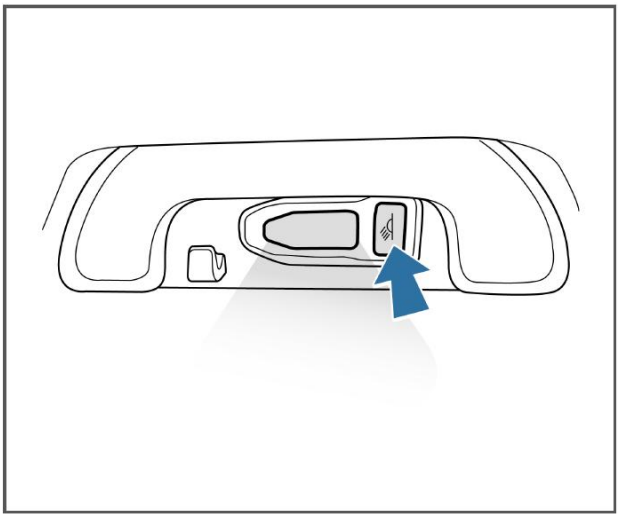


1. Front left interior light switch

2. Front right interior light switch

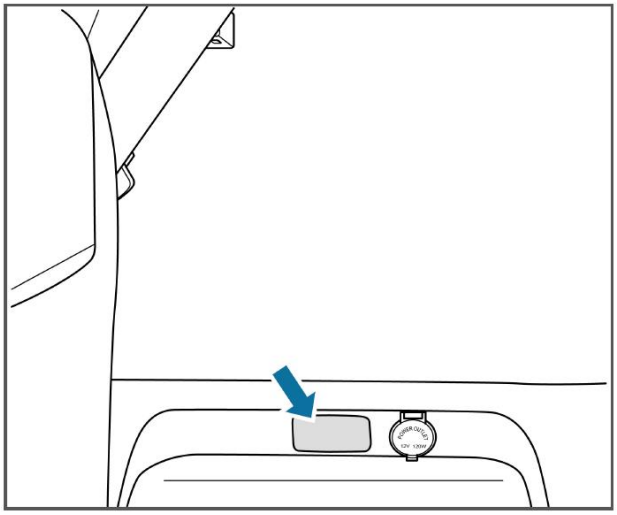
Touch the left/right front interior light switch to turn on or off interior lights at corresponding sides.

Middle and rear-row interior lights



Some models are equipped with rear-row interior lights, which are located in the middle of the handle above the seat. Press the interior light switch to turn on or off the interior lights.

Rear trunk light



When the trunk lid is opened, the trunk lamp will light up automatically. After the trunk lid is closed, the trunk light will go out automatically.

Atmosphere lamp*

Ambient lamps can create a nighttime atmosphere inside the vehicle and assist with interior lighting.

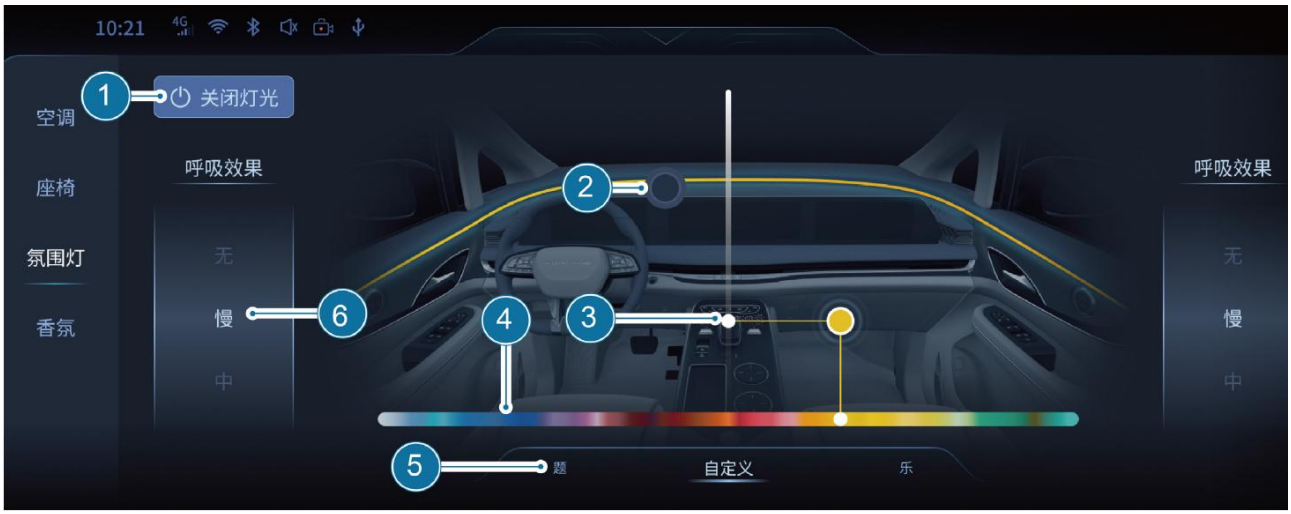
Interior atmosphere lights include instrument panel atmosphere light, left and right front door upper atmosphere light and left and right sliding door upper atmosphere light.

Enter the interior atmosphere light adjustment interface through the A/C interface to turn on or off the internal light signal function.

After the function is enabled, the atmosphere lamp can be turned on according to different scenes. In some scenes, the color, brightness and breathing effect can be adjusted. The scenes include: theme mode, custom mode, music mode, power-on signal, power-off signal, voice wake-up, voice execution and door opening warning.

Note

- The breathing effect cannot be adjusted in the music-along mode.
- Breathing effect: fast -2 seconds/time, medium -4 seconds/time, slow -6 seconds/time.
- The ambient lamp is designed to be used at night. It can only light up when the position lamp is turned on.
- The color of the ambient light may not be completely consistent with that set on the screen due to the brightness of the surrounding environment and the multimedia display screen.



1. Ambient light switch
2. Instrument panel atmosphere light switch
3. Adjust the anchor point
4. Corresponding mode selection area
5. Mode Switching
6. Respiratory effect regulation

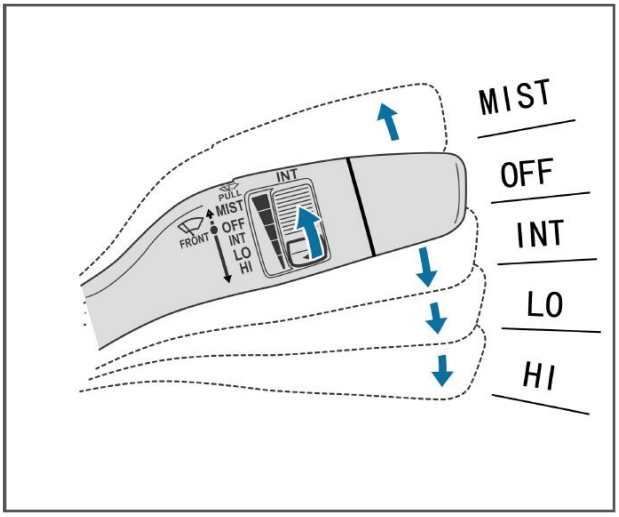
The specific light signal mode is as follows:

Atmosphere Light Language Mode	Triggering Conditions	Light Signal Execution Output
Theme mode	The vehicle position lamp is turned on, and theme mode is selected in the audio-visual entertainment system.	The instrument panel atmosphere light, front door atmosphere light and sliding door atmosphere light are on at the same time, and the three colors show a gradient effect in the atmosphere light.
Custom mode	The vehicle position lamp is turned on, and custom mode is selected in the audio-visual entertainment system.	The instrument panel atmosphere light, front door atmosphere light and sliding door atmosphere light illuminate at the same time. The built-in 64 colors are optional. After the color is changed, the atmosphere lamp will go out as a whole and then light up in the new selected color.
Music mode	The vehicle position lamp is turned on, music is being played, and the music mode is selected in the audio-visual entertainment system.	The instrument panel atmosphere light, front door atmosphere light and sliding door atmosphere light display the rhythm along with the audio being played.
Power-on signal	The Start switch is turned from "OFF" position to other positions, and the headlights are turned on from off within 1 second.	Gradually light up the sliding door atmosphere lamp → front door atmosphere lamp → instrument panel atmosphere lamp in sequence.
Power-off signal	The Start switch is turned from "OFF" to "OFF", and the headlight state is changed from ON to OFF within 1s.	Gradually go out in the sequence of instrument panel atmosphere light → front door atmosphere light → sliding door atmosphere light.
Speech wakeup voice trigger	After a passenger wakes up the voice assistant, the door panel atmosphere light in the wake-up area corresponding to his/her seat is continuously on with the voice input and goes out 2 seconds after the voice input ends, indicating that the voice command has	The door panel atmosphere lights (front door atmosphere light and sliding door atmosphere light) in the corresponding wake-up zone are continuously on along with voice input. It goes out 2 seconds after the voice input ends.

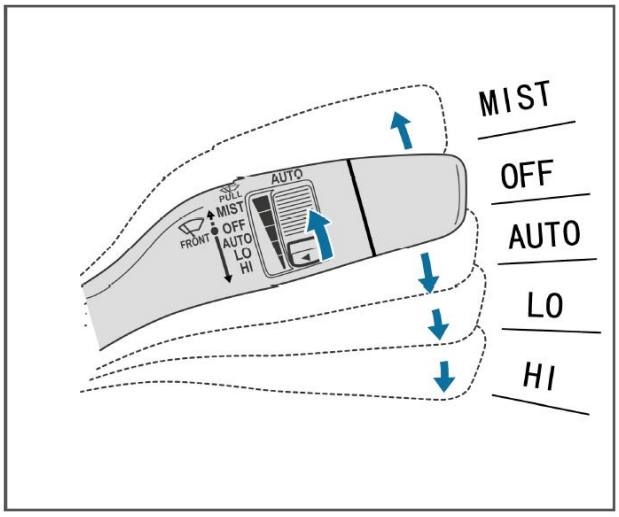
Atmosphere Light Language Mode	Triggering Conditions	Light Signal Execution Output
	been received.	
Voice execution	The Voice Assistant executes the command, recognizes and repeats the voice command with sound, and at the same time, the corresponding atmosphere lamp (flow section) turns on or off along with voice repeating, indicating that the command is ready to be executed.	The instrument panel atmosphere lamp turns on and off according to the voice repeating rule.
Door opening warning *	When the vehicle triggers Level 2 alarm of the door opening warning function.	Corresponding door atmosphere lights on the same side (front door atmosphere light and sliding door atmosphere light) keep turning on/off for warning.

Wiper

Front manual wiper



Front automatic wiper*



MIST: Jog mode. Pull the wiper control handle upwards to wipe the wiper once, and the handle will automatically return to its original position after release.

OFF: Turn off the wiper. When the wiper control lever is in OFF mode, the wiper stops wiping. This is the default gear.

INT mode: Intermittent wiping. Pull the wiper control handle downward to the INT position, the wiper will wipe intermittently, and the intermittent time can be adjusted by adjusting the ring. From top to bottom, the intermittent time gradually decreases and the wiping speed gradually increases.

AUTO*: Automatic wiping. Pull the wiper control handle downward to the AUTO position, the wiper will wipe automatically, and the sensitivity can be adjusted by adjusting the ring. From top to bottom, the sensitivity gradually increases and the wiping speed gradually increases.

LO: low-speed wiping. Pull the wiper control handle downward to LO position for low-speed continuous wiping.

HI mode: High-speed wiping. Pull the wiper control handle downward to HI position for high-speed continuous wiping.

Caution

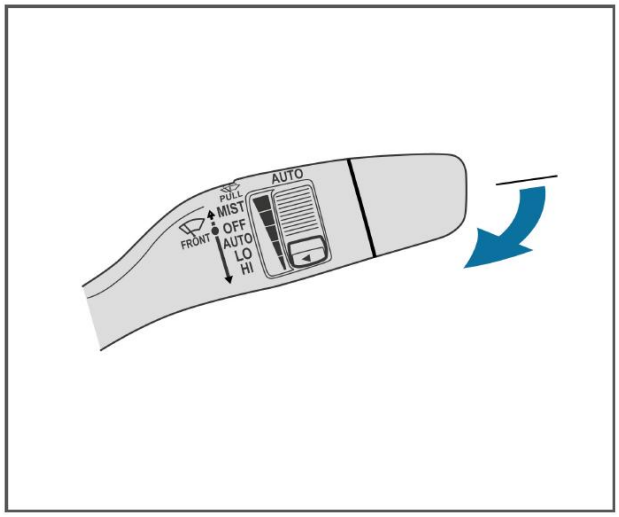
When the wiper control handle is turned to AUTO position and the automatic wiping function of wiper is activated, the wiper may wipe under the following conditions, which is normal:

- Areas where the light changes significantly, such as woods and overpasses.
- Foreign objects, such as leaves, fall on the sensor area.
- Vehicles pass through dusty areas, such as following large vehicles or passing through construction sections.

The following conditions may cause the automatic wiping function to fail:

- Foreign matters are attached to the surface of the rain sensor.
- If other electronic equipment is added or connected to the vehicle, the system function may also be affected during use.

Front windshield washer

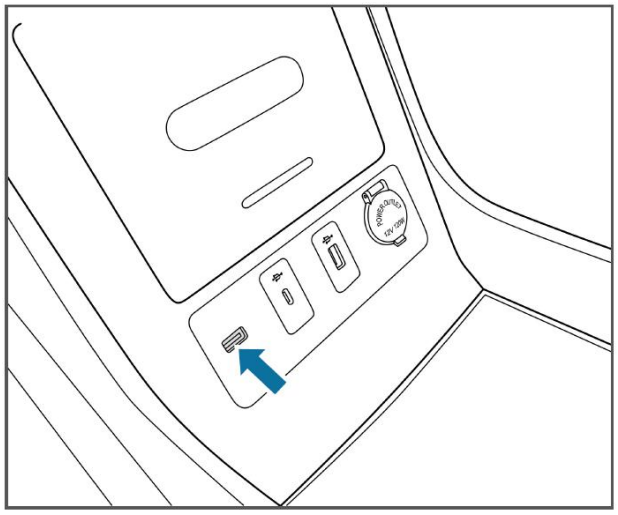


Pull back and hold the wiper control handle, and the front windshield washer starts to spray water. At the same time, the front wiper performs low-speed wiping. Release the wiper control handle to stop spraying water and wiping.

USB interface

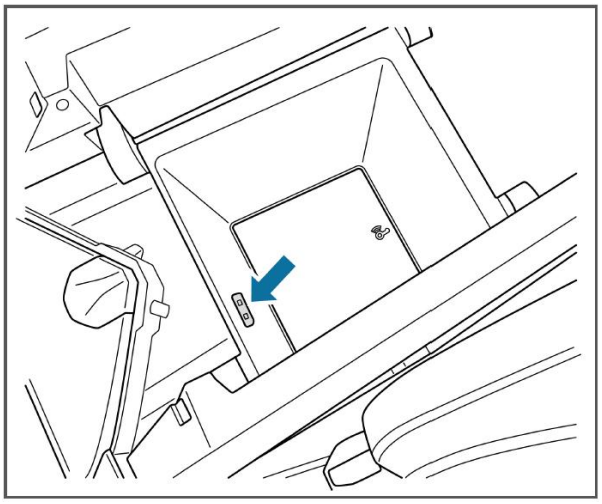
The USB interface can work only when the Start/Stop switch is at "ON" or "ACC" position.

Front USB interfaces



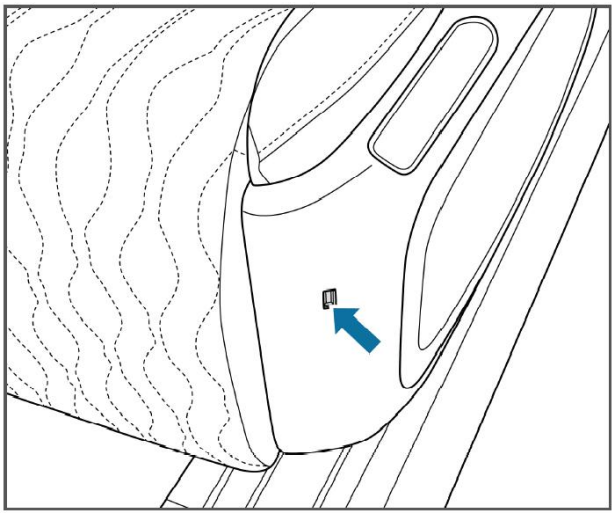
The front USB interface is located near the storage sink at the lower part of the console.

Internal USB interface of central armrest box



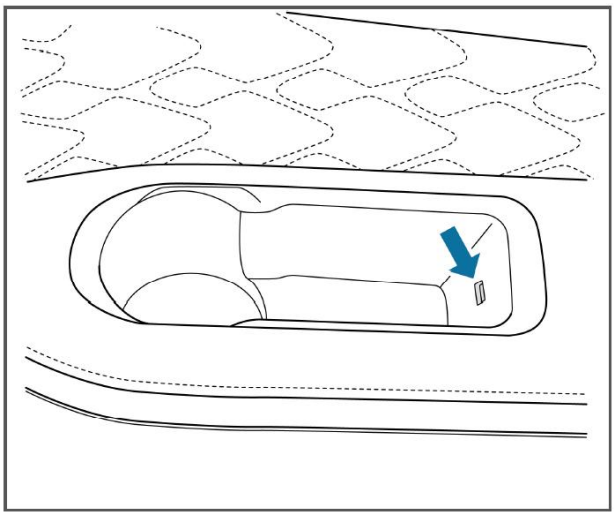
The USB interface inside the central armrest box is located on the upper inner wall of the front part of the central armrest box.

Middle USB interface *



The middle USB charging interface is located in the front of the inner shield of the middle seat.

Rear USB Interface



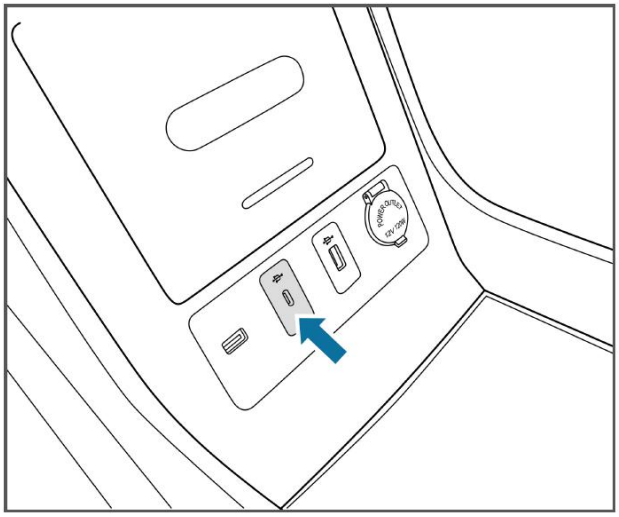
The rear USB interface is located inside the left/right rear side wall storage sink.

Caution

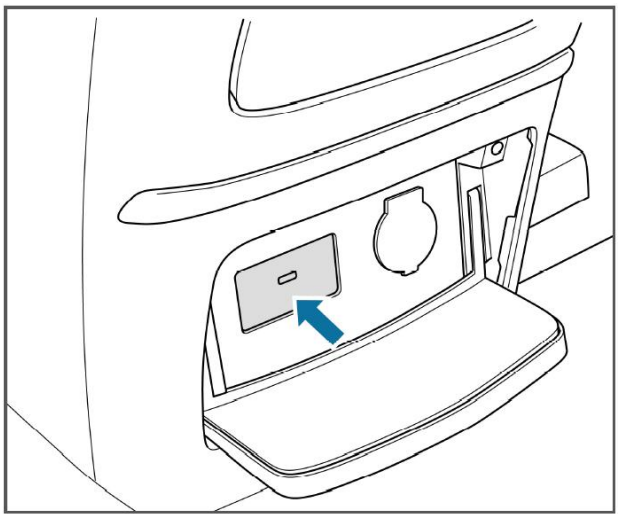
- Do not insert metal foreign objects into the interface to avoid fire caused by short circuit.
- The USB interface is only for charging, with a maximum power of 18 W. Do not insert any electrical appliance exceeding this power to avoid fire.
- When plugging and unplugging the USB data cable, try not to tilt it in the same direction as the USB interface, avoiding damaging the USB interface.

Type-C power interface

Type-C interface at lower part of console



Rear Type-C connector of console*

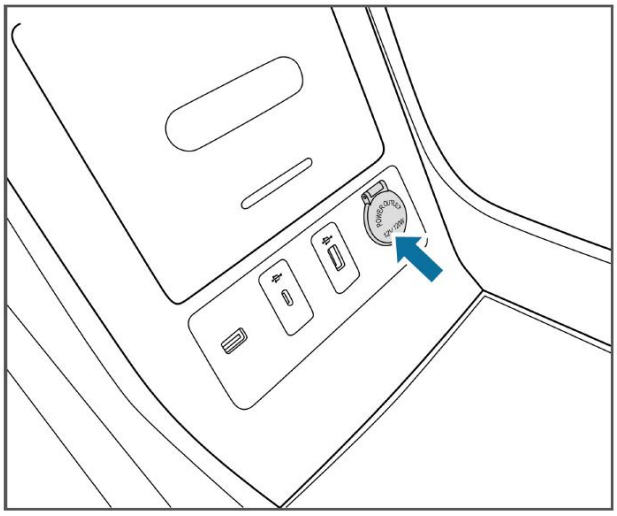


The Type-C power interface supports the charging of mobile phones, tablets and laptops (the charging equipment interface shall be a Type-C interface).

12V On-board power supply

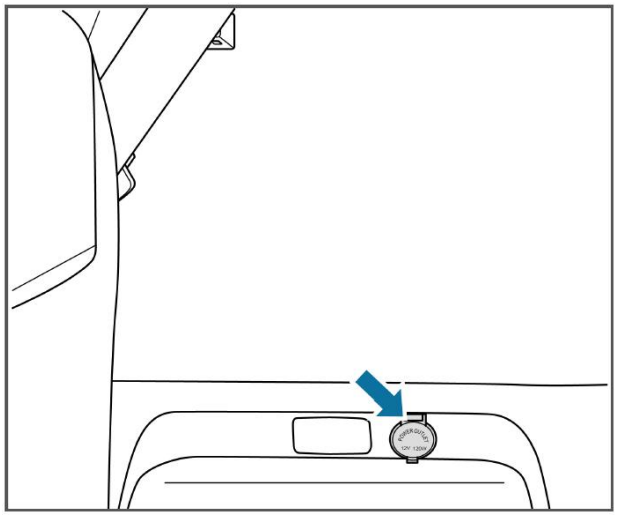
The 12V on-board power supply can work only when the Start/Stop switch is turned to "ON" or "ACC" position.

Front on-board power supply of console



The front 12V on-board power supply is located near the storage tank at the lower part of the console.

Trunk on-board power supply

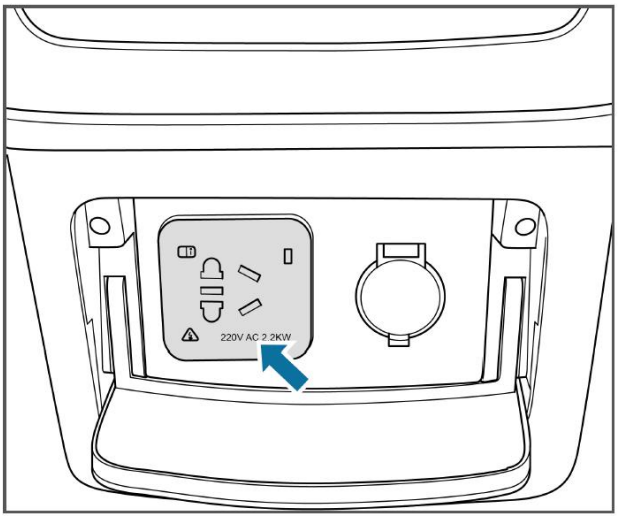


The rear on-board power supply is located on the right shield of the trunk.

Caution

- The maximum output power of the 12V on-board power supply is 120W. Do not insert high-power electrical appliances to avoid fire.
- Do not allow children to use or contact the 12V on-board power supply to avoid electric shock.
- Do not insert metal foreign objects into the power interface to avoid fire caused by short circuit.
- The 12V on-board power supply is only used for power supply. Do not insert the cigarette lighter into the 12V on-board power socket to avoid fire caused by short circuit.

220V on-board power supply *

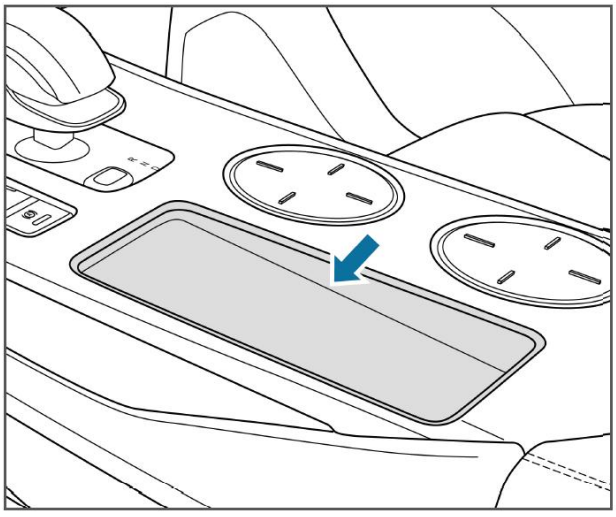


The 220V power interface is located at the rear of the console. After the vehicle is started, insert the plug of electrical equipment into the 220V on-board power socket. After use, pull out the plug of electrical equipment.

Warning

- Do not touch the 220V on-board power socket with hands.
- When using 220V on-board power supply alone or discharging outside the vehicle at the same time, the total power of electrical appliances shall not exceed 2.2kW; otherwise it may cause safety accidents.
- Do not store or use the discharging equipment in a place with water or near heat sources.

Wireless charging *



The mobile phone wireless charging device is located above the console. It can be used to charge portable chargeable devices (such as mobile phones) that support wireless charging.

Charging

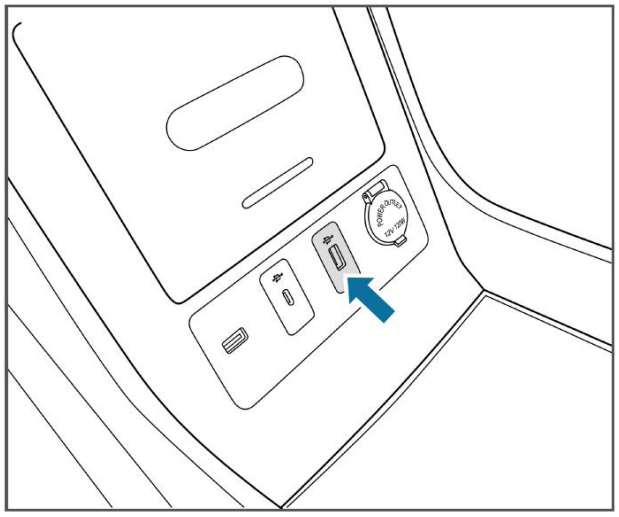
Before charging, make sure that there is no interference from other objects in the wireless charging area. When the Start/Stop switch is turn to "ON" or "ACC" position, place the device to be charged in the middle of the charging area, and judge whether the charging is successful according to the charging state indicator of the device.

After charging is completed, it will automatically stop. If it is necessary to stop charging midway, remove the charging device from the surface of the wireless charging device.

Caution

- The device to be charged, both the device itself and its external wireless charging case, must comply with national wireless charging standards.
- The wireless charging device can only charge one device at a time.

Automobile data recorder *



Before using the vehicle traveling data recorder, please insert a USB flash disk into the USB interface of the vehicle traveling data recorder under the console.

Note

- It is recommended to format a new USB flash disk in the settings of the driving recorder first.
- It is recommended to unplug and insert the USB flash disk of the driving recorder when the vehicle is not started.

Operation of vehicle travelling data recorder

ON

When the Start/Stop switch is turned to "ACC" or "ON" position, the VDR starts to work and enters the recording state.

Closing

When the Start switch is turned from "ACC" or "ON" to "OFF", the driving recorder will be automatically shut down.

Status display of VDR

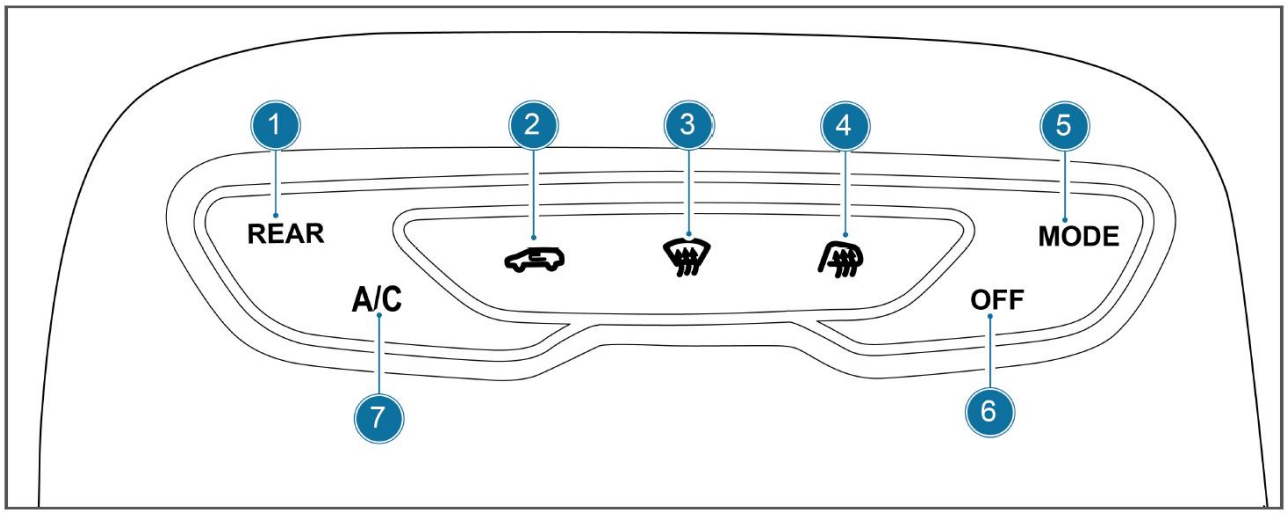
The video recording status of the dash cam can be viewed on the status bar of the multimedia display screen.

	Vehicle traveling data recorder normal
	Driving recorder fault
	USB full
	USB flash disk fault

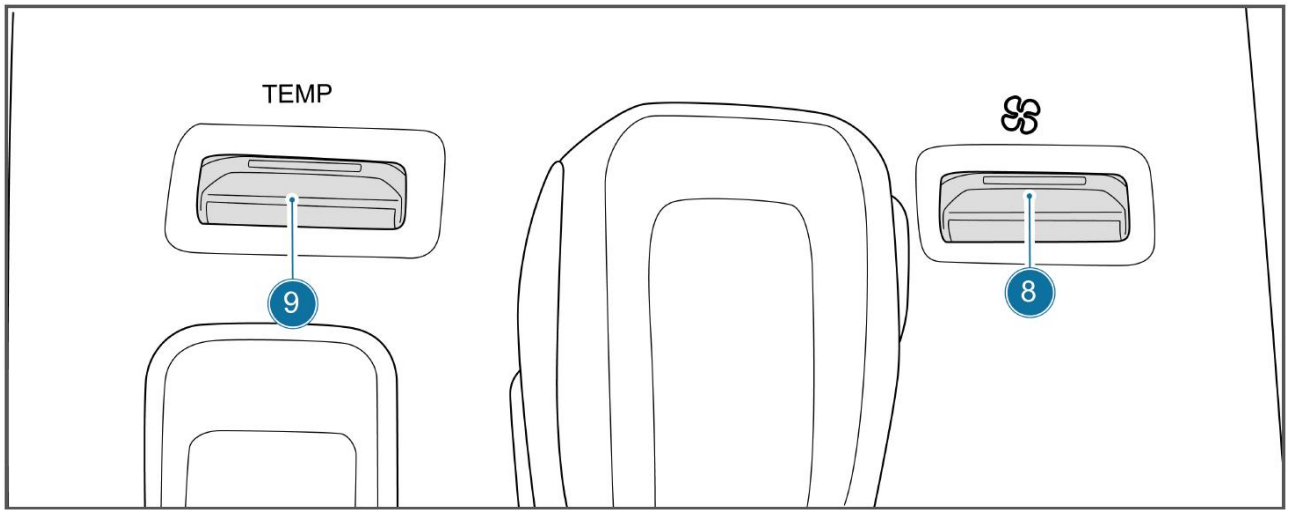
The vehicle traveling data recorder can be operated through the "AI Forthing" app. See "Driving Recorder" in Chapter VI "Infotainment System" for specific operation methods.

Air-conditioning system

Front automatic A/C touch panel



A/C toggle switch



Multimedia display screen operating interface

1. Rear A/C switch button
8. A/C air volume control lever

2. Circulation mode switch button
3. Front defrosting button
4. Rearview mirror heating button
5. Blowing mode (MODE) button
6. A/C system switch button
7. A/C switch
9. A/C temperature control lever/touch switch
10. PM2.5 level display*
11. Anion button*
12. AUTO switch
13. Sweeping Mode Adjustment

Turning on and off A/C

Tap the A/C system switch button to turn on or off the A/C.

Automatic or manual control mode selection

Press the AUTO button to switch the control mode.

Turning on and off the refrigeration function

Tap the A/C button to turn on or off the refrigeration function.

Temperature adjustment

Pull the air volume control lever or slide the touch screen switch forward and backward to set the temperature between the maximum, 18°C -32°C and minimum. Push the lever downward to gradually decrease the temperature until it reaches the minimum; push the lever forward to gradually increase the temperature until it reaches the maximum.

Air flow control

Pull the A/C air volume control lever back and forth to set the air volume between gears 0 ~ 8. Pull the lever downward to gradually reduce the air volume to the minimum Gear 0 (shutdown state); pull the lever forward to gradually increase the air volume until it reaches the maximum Gear 8.

Air outlet mode selection

Click the blowing mode switchover (MODE) button to select the required blowing modes, which are: face, face/foot, foot and foot/defrosting modes.

Front windshield defogging

Press or tap the front windshield defrosting button to activate or deactivate the front windshield defrosting/demisting function. After activation, the mist or frost on the front windshield can be removed.

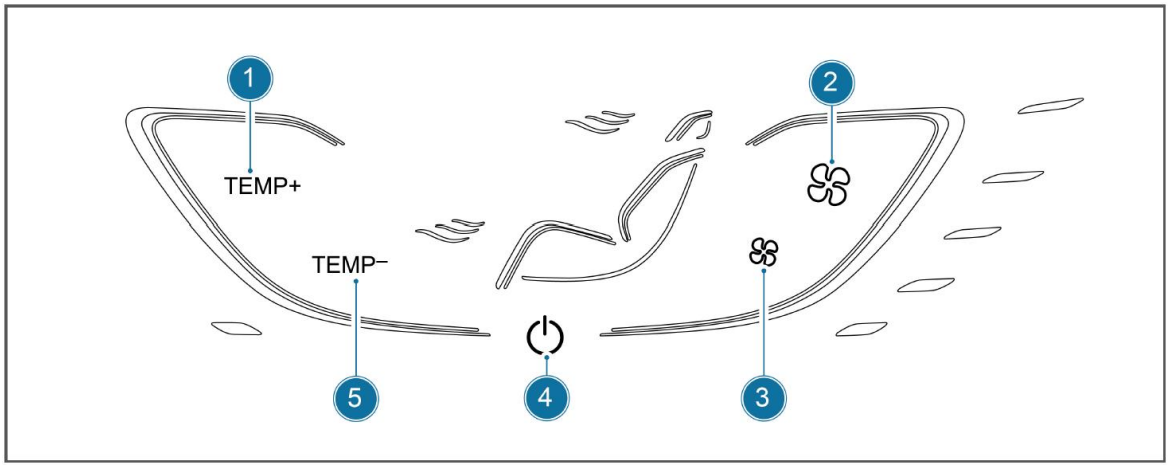
Circulation mode

Tap the cycle mode switch button to switch between different cycle modes. It is recommended to select the fresh air mode when passing through areas with lots of smoke and dust.

Sweep mode

Tap the sweep mode adjustment to switch between up/down sweep, left/right sweep, synchronous mode and free air mode.

Rear A/C touch panel



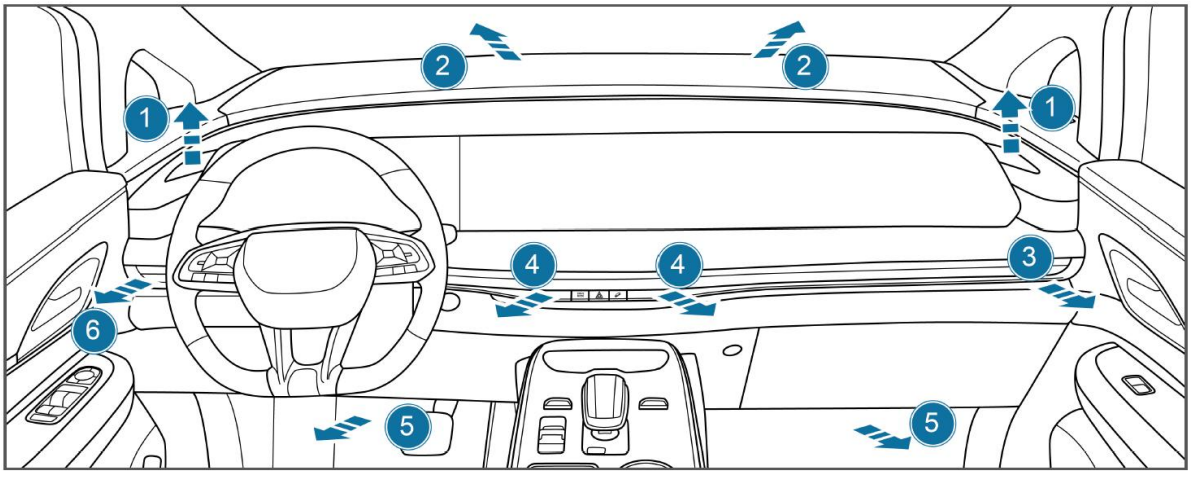
1. Temperature up key: The temperature can be set between 1~5 levels. Press this button to increase the temperature level gradually until the highest level is Level 5. When the rear A/C temperature is set at level 4 or 5, the system will request to start the engine or PTC for heating, so that the rear A/C outlet air temperature rises.
2. Air volume increase button: The air volume can be set between 0 and 5. Press this button to increase the air volume gradually until the maximum level is Level 5.
3. Air volume down button : Press this button to gradually decrease the air volume until it reaches the minimum gear 0 (the rear A/C is turned off).
4. Rear A/C ON/OFF button: Press this button to turn on or off the rear A/C.
5. Temperature down button : Press this button to gradually lower the temperature until the lowest gear 1 is reached.

Note

For refrigeration of rear A/C, the front A/C shall be in cooling state.

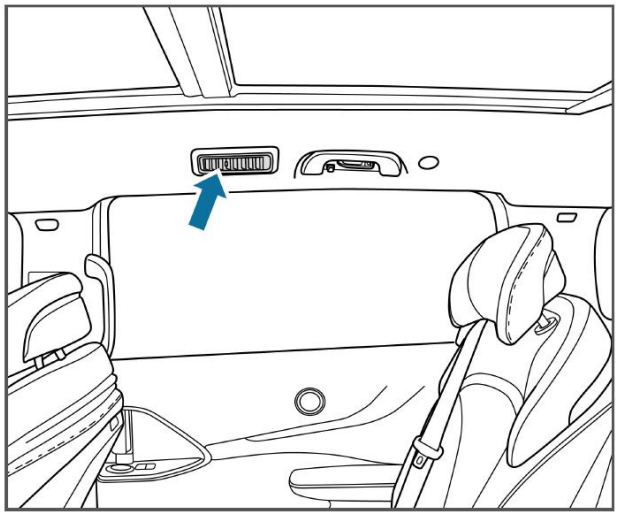
Position of air outlet

Front outlet



1. Side windshield defogging air outlet
2. Front windshield defogging air outlet
3. Right air outlet
4. Central air outlet
5. Front footwell air outlet
6. Left air outlet

Air outlets on both sides of interior roof



The middle and rear air outlets are located near the interior top handle.

Adjustment of airflow and direction

Front outlet

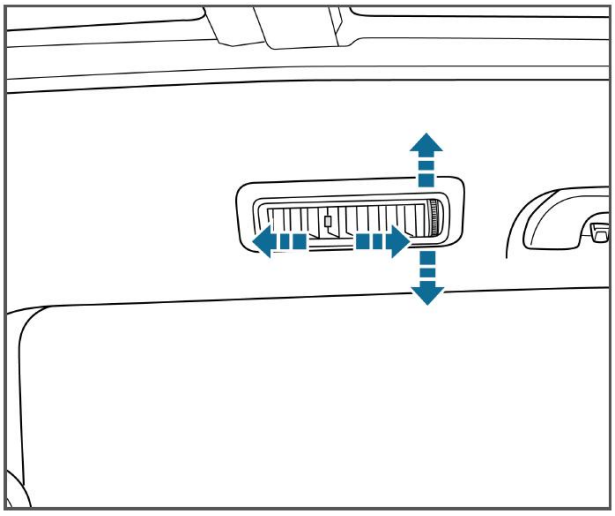
Double click the position of each air outlet ①② ③④ on the A/C control interface of the multimedia display screen to separately control the opening and closing of each air outlet.

In the free air mode, drag the simulated air flow at each air outlet on the A/C control interface of the multimedia display screen to move up/down/left/right, so as to separately control the upward/downward/left/right air flow adjustment of each air outlet.

In the up-down sweeping mode, the front air outlets sweep upward and downward synchronously, and the air outlets can still be adjusted leftward or rightward,

Left and right sweeping mode means that the front air outlet sweeps left and right synchronously. In the synchronous mode, air outlets ① ② or ③ ④ are operated synchronously, that is, when adjusting air outlet ①, air outlet ② will be subject to mirror adjustment synchronously.

Air outlets on both sides of interior roof



Pull the air outlet grille back and forth to adjust the opening and closing of the top air outlet and the front and rear wind directions. Press the outer frame of the air outlet up and down to adjust the upper and lower wind directions of the top air outlet.

Air purification system*

The air purification system can quickly reduce harmful chemical gases, dust, bacteria and volatile organic compounds in the air, reduce peculiar smell and improve the air quality in the vehicle. At the same time, the air purification system can detect the air quality and display it through the multimedia display screen to achieve the best air purification effect.

Fragrance *

On the homepage of the multimedia display screen, click the icon in the A/C seat shortcut navigation bar to enter the A/C control interface. Select fragrance to enter the fragrance adjustment interface. Low, medium and high fragrance concentrations are available.

Press the button on the inner wall behind the storage sink under the console, pop up the fragrance box and take it out. Replace the remaining fragrance chip with a new one and install it back into the fragrance box.

Note

When the fragrance balance is less than 10%, there will be a text prompt below the corresponding fragrance type. Please replace it in time.

Precautions for A/C System

1. The A/C will increase the vehicle load. When the high engine coolant temperature warning lamp illuminates, turn off the A/C until the engine coolant temperature returns to normal.

2. Park the vehicle in a cool place in summer. Avoid excessively high temperatures in the vehicle as much as possible.

3. When using the A/C, close the windows to prevent hot air outside from entering the vehicle.

4. Too low interior temperature is not conducive to human health. The interior temperature can be set 5~6°C lower than the exterior temperature.

5. When using the air conditioner, make sure that there is no obstruction such as leaves at the air inlet in front of the windshield. Obstructions can reduce airflow and prevent drainage of the system.

6. When the A/C is used for the first time in summer, if there is abnormal sound or peculiar smell, turn on the A/C to run for about 2 ~ 5 minutes and then turn it off. Wait for 5 minutes before using the A/C system.

7. Please replace or clean the A/C filter element in time to ensure that the air inside the vehicle is clean.

8. When the A/C is used for refrigeration in high air humidity, local fog or water drops may appear on the front windshield, which is normal and can be removed with wiper.

Notes to users

1. When using the IVI system (hereinafter referred to as "system"), please carefully read the relevant operating instructions. If the system is damaged due to failure to follow the operating instructions, you will not be eligible for warranty service.

2. Different vehicle configurations and system version updates may result in slightly different operating instructions. Please refer to the actual vehicle for accuracy.

3. Drivers must comply with relevant regulations when using the system, and shall park the vehicle in a safe place before proceeding with operations, such as entering or changing the destination. In addition, according to regulations, after the vehicle reaches a certain speed, in order to ensure your driving safety, the system will not display certain functions of the audio system.

4. If the operation is too frequent, the system may take some time to react. Please be patient and do not repeat the operation.

5. To avoid short circuit, do not allow the system to contact water. Do not place or leave any metallic substances in the system.

6. If the system is abnormal, please do not repair it yourself. Please contact an authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing for maintenance in time.

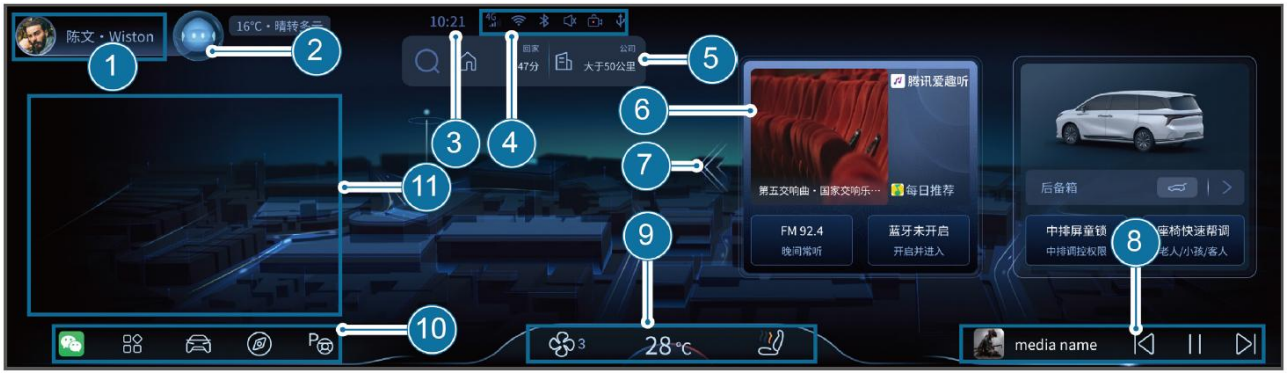
7. When the vehicle is not started, do not use the system for a long time to avoid running out of battery power.

8. Do not touch, rub or knock the display screen with sharp objects.

9. Do not apply metal film on the surface of the front windshield, as this may cause certain functions in the network and navigation to fail.

10. In remote areas, mountainous areas, tunnels, or underground parking lots with weak network signals, the use of navigation and network functions may be affected. After the vehicle leaves these areas, network signals will automatically recover.

Homepage



1. Personal Information *: If you are not logged in, you can click Login. After logging in, the account portrait and name will be displayed.

2. Voice assistant *: See the section "Voice Assistant" for details.

3. Date and time display: 12-hour or 24-hour system can be selected.

4. State zone:

Icon	Description
	Network state and network environment *
	WIFI status and signal strength

	Bluetooth connection
	Mute, not displayed in non-mute state
	Vehicle traveling data recorder status *, from left to right, indicates normal vehicle traveling data recorder, faulty vehicle traveling data recorder, full USB memory and faulty USB memory respectively
	USB connection

5. Aha service window navigation service: display the quick search entry and recommended destination road conditions.
6. Aha service window: See the section "Aha Service Window" for specific functions.
7. Aha service window slide icon: Slide left to display more contents of the Aha service window.
8. Multimedia shortcut navigation bar: It displays the currently played media information, including multimedia cover, multimedia name, previous song, play/pause, next song and favorites from left to right.
9. A/C seat shortcut navigation bar: from left to right, there are A/C blower speed adjustment, A/C temperature adjustment and seat ventilation/heating adjustment. Press and hold the corresponding adjustment button for 2s to pop up a shortcut floating window. Tap the A/C air volume or temperature adjustment button to enter the A/C setting interface, and tap the seat ventilation/heating adjustment button to enter the seat setting interface.
10. Application area: from left to right: recommended application, application center, vehicle control, navigation and automatic parking button. Click the corresponding icon to enter the corresponding application. Different models with different configurations may have different applications, and software updates may also change the content and location of the application, subject to your real vehicle.
11. DOCK bar: It displays voice dialog, unsolicited recommendation content, interface display when using panoramic image and navigation.

Shortcut system control menu

Tap the status area at the top of the multimedia display screen to call out the shortcut system control interface.

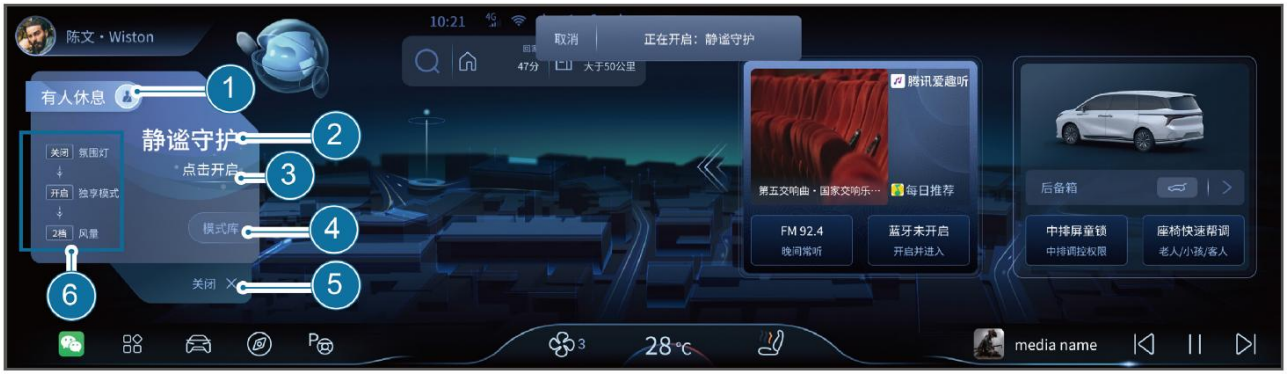
1. Hotspot, WIFI, Bluetooth and sound shortcut switches: Tap the corresponding icon to quickly enable or disable the corresponding function.
2. Quick adjustment of volume, brightness and screen off: Swipe leftward or rightward to quickly adjust the system volume, instrument brightness and screen brightness. Tap "Central Control" or "Front Passenger's Seat" to set the multimedia display and front passenger's seat display as screen off.
3. System setting: Click to enter the "Vehicle control - System Settings" interface.

Standby

On the shortcut system control interface, tap "Screen off" to select central control and exit from the multimedia display screen. Tap "Front passenger screen off", and then the front passenger screen will be completely black. Tap anywhere on the screen to exit from the screen off state.

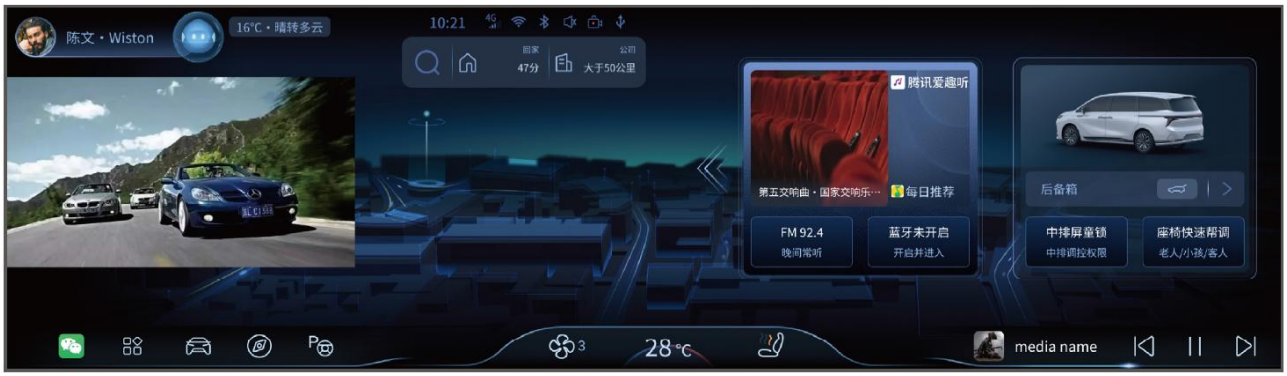
DOCK bar

Active recommendation



1. Monitoring description: The environment, driver and passenger status and subject vehicle condition can be monitored and displayed in text.
2. Mode name: shows the name of the mode recommended to be enabled.
3. Wizard enabling: Click to enable it.
4. Pattern library: Click to enter the " - Personal center-Mode library" interface to view or select different patterns.
5. Close button: Tap it to close the active recommendation.
6. Linkage function: displays the name and execution status of relevant functions after the recommendation mode is enabled.

Right turn-3D front view



When the vehicle speed is not more than 30 km/h, pull the light control handle to the right turn signal to trigger the 3D right front view. When the turn signal is turned off, exit this view.

Aha service window

Click the sliding icon of Aha service window on the homepage to display all function pages.

1. Recommended content.
2. Click to open the trunk.
3. Click to enter the setting interface.
4. News recommendation.
5. Scenario mode recommendation: Click to enable the recommendation mode, or enter "Personal center-Mode library" to select an appropriate mode.
6. Quick seat adjustment: Click to enter the seat adjustment interface for quick seat setting.
7. Middle screen child lock: Click one key to lock the left and right middle screens. To unlock, enter the "Vehicle control - Fast control" interface to unlock the left and right screens one by one.
8. Bluetooth shortcut: Click to enter the Bluetooth quick setting interface.
9. Radio recommendation.

Air conditioner and seat setting

A/C setting

Tap any interface on the A/C control panel or tap the A/C seat shortcut navigation bar to enter the A/C page. The A/C details page may be different depending on different vehicle configurations.

Front A/C

Rear A/C

1. A/C system switch button: Press this button to turn on or off the A/C system.
2. AUTO button: Press this button, the A/C system will enter the full-automatic state from the non-automatic state, and the A/C system will automatically adjust the interior temperature.
3. A/C button: Press this button to turn on or off the A/C refrigeration.
4. Circulation mode switch button: Press this button to switch the circulation mode. When the A/C is turned on, internal circulation will be defaulted. Press this button to switch among internal circulation → external circulation → automatic circulation → off → internal circulation in turn. It is recommended to select the fresh air mode when passing through areas with lots of smoke and dust.
5. Anion button *: For some models, the anion purification function can be turned on or off.
6. PM2.5 level display *: The air quality and levels can be monitored and displayed for some models.
7. Air outlet: Double-click to open or close the air outlet; drag to adjust the wind direction.
8. A/C temperature adjustment touch screen switch: Drag the gear bar up and down to adjust the temperature.
9. Blowing mode switch (MODE) button: From left to right, there are face blowing, face/foot blowing, foot blowing and foot blowing/defrosting modes respectively.
10. Rear A/C switch button: Tap the button to switch to the rear A/C control interface.
11. Rearview mirror heating button: Press this button to activate or deactivate the defrosting and defogging functions of exterior rearview mirrors. After activation, the fog, frost or thin ice on the exterior rearview mirrors can be removed.
12. Front defrosting button: Press this button to activate or deactivate the front windshield defrosting and defogging function. After activation, the mist, frost or thin ice on the glass can be removed.
13. Sweeping mode adjustment: Tap it to switch between up and down sweeping, left and right sweeping, synchronous mode and free air mode.
14. Rear A/C switch: Tap it to turn on or off the rear A/C.
15. Air volume adjustment of rear A/C: There are 5 levels. When the level is at 0, the rear A/C will be turned off.
16. Front A/C switching button: Tap it to switch to the front A/C control interface.
17. Air mode adjustment of rear A/C: From left to right, there are face blowing, foot blowing, and face/foot blowing modes respectively.

Seat (Ventilation/Heating/Massage) settings *

You can enter the seat setting page through the A/C setting page or the seat ventilation/heating button in the shortcut navigation bar of A/C seat at the bottom of the homepage.

Intelligent temperature control

1. Seat one-button off switch: When the seat related functions are not turned on, it is displayed in gray and cannot be clicked. When the seat function is enabled, click this switch to close all seat function settings.
2. Intelligent temperature control switch: Tap to enter the intelligent temperature control interface for intelligent temperature control setting.
3. Seat information: Display the name of the corresponding seat. Tap it to enter the seat details adjustment interface.
4. There are five massage modes for the front passenger's seat: wave mode, catwalk mode, jumping mode, cross mode and relaxation mode.
5. The massage strength of the front passenger's seat can be adjusted. There are four options: 0, 1, 2 and 3.
6. Seat ventilation and heating selection button: Tap the corresponding seat button to activate the seat ventilation and heating function.
7. The massage intensity adjustment of the driver's seat is the same as that of the front passenger's seat.
8. The massage mode selection of the driver's seat is the same as that of the front passenger's seat.
9. Intelligent seat temperature control switch: Tap it to enable or disable this function.
10. Intelligent temperature control position selection: Tap the name of corresponding component to set intelligent temperature control function for front passenger's seat, middle seat and steering wheel.

Voice assistant *

For models equipped with Future-Link IoV function, you can press the voice wake-up button on the steering wheel or say "Forthing Forthing" in the vehicle to wake up the voice assistant. The voice assistant will be able to navigate, make calls, order online music, control air conditioner and other functions for you to free your hands. For example, you can say:

"How can I get to Tiananmen Square?"

"I want to listen to rock songs."

"How is the weather in Beijing?"

"How is the air quality today?"

"What's the date of the lunar calendar today?"

"Adjust the A/C to 26 degrees."

"Open the sunroof."

More tips can be viewed on the help page of the voice assistant after it is woken up.

App center

Tap the application center icon in the application area on the homepage to enter the following interface.

1. System application: From left to right, there are multimedia, Bluetooth telephone, driving recorder, personal center, camera and album. Tap the icon to enter the corresponding function interface.
2. Recommended applications: recently used and third-party applications are displayed.
3. Mini programs: common mini programs are displayed.

Caution

- This vehicle is equipped with abundant third-party applications and mini programs. Some of them rely on the network, so they can only be used when the network is available.
- The APP content is provided by a third-party service provider and does not represent the position of Huawei. Due to system updates and third-party application content updates, the quantity, content and form of third-party applications may be inconsistent with those shown in the schematic diagram. Please refer to your actual vehicle.

Bluetooth phone

Tap the [Bluetooth phone] icon in the application center - system applications to enter the Bluetooth phone interface.

Recent calls

1. When connecting the Bluetooth device for the first time, the home page of the multimedia display screen will pop up a window showing "Bluetooth connected. Synchronize contacts". Tap to enter the synchronization interface and synchronize contacts.
2. Tap to switch the interface of recent calls and contacts.
3. Tap to enter the Bluetooth connection information interface, and tap "Bluetooth Setting" on the information interface to enter the detailed setting interface.
4. Tap to switch to view all records and missed calls.
5. Tap to view the B-CALL function description.
6. B-CALL button.
7. Dial keypad. Dial by tapping on the keypad numbers.
8. Tap to delete the entered information in turn
9. Tap to clear all entered information.
10. Tap to dial or hang up the call.
11. Display the call time/date.
12. Contact name and telephone source.
13. Number of calls or missed calls.
14. Missed call information.
15. Incoming calls/calls.
16. Outgoing calls.

Contacts

1. Tap to search contacts, a keyboard will pop up, and enter the text to search.
2. Contact name, telephone number and place of origin.
3. Contact list.
4. Contacts are searched by letters. Tap the letter to locate and display relevant initial contacts.
5. Contact head portrait. If the mobile phone has a contact head portrait, it can be synchronized with the mobile phone. If the mobile phone does not have a head portrait, the default head portrait will be displayed.

Third-party telephone

1. Head portrait display.
2. Display of call duration, incoming call or calling status when dialing out.
3. Tap to switch mute or microphone on, and the microphone is turned on by default.
4. Tap to switch between hands-free and private calls. The default mode is hands-free.
5. Hang-up button.

Voice dialing

Fuzzy speech

After turning on the voice function, say: Call "Zeng":

1. Display contacts with initials of "曾" in the address book. If there are no more than 8 relevant contacts, voice "dial the xth".

2. If there are more than 8 related contacts, tap More to enter the search result interface of Contacts.

Accurate voice

After turning on the voice function, say: Call "××" (name, and this name is only available in the address book) or "×××" (name + phone number), and you can make a call directly. If there is no relevant contact, the Voice Assistant feeds back that "the contact is not found".

Multimedia

Tap [Multimedia] icon in application center-system application to enter the multimedia interface.

Bluetooth music

1. Tap to switch among Bluetooth music, radio station, USB and mixing room.
2. Name of the singer.
3. Name of the song.
4. Tap to enter the Bluetooth shortcut setting interface.
5. Default cover page.
6. Play progress/time.
7. Progress control: Drag the progress bar to adjust the progress of a song.
8. Music control, tap to play previous song, pause and next song.

Radio station

1. Tap to switch between FM and AM, and the radio station list will be switched together.
2. Search for radio stations.
3. Tap "Add to Favorites" or "Delete from Favorites".
4. Tap to switch between preset radio stations and favorite radio stations.
5. Frequency band range.
6. Current playing frequency band.
7. Progress control: Drag the progress bar to adjust the station.
8. Radio station list: favorite radio stations will be displayed first.
9. Tap Play/Pause.

USB

USB Audio

1. Tap to switch between audio and video.
2. Tap to switch the play mode.
3. Tap to switch between list view or thumbnail view.
4. Audio folder.
5. Tap to switch to view only folders or audio contents.
6. Name of the song.
7. Name of the singer.
8. Play progress/time.
9. Progress control, drag the progress bar to adjust the audio progress.
10. List information.
11. Audio files.

USB video

1. Tap to switch to view only folders or only video content.
2. Tap to play in full screen.
3. Video name.
4. Tap Play/Pause.
5. Progress control: Drag the progress bar to adjust the video progress.

Mixing room

1. Tap the close button to save the current operation and exit the mixing room interface.
2. Tap to switch the sound effect.
3. Tap to select no sound field mode.

Automobile data recorder *

Tap the [Driving Record] icon in the application center -system application to enter the driving recorder interface.

Main interface

1. Tap to switch between the loop recording album, emergency recording album and setting interface.
2. Tap to edit the video.
3. Tap to enter the filtering date pop-up window.
4. Shooting date.
5. Shooting time.
6. Take a screenshot of the video. Tap to play the video.
7. Tap the scroll bar of the list to view more videos.

Edit the video

Tap "Edit" on the main interface of the driving recorder to enter the video editing interface.

1. Tap Cancel to exit the editing interface.
2. Tap Select All to select all videos.
3. Tap to move the selected video to the emergency video album, and there will be a relevant pop-up prompt whether the movement is successful.
4. Tap to delete the selected video, and a pop-up window for confirming whether to delete it will appear.

Settings

1. Tap to select the loop recording duration, which can be 1 min, 3 min or 5 min. The default value is 3 min.
2. Tap to enable or disable the audio recording function, which is disabled by default. When the system detects

that the airbag deploys and the anti-theft alarm is activated, the emergency video recording will be triggered, and the audio recording will be automatically turned on. After the emergency video recording is completed, it will return to the close state.

3. Display the storage space of USB flash disk and the memory occupied by video files.
4. Slide down the scroll bar to view more settings.
5. Tap USB flash disk formatting, and a pop-up window will prompt you whether to confirm this operation. Tap OK to start the formatting action.

Camera and photo album

Camera

Tap the [Camera] icon in application center -system application to enter the camera interface.

1. Tap to switch between photo taking and video recording.
2. Tap to switch between the interior and exterior cameras. The default is the interior camera and it has a memory function.
3. Tap to enter the setting interface, view the memory capacity of the camera and the memory occupied by photos and videos, and enable or disable recording. It is disabled by default.
4. Tap to enter the album interface.
5. Recording status.

Photo album

Tap the [Album] icon in the application center -system applications or enter the album interface from the camera interface.

1. Tap to enter the photo or video editing interface.
2. Photo/video thumbnail. Tap to view photos or play videos.
3. Tap the scroll bar of the list to view more photos/videos.

4. Name of document.
5. Enter the album from the camera interface to display this information, and tap to return to the camera interface.
6. Tap to switch to display local photos, local videos and files in USB.

Editing function

Tap Edit on the album interface to enter the editing interface.

1. Tap Cancel to exit the editing interface.
2. Tap Select All to select all photos or videos.
3. Tap the pop-up window prompt, and confirm to export the selected photos or videos to a USB flash disk. The export results will be prompted in a pop-up window.
4. Tap to delete the selected photo or video, and a confirmation dialog box will pop up.
5. Highlights the selected photo or video.

Settings

Tap [Vehicle control] at the bottom left of the system homepage to enter the setting interface.

Shortcut settings

Common functions can be quickly turned on or off in the shortcut setting interface.

1. Tap to switch among the quick control, intelligent driving, vehicle setting, system setting and maintenance service interfaces.
2. Tap to enter Personal Center.
3. Trunk switch.
4. Rear fog lamp switch.
5. Front radar switch.
8. Immediate charging switch.
9. EV/HEV changeover switch.
10. Rearview mirror folding switch.
11. Child lock switch on the right side of middle screen.
12. Child lock switch on the left side of middle screen.
13. Reading lamp switch.

6. Electronic stability program switch.
7. Slow charging preset switch.

Intelligent driving

1. Tap to switch among cruise assist, forward assist, blind spot assist and in-vehicle monitoring.
2. Function setting item switch.
3. Name of scenario.
4. Tap to enter the function configuration description.
5. Function setting options.
6. Function setting name.

Scenario Name	Included Function Setting Name
Cruise assist	Lane departure assist and intelligent navigation assist
Forward assistance	Forward collision assistance, traffic sign recognition (TSR), automatic control of high and low beams
Blind spot assistance	Lane change assist, door opening warning, forward cross traffic warning, backward cross traffic warning and rear collision warning
In-vehicle monitoring	Fatigue monitoring, occupant monitoring, rear-row occupant monitoring, distraction monitoring, gesture recognition, voice reduction during call, and smoking purification

Vehicle settings

Vehicle settings include 5 scenes: driving safety, leaving safety, reversing safety, driving experience and charging.

Scenario Name	Included Function Setting Name
Driving safety	Driving video warning, pedestrian alarm
Off-vehicle safety	Automatic locking when off-vehicle, off-vehicle locking feedback, remote window closing setting, exterior rearview mirror automatic folding switch, vehicle locking prompt tone
Reversing safety	Side mirror tilting down in reversing
Driving experience	Active noise reduction, active sound, steering wheel hand feeling mode, custom steering wheel button, brake pedal sense adjustment, external light signal, headlamp height adjustment, coasting energy recovery, convenient boarding and alighting, Comfort Stop System (CST), automatic window closing in rainy days, side sliding door opening method, power liftgate angle adjustment, power saving mode, electronic stability program (ESP), endurance standard, battery level holding, intelligent power-protection capacity setting, EV/HEV switching

Scenario Name	Included Function Setting Name
Charging	Slow schedule charging, upper limit setting of charging energy and slow-charging battery insulation reservation

System settings

The system settings include 5 scenes: display and sound, Bluetooth, network, upgrade and factory, and laboratory.

Scenario Name	Included Function Setting Name
Display and sound	Screen brightness, automatic brightness adjustment, day/night mode, time format, volume adjustment, navigation volume, system sound effect, atmosphere sound effect and mixing room
Bluetooth	Paired device, new device available, Bluetooth editing
Network	WI-FI network, WI-FI hotspot and remote control connection of mobile phone
Upgrade and factory	Current version information, check for updates, restore factory settings, reset wireless terminal, font protocol
Lab.	Instrument, light signal, experimental function 3, experimental function 4

Maintenance service

Maintenance service includes two scenarios: inspection and maintenance and user feedback.

Scenario Name	Included Function Setting Name
Inspection and maintenance	Vehicle repair and maintenance
User feedback	Through voice feedback, logs

Personal center

On the system homepage, tap Personal Information or [Personal center] in application center - system application at the top left to enter the personal center interface.

1. Tap to switch among the personal center, personalized memory, mode library and message center interfaces.
2. Account information: A QR code is displayed when you are not login. After scanning the QR code, follow the prompts to log in. The account name, account settings and account level will be displayed after login.
3. It displays the average fuel consumption/power consumption in recent 7 days in the form of text and histogram.
4. Honor points.
5. The trip mileage value can be cleared by tapping "Clear".
6. Remaining traffic days. Tap "Details" to enter the details page for more traffic information.
7. Tap to set the Voice Assistant.

Personalized memory

1. Tap to enter the editing interface.
2. Selected memory is highlighted.
3. Tap to add new memory.
4. Tap to return to the editing interface.

5. Tap to modify the memory name.
6. Tap to delete the memory.

Mode library

1. Tap to cancel the mode you are about to start.
2. Name of pattern.
3. Slide the scroll bar down to view more modes.

Voice assistant settings

1. Tap to return to the personal center interface.
2. Current wake word.
3. Edit a new wake word.
4. Tap to enable or disable the wake-up free function.

Message center

1. Tap to switch between the cloud message and vehicle condition message interfaces.
2. Tap to set all messages as read.

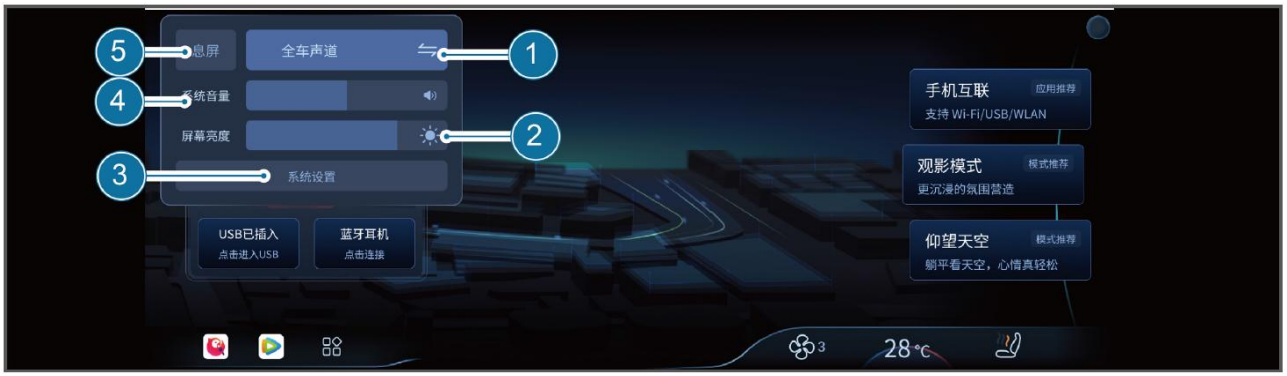
3. Slide down the scroll bar to view more messages.
4. Message receiving time.
5. Message header and message content.

Front passenger display*

Homepage

1. Aha service window.
2. Status bar, tap to enter the rapid system control interface.
3. Image information recommended or displayed by the front passenger.
4. A/C seat shortcut control bar.
5. Tap to enter the application center interface.
6. Recommended applications.

Rapid system control



1. Tap to switch the channel. After Bluetooth is connected, it can be switched to a Bluetooth channel.
2. Drag the display block to adjust the brightness of the front passenger's screen.
3. Tap to enter the application center-system settings interface.
4. Drag the display block to adjust the volume of corresponding channel.
5. After tapping, the front passenger's display screen will be off.

App center

1. Tap to switch the system application, recommended application and applet interface.
2. System application name, tap the corresponding application name to enter the use interface.

Mobile phone interconnection *

Tap [Mobile phone interconnection] in application center -system applications to enter the mobile phone interconnection interface.

Mobile phone interconnection supports WIFI connection and USB connection, which can be connected according to the interface prompts.

The functions available for mobile phone interconnection include map, music and application management.

Description of special circumstance for mobile phone interconnection

To ensure the connection reliability, when using WiFi for mobile phone interconnection, please set the AP frequency band from 2.4 Ghz to 5.0 Ghz in the mobile phone hotspot settings. If the mobile phone frequency band does not support 5.0Ghz, it is recommended to use USB connection for mobile phone interconnection.

Note

In order to ensure the stability and smoothness of mobile phone interconnection function, USB connection is preferred. It is recommended to use the original USB cable matched with the mobile phone.

Caution

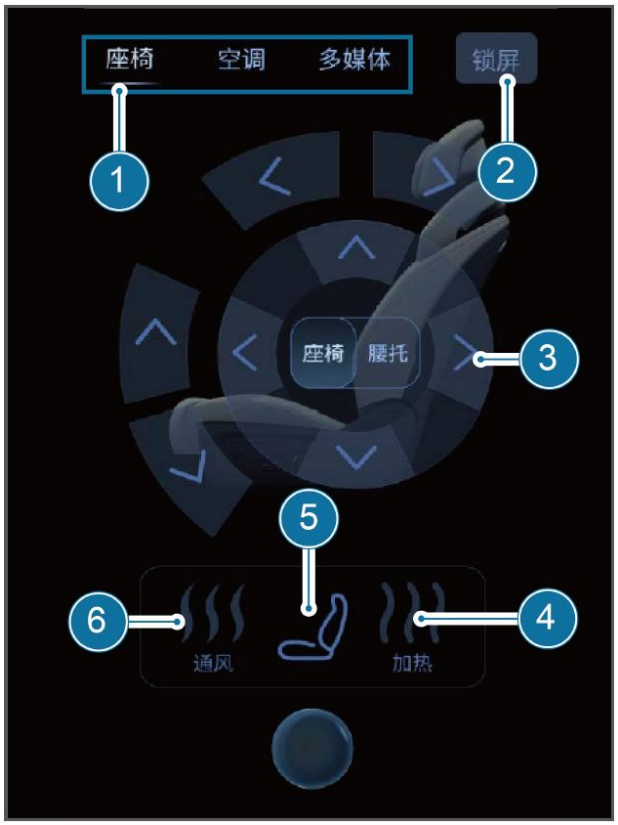
The mobile phone interconnection function may change due to the update of connected application software version, and the specific functions shall be subject to the actual vehicle.

Middle seat armrest screen*

Lock screen status

1. Slide to unlock the screen.
2. QR code for mobile phone connection.
3. Time display.
4. Navigation information display.
5. Voice assistant.

Unlocked



1. Tap to switch the seat, A/C and multimedia interfaces.
2. Tap the armrest screen to off.
3. Seat backrest, lumbar support and leg support adjustment interface.
4. Seat heating setting.
5. Seat massage settings*.
6. Seat ventilation setting.

Mobile APP

Precautions for use of Bluetooth key *

The Bluetooth key is a digital key installed in the smart phone. When it is close to the vehicle, the vehicle can be controlled through the Bluetooth of the mobile phone.

1. Before activating and using the Bluetooth key service, please read carefully to ensure that you have fully known and understood the instructions on this page.

2. After the Bluetooth key service is activated, please use it according to the instructions in the User's Manual. In case of any software or hardware failure, please go to an Dongfeng Forthing authorized service station for inspection.

3. Some smartphone models may be incompatible with the Bluetooth key, which may be due to differences in operating systems of different smartphone manufacturers. We will continue to optimize the compatibility of Bluetooth key with different models of mobile phones, but we cannot guarantee that all smartphones, operating systems and other factors are compatible. Compatibility is not within the scope of our service commitments.

4. Factors such as compatibility of smart phone and environmental interference will affect the PEPS function of Bluetooth key. When unlocking or locking with the Bluetooth key fails, try to change the distance between the mobile phone and the door/exterior rearview mirror. When the keyless start with Bluetooth key fails, try to make the mobile phone as close to the center console as possible. A mobile phone logged in with the owner's account can support keyless entry and start function after its Bluetooth is connected to the vehicle, but its performance is greatly affected by mobile phone and environmental interference factors.

5. The Bluetooth vehicle control function cannot be used when the Start switch is used to adjust the vehicle to a non-"OFF" mode. When the mobile phone Bluetooth is connected to the vehicle, the remote vehicle control function will not be available, and only the [Bluetooth key] can be turned on for Bluetooth vehicle control. The doors must be closed when the [Start] control in the Bluetooth vehicle control function is used.

6. If the remote control key or other Bluetooth key (such as authorized Bluetooth key) is in the vehicle, the functions of automatic locking when leaving the vehicle, door handle locking and liftgate switch locking will not take effect.

7. When the Bluetooth key fails to be connected with the vehicle, you can operate as per the following steps:

(1)Turn on the mobile phone Bluetooth and APP again, tap [Bluetooth Key] switch of APP to reconnect.

(2) Confirm whether there are other mobile phones connected to the vehicle. If so, disconnect them and reconnect this mobile phone.

8. The adaptability of Bluetooth key to smart phones will be continuously improved. At present, most mobile phones of mainstream brands such as Apple, Huawei, Xiaomi and OPPO have been adapted. More mobile phone models that have completed adaptability optimization will be updated through dealers or APP.

APP login

After agreeing to the terms of the User Agreement and Privacy Policy, you can choose any of the following ways to log in.

Mobile phone number + SMS verification code

1. Enter the mobile phone number, tap Get Verification Code, enter the verification code, and then tap Login.

2. After logging in to the APP, you can set a password in [My] - [Settings] - [Password setting].

Account + password

Enter the mobile phone number and password (to be set), and then tap Login.

WeChat login

Tap WeChat Login to call up the WeChat application authorization login.

Apple Login

This method is only applicable to iPhone.

Add vehicle

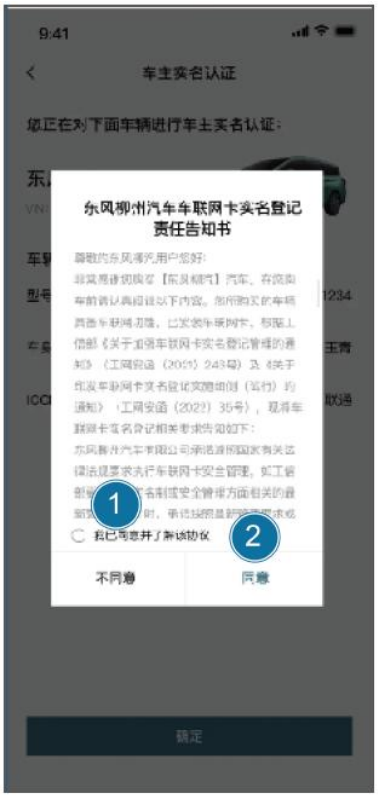
Tap My → Add Vehicle → Select Individual Binding or Enterprise Binding → Upload Driving License or Purchase Invoice + Certificate Information → Confirm Information → Bind Vehicle.

After the vehicle binding is completed, enter the IOV activation process.

Note

Individuals who bind a car need to upload the driving license or purchase invoice + front and back of ID card. Enterprises need to upload the driving license or purchase invoice + business license when binding a car.

Real name authentication



Tap the notice of responsibility for real-name registration at ① and ② in turn → Confirm vehicle information → Verify mobile phone number + mobile phone verification code → Confirm ID card information → Liveness detection → Submit real-name authentication for acceptance.

Vehicle information

Vehicle management

Tap My → My Vehicle → Vehicle Management in turn to view all vehicles (model, VIN and model map) under the account and their binding status.

Tap vehicle details to view and set the license plate number, vehicle nickname, insurance company phone number and other information.

Tap Set As Default Vehicle, and the vehicle will be displayed on your vehicle page. Tap Add Vehicle to add a new vehicle.

Vehicle location, journey, setup

1. Vehicle condition information: Tap "My Vehicle" to enter the homepage and check the vehicle condition data in real time, such as endurance mileage, remaining fuel/power.

2. Vehicle settings: Tap to enter the setting interface, where you can authorize the vehicle, manage operation codes and emergency contacts, or view historical remote control information.

3. Vehicle location: Tap to view the current location of the vehicle, search the destination, share the location with WeChat, honk and flash, and flash for car locating.

4.Tap the charging center (for rechargeable vehicles only) to view information such as current power, remaining driving mileage and list of charging piles.

5. Slide down the vehicle information interface to find the vehicle APP to view user reports, travel tracks and driving recorders. Data renewal and OTA upgrade can be carried out, and the "Sky Eye" mode is enabled.

Remote vehicle control

Remote vehicle control area displays all remote control functions of the vehicle. Tap the function name to enter the setting interface:

1. Door lock: locking and unlocking.

2. Window: fully open the window, close the window and slightly open the window.

3. Sunroof: Open, close and tilt the sunroof.

4. Rear compartment hatch: Open and close the tailgate.

5. Bluetooth key: Tap the Bluetooth key to activate it. After activation, turn on the Bluetooth of the mobile phone and approach the vehicle for pairing connection. After the connection is successful, Bluetooth will be highlighted and vehicle control via Bluetooth can be used.

6. Engine: Start and stop the engine (the time can be set as 5 minutes, 10 minutes or 15 minutes).

7. Air conditioner: remote cooling, remote heating and engine shutdown (the setting time can be selected as 5 minutes/10 minutes/15 minutes).

8. For those equipped with seat ventilation and heating function, the seat option will be displayed on the remote vehicle control to turn on the seat ventilation, turn on the seat heating and turn off the engine (the setting time can be selected from 5 minutes/10 minutes/15 minutes).

9. One-key closing: Tap to close all enabled remote controls.

Discover

Enter the discovery interface and tap different function names to view different information:

1. The recommendation section displays the activity hot spots, quick access, hot topics and dynamics. View and comment on trends.

2. View user dynamics, attention and comments in the square section.

3. In the activity section, you can view activity details and activities available in different categories.

4. In the public praise section, users can view the pubic praises, comprehensive scores and comments of different models.

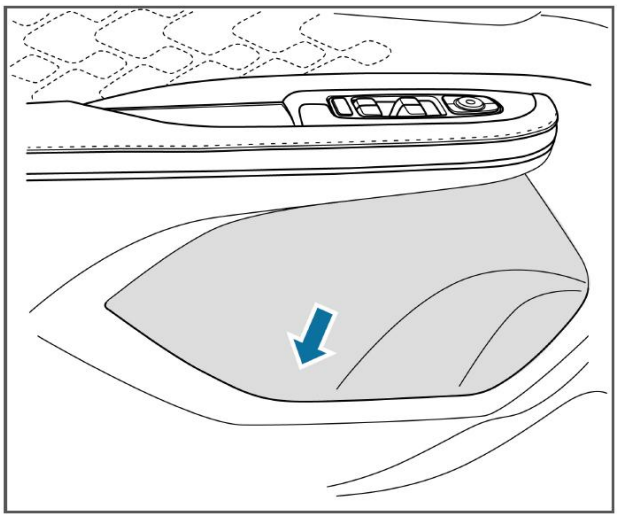
5. In the Q&A section, you can view FAQs, questions from users and replies to comments.

6. In the information section, you can view information classifications and article lists, and recommend information that users are interested in.

7. Tap "+" to post news, videos, articles, create clubs or scan the QR code.

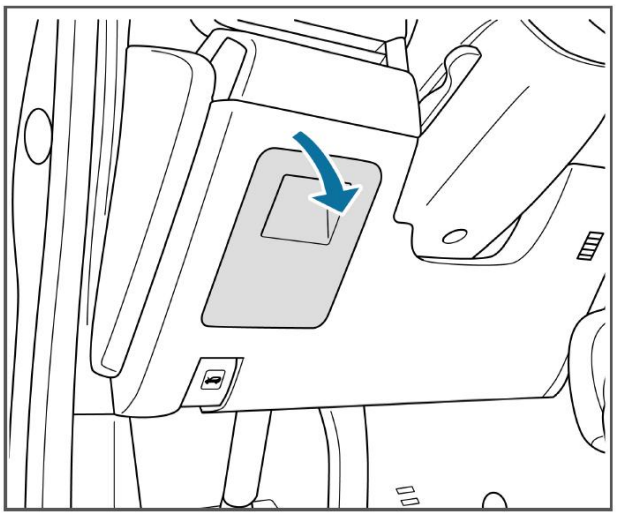
Storage device

Door storage slot



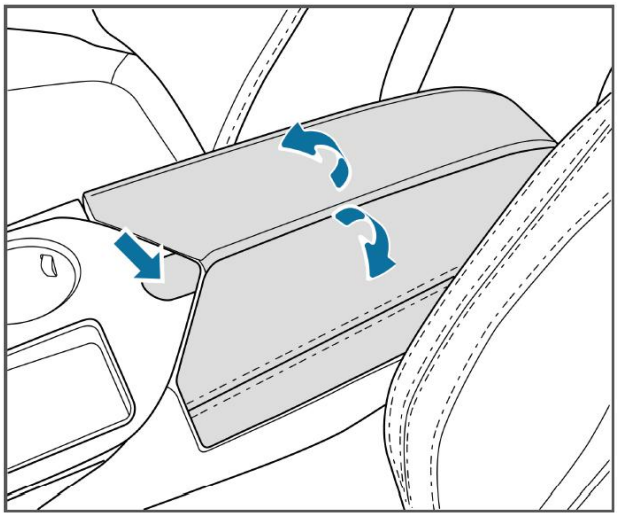
A door storage tank is provided on the front door interior trim panel for placing cups and other items.

Storage box in dashboard



There is a storage box on the left side of the dashboard. After pulling the tab outward for unlocking, continue to tilt it to the limit position to open it. Push the middle upper part of the storage box forward until you hear a locking sound ("click"), which indicates that the lock is closed.

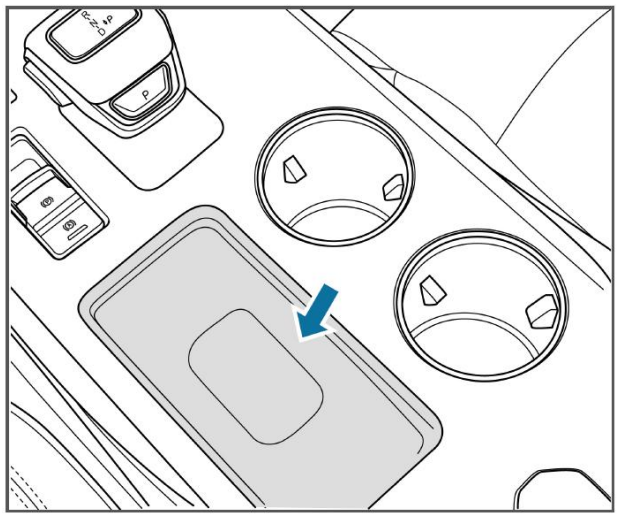
Central armrest box



Press the front lock catch of the central armrest box, and the left and right armrests will open automatically.

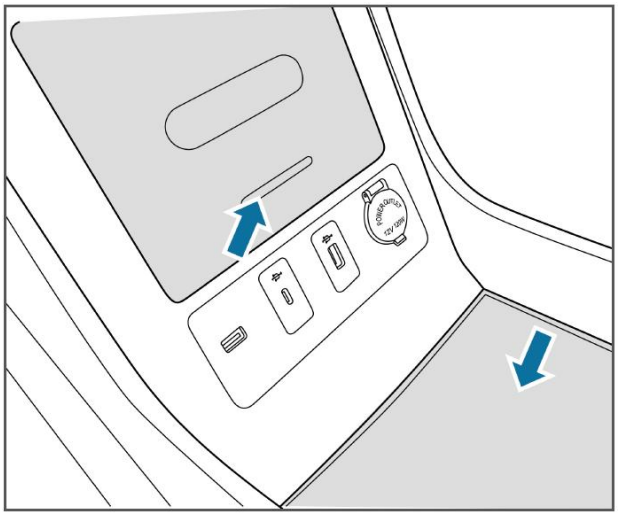
Storage of console

Upper storage compartment of console



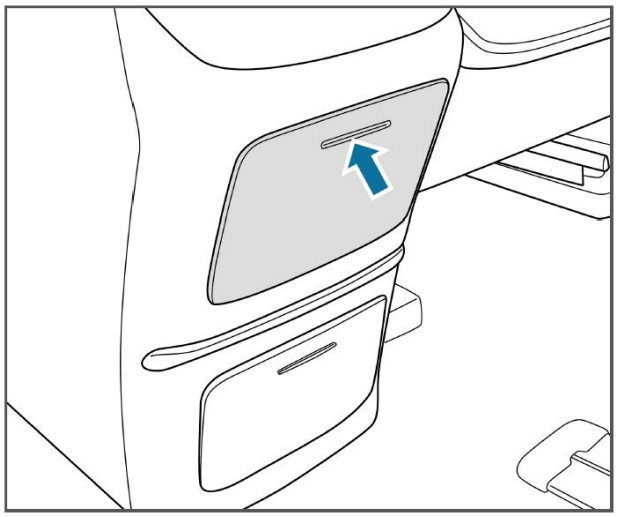
The upper part of the console is provided with a storage shelf for storing mobile phones and other articles. For some models, wireless charging devices are installed here to charge mobile phones.

Lower storage slot of console



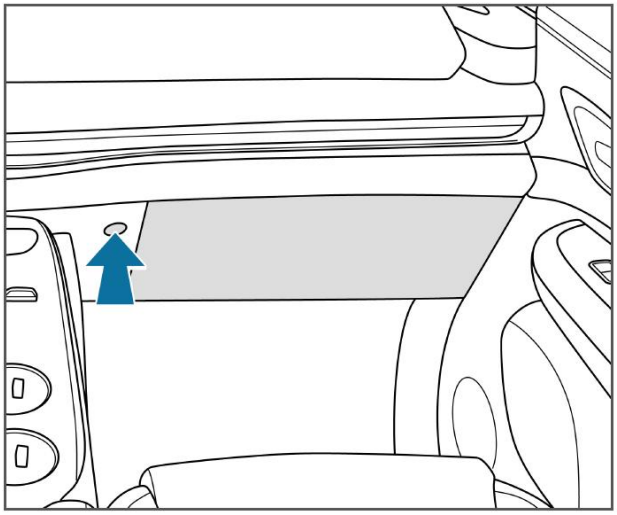
There is a storage tank at the lower part of the console. The closed storage tank needs to be opened by pressing the button, while the open storage tank can store large items such as books.

Rear storage slot of console



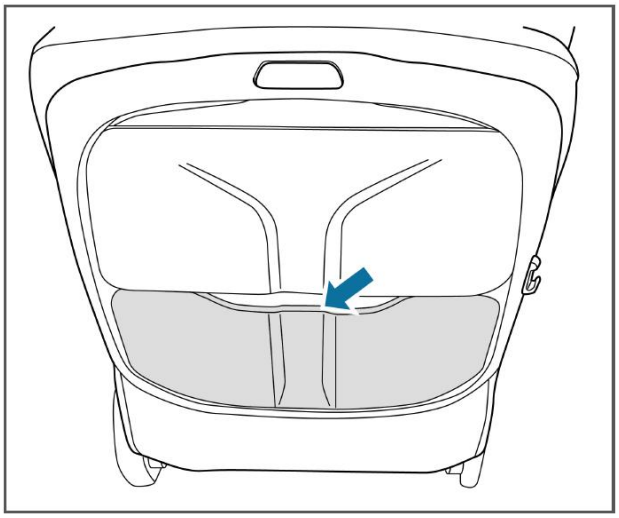
There is a storage tank at the rear of the console. Press the upper switch of the storage sink to open it.

Glove box



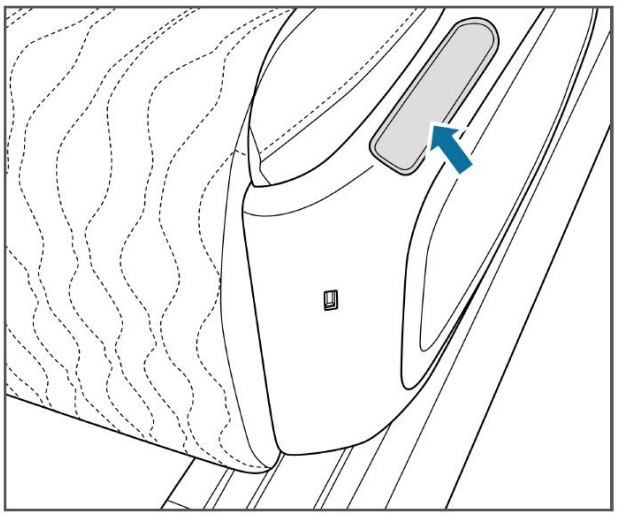
The glove box is located on the right side of the dashboard and can store the documents and data delivered with the vehicle. Press the switch on the left side of glove box inward to open it. Push forward the middle-upper part of glove box until a locking sound of "click" is heard, indicating that the locks are closed.

Magazine back of seat back



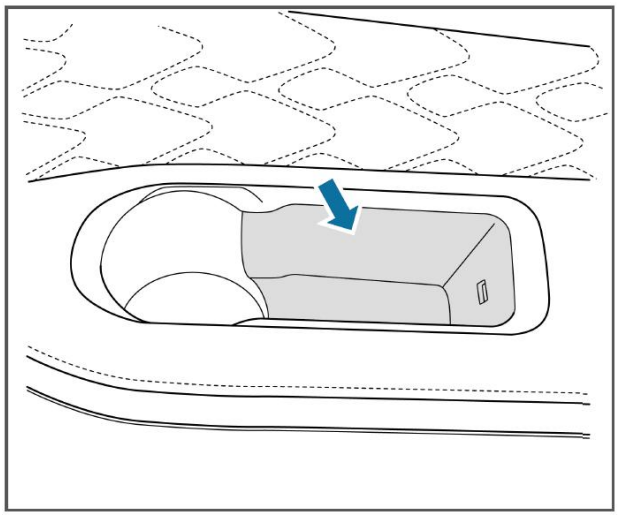
The magazine bag is located on the back of the front seat for placing small items such as magazines and tissues.

Storage tank of middle seat



The middle seat storage tank can be used to place small items such as mobile phones.

Rear side storage compartment

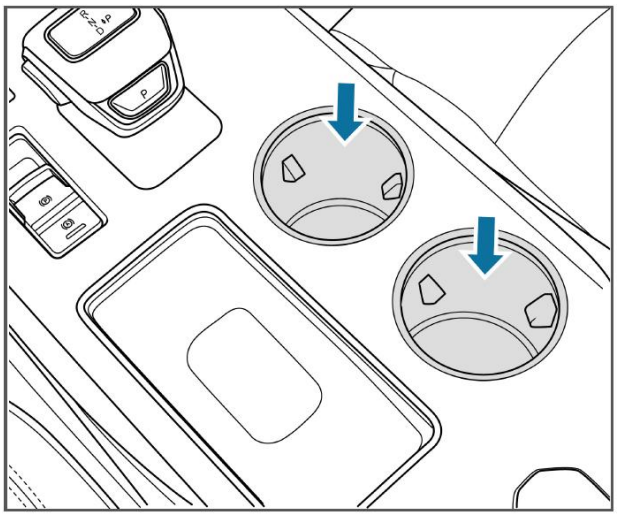


The rear-row side storage tank can be used to place small items such as mobile phones.

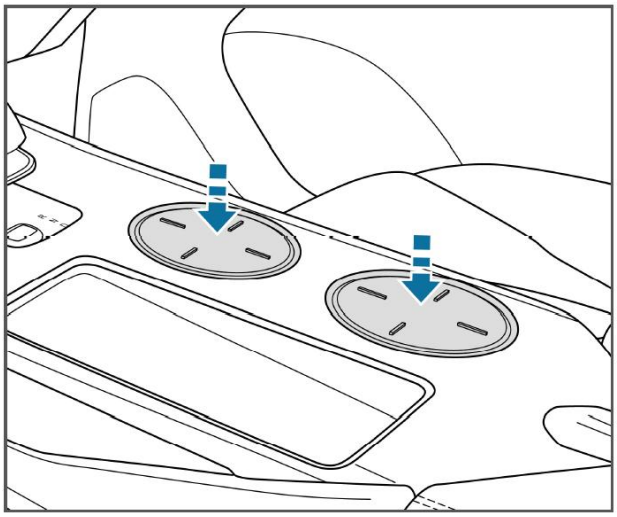
Cup holder

Front passenger cup holder

Ordinary type

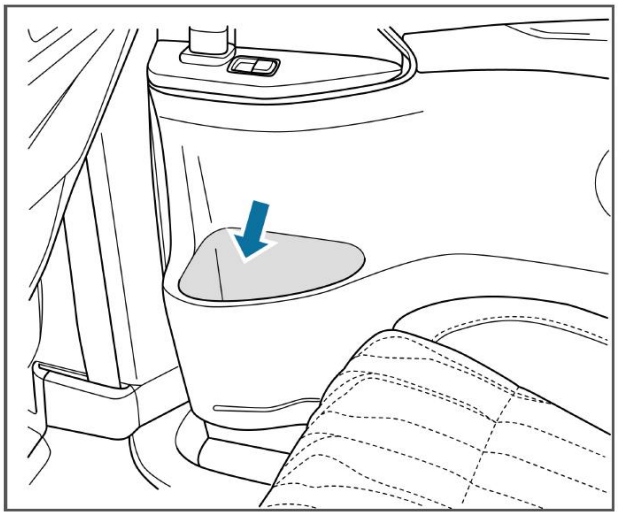


Lift type

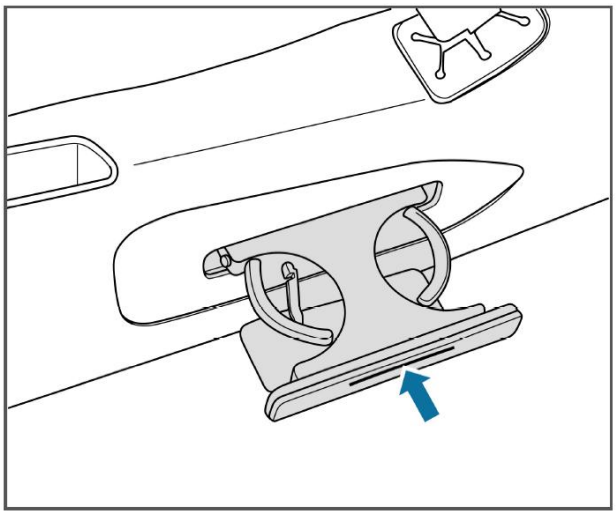


Press down the cup holder surface to place the water cup, and press the switch on the inner wall of the cup holder to raise it.

Middle row side wall cup holder

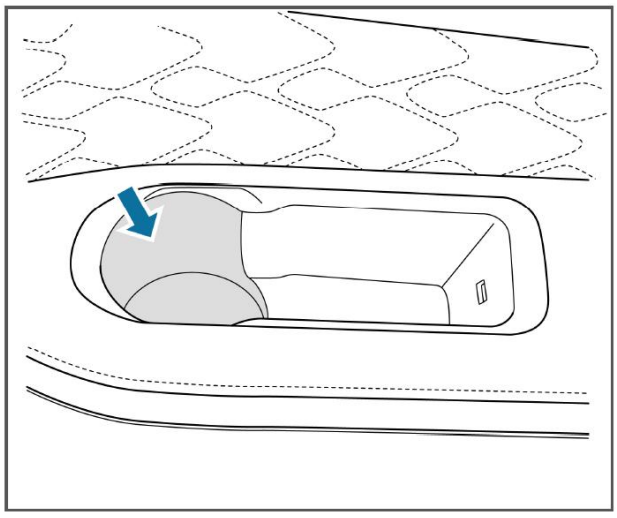


Middle seat side cup holder



Press the cup holder switch on the side of the seat to pop up the cup holder for placing water cups, beverages and other articles.

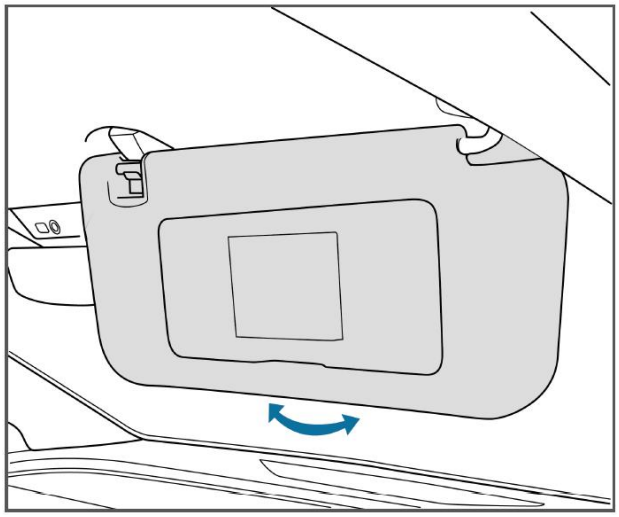
Rear side cup holder



The cup holder can hold tea cups, beverage bottles and other items for easy use during travel.

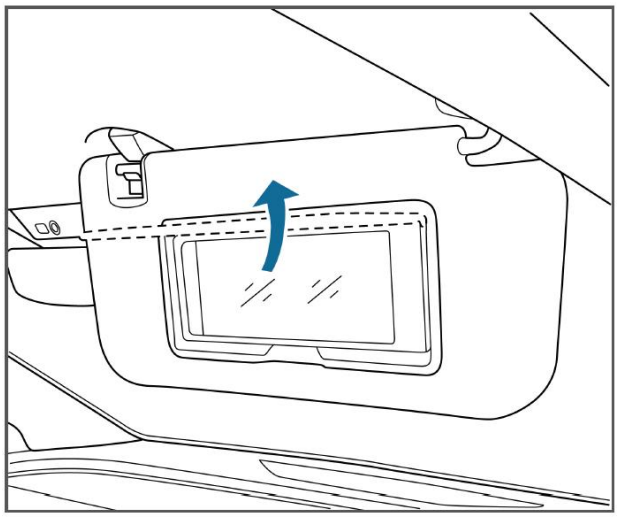
Other devices

Sun visor



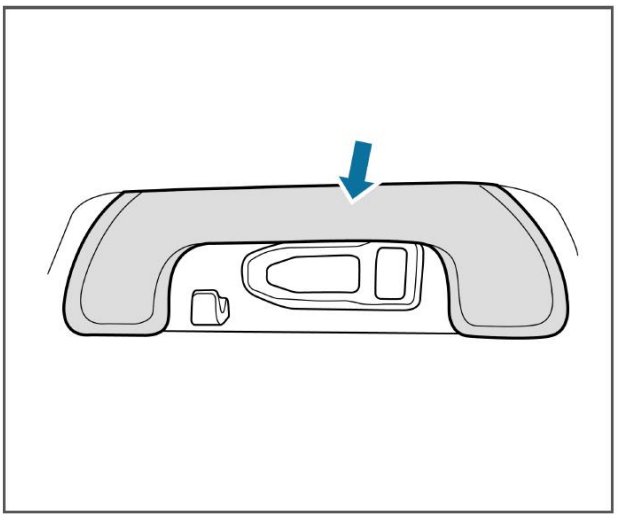
Turn the sun visor downward to block the front sunlight. To block the side sunlight, disengage the left/right support rod from the clip, and then turn the sun visor to the side.

Vanity mirror



The inner side of the sun visor is equipped with a vanity mirror, and some models are equipped with LED fill lights. Turn down the sun visor, and push up the cover plate of make-up mirror to use it.

Top handle

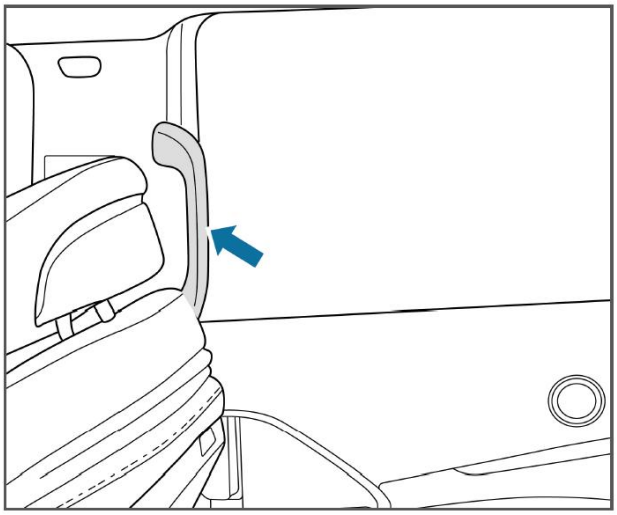


The top handle is available to support the body when needed.

Caution

Do not hang heavy objects on the top handle or apply excessive force to the top handle to prevent it from being damaged.

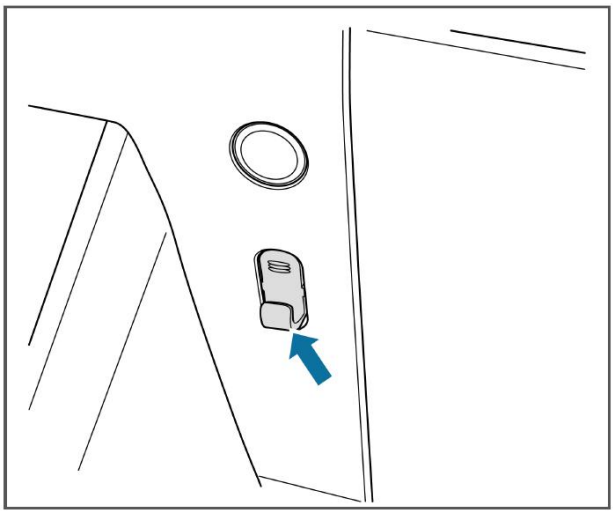
Side wall armrest



The middle side wall of the vehicle is provided with a handrail for passengers to get on and off.

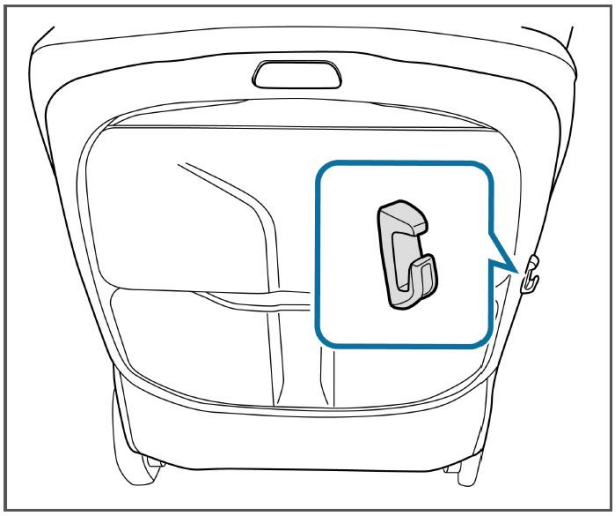
Hook

Dashboard hook



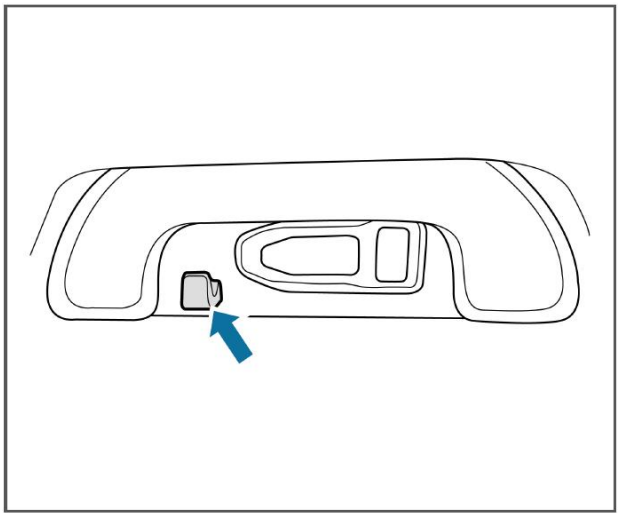
The left side of the glove box is designed with a dashboard hook, which can be used to hang portable items such as water cups. Press the lower part of the hook to unlock and then flip it downward until the bottom is locked to use. Press the upper part of the hook to flip it upward until the top is locked to close the hook.

Seat back hook *



The front and middle seat backrests of some models are provided with hooks on the side for the convenience of passengers.

Clothes hook

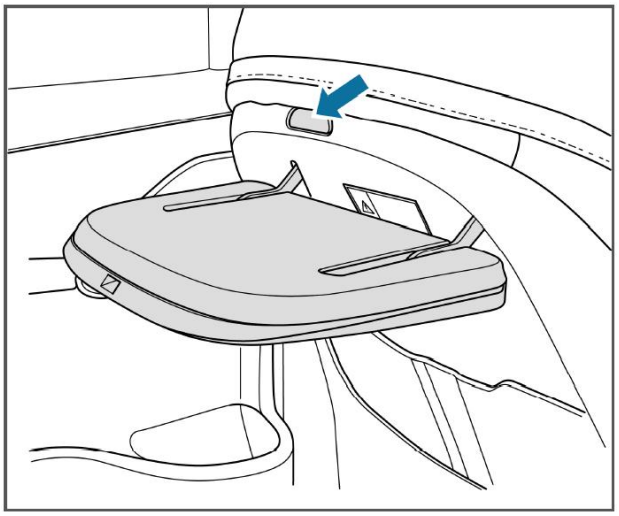


The rear-row top handle is equipped with a coat and hat hook for passengers to use.

Caution

- Do not hang clothes hangers or other hard objects on the hooks. When the side curtain airbag deploys, these objects may be ejected and cause injuries to passengers.
- The hook can be used for items weighing not more than 3 kg. Do not hang any item exceeding the weight limit to prevent damage to the hook.

Tray table *



For some models, a tray table is provided behind the front seat backrest. Press the button above the tray table to unlock, and push down the tray table to horizontal position for use.

Caution

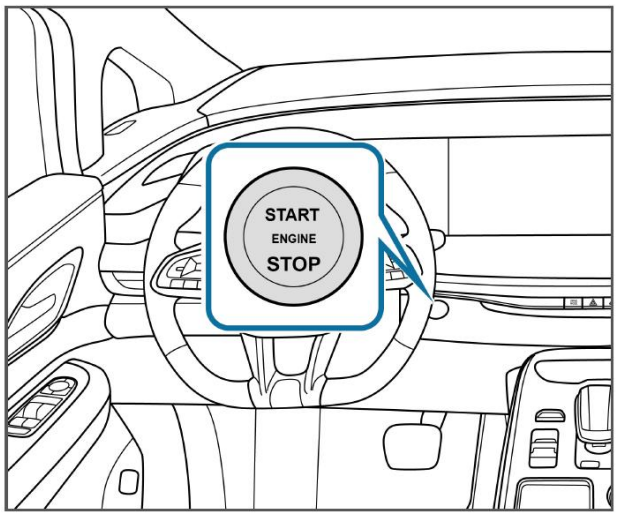
Do not lean or place objects over 5 kg on the tray table.

Warning

- When operating the tray table, do not put your hands in the retracted position of the desktop, otherwise you may pinch your hands.
- Do not use the tray table when the vehicle is running. Failure to follow the instructions may result in death or serious injury.

Starting the vehicle

Start/Stop switch mode



Carry the intelligent key matched with the vehicle into the vehicle.

OFF: with the vehicle in OFF position, the Start switch indicator is in blue breathing state.

ACC: With the vehicle powered OFF, press the Start switch once without depressing the brake pedal to shift to ACC mode. At this moment, the indicator light is in blue breathing state and some related functions such as entertainment system are available.

ON: With the vehicle powered in ACC mode, press the Start switch without depressing the brake pedal to switch the vehicle to ON mode. At this moment, the indicator light is blue and most electrical devices such as seat heating can be used. Press the Start switch again, and the vehicle will return to "OFF" position.

START: It refers to the gear after the vehicle is started. It is only used to start the vehicle. After the vehicle starts, the Start switch indicator stays blue.

Vehicle start and stop

Keyless start

Carry the correct intelligent key:

1. Depress the brake pedal.

2. Press the start switch, and release it in time after the vehicle starts.

Service mode activated

If the vehicle continues to run after the low fuel level warning indicator illuminates, the traction battery will be lack of electricity. If the vehicle cannot be started in the normal mode, it can enter the maintenance mode after refueling to force the engine to generate power.

Enter the maintenance mode when any of the following conditions is met:

1. The traction battery capacity is less than 5% and the driving mode button is long pressed for 10s.

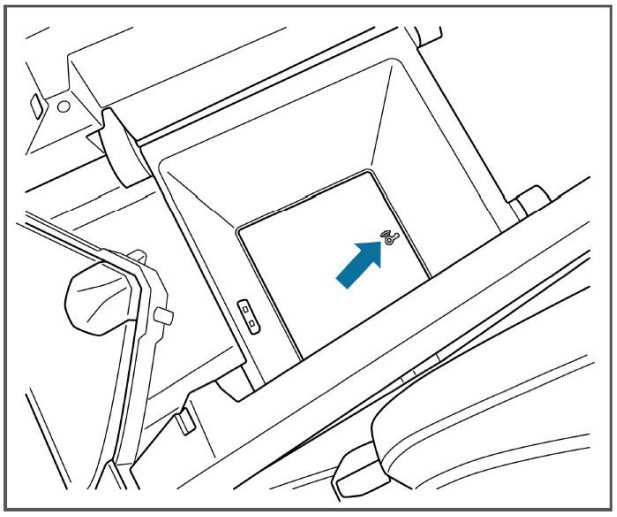
2. Receive the designated signal from diagnostic scanner and enter maintenance mode.

After entering the maintenance mode, depress the brake pedal and meanwhile press the Start switch to start the vehicle.

Conditions for exiting maintenance mode:

The vehicle control unit sleeps or the Start switch is put to "OFF" position.

Low battery start



When the battery of the intelligent key is too low or runs out, you can use the mechanical key inside the intelligent key to open doors, then put the intelligent key behind the armrest box on the console, depress the brake pedal and meanwhile press the Start switch.

Failure to start the vehicle

If the vehicle READY indicator is not on, it indicates that there may be a powertrain fault affecting the starting of the vehicle or the starting conditions are not met. Please check according to the prompts on the combination instrument:

1. The combination instrument displays the text message "Electronic anti-theft failed". Please check whether the intelligent key is in the vehicle and close to the front passenger cup holder.

2. If the combination instrument prompts "Low power" or the combination instrument fails to light up, it indicates that the 12V LV battery may have run out of power. Please try to start the vehicle by jumper starting. See "Jump starting" in Chapter X

"Emergency Self-service Handling" for details.

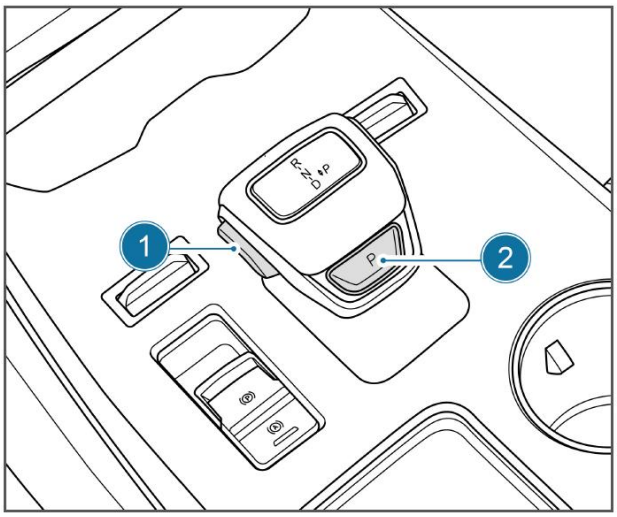
3. If the combination instrument prompts relevant text message of "Powertrain failure", please contact an authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing to inspect the vehicle's powertrain.

Vehicle shut down

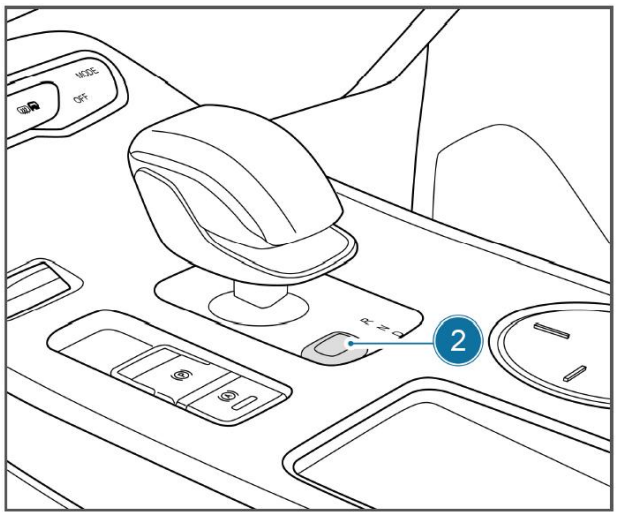
Depress the brake pedal and wait until the vehicle stops, shift to the P position, pull up the EPB switch, and press the Start switch.

Gear shifting

Leather gearshift lever



Crystal shift lever



1. Unlock button
2. P gear button

The combination instrument will display the gear of the vehicle.

Introduction to gears

Gear P (parking)

Use this gear to park or make the vehicle ready for driving. Press the P button on the shift lever to enter the parking position. Be sure to completely stop the vehicle before pressing the P gear button.

Gear D (drive)

Only when the vehicle is started (the combination instrument displays "READY") can the D gear be engaged. Use this gear when driving forward.

Gear R (reverse)

Only when the vehicle is started (the combination instrument displays "READY") can the R gear be engaged. Use this gear when reversing. Be sure to stop the vehicle completely before shifting to R gear.

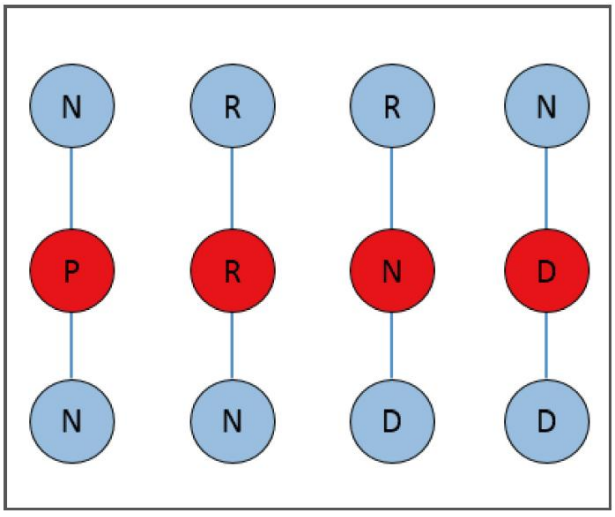
Gear N (neutral)

When the vehicle is in this gear, the hybrid powertrain cannot output power and will not provide auxiliary parking. Be sure to stop the vehicle completely before shifting to N gear.

Driving operation

Shifting method

After each shift operation, the gearshift lever will return to the middle position. The gears are arranged from front to rear in the order of R-N-D. When the vehicle is started, the detailed shift sequence is shown in the following figure. The middle position is the current actual gear of the vehicle.



Shift to gear P

After the vehicle completely stops, press the P gear button to enter the Parking gear.

Shift to gear R

After the vehicle is started, depress the brake pedal and push the gearshift lever upward to R position.

Shift to gear N

P-N: Depress the brake pedal and push the gearshift lever upward or downward to N position.

Gear R - Gear N: Depress the brake pedal and push down the shift lever to N position.

Gear D - Gear N: Depress the brake pedal and push the shift lever upward to N position.

Shift to gear D

After the vehicle is started, depress the brake pedal and push down the gearshift lever to D position.

Description of gear shifting conditions

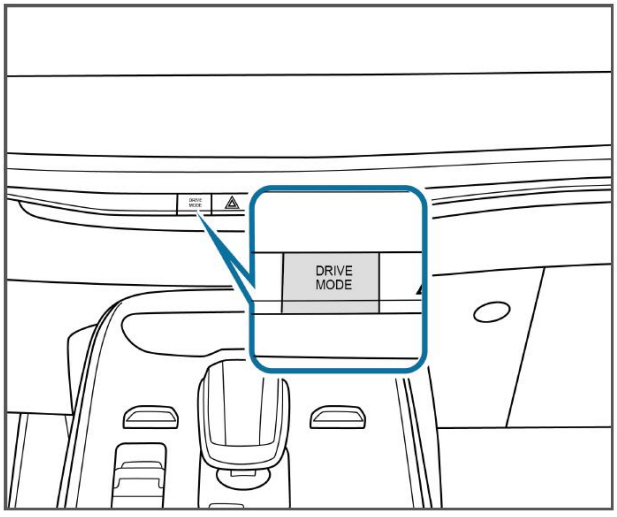
1. When the vehicle is not started, it can only be shifted between P and N.

2. Disengage from P position: Depress the brake pedal first, then push the gearshift lever and press the Unlock button at the same time (for some models).

3. Shift to R gear: After the vehicle is started, depress the brake pedal first, then push the shift lever and press the Unlock button at the same time (for some models).

4. Shift to D position: After the vehicle is started, depress the brake pedal first, then push the gearshift lever and press the Unlock button at the same time (for some models).

Driving mode switching



When the vehicle is started, the driving mode defaults to economy mode. Press the driving mode button once to switch to standard mode, and press this button again to switch to sport mode. Cyclically switch among ECO → STANDARD → SPORT → ECO mode.

ECO mode

At this time, the vehicle is running in an economical and energy-saving state. It is recommended to choose this mode first during daily use.

Standard mode

More attention to driving comfort, a mode that balances energy saving and performance.

Sport mode

Increase the vehicle power, resulting in a higher level of responsiveness and driving experience. When driving in this mode, pay attention to the road conditions and keep a safe distance from the vehicle ahead. It is suitable for flat roads with few vehicles.

Caution

When the vehicle accelerates rapidly, the driving wheels may slip, and the acceleration performance can be fully exerted only on a suitable road surface. Acceleration performance is related to weather conditions, vehicle load distribution, load conditions, road conditions, operation habits and other factors.

Multi-mode power system

The vehicle is equipped with a series-parallel hybrid power system, which has five driving modes: EV mode, HEV mode, series mode, parallel mode (directly driven by engine) and energy recovery.

EV/HEV switching

Tap [Vehicle control] - [Vehicle settings] - [Driving experience] - [EV/HEV switching] or [Vehicle control] - [Quick control] - [EV/HEV switching] on the multimedia display screen in turn

to set two different driving modes: EV and HEV according to driving habits.

EV mode

The vehicle will use the traction battery as much as possible to supply power for driving. When the traction battery is low or its output power cannot meet the requirements of the current working condition, the vehicle will start the hybrid system to generate electricity or participate in driving.

HEV mode

The endurance of the vehicle is longer than that in [EV mode], and the hybrid system automatically judges the optimal intervention time according to the current working condition.

Series mode

When the power battery is low or needs to drive the vehicle with a large load (such as acceleration and uphill), the generator starts the engine and provides electric energy to the drive motor together with the power battery. When the generated power is large and exceeds the consumption of the drive motor, the excess power will charge the power battery. When the generated power cannot meet the consumption of the drive motor alone, the power battery will discharge to provide electric energy for the drive motor.

Parallel mode (direct engine drive)

When the vehicle speed is high, the engine directly provides driving force to the wheels. When the engine power exceeds the vehicle driving demand, the excess power is converted into electric energy and stored in the power battery. When the engine power cannot meet the vehicle driving demand, the power battery releases electric energy to the drive motor to assist in driving the vehicle, so as to achieve greater driving force.

Energy recovery

This vehicle has the functions of coasting energy recovery and braking energy recovery, which can make driving more energy-saving and economical.

Coasting energy recovery

Sliding energy recovery can convert the kinetic energy of the vehicle into electric energy for storage. Energy loss is inevitable during conversion. The most economical and energy-saving way is that all the energy of the vehicle is used for driving.

Sliding energy recovery has the effect of braking deceleration. Tap [Vehicle control] - [Vehicle settings] - [Driving experience] - [Sliding energy recovery] on the multimedia display screen in turn to set sliding energy recovery as one of three gears: None, Comfortable and Strong according to driving habits. This gear can be memorized automatically. Energy recovery will not be carried out when the vehicle is in a gear without energy recovery during coasting (if deceleration is required, braking energy recovery can also be carried out when the brake pedal is depressed).

Braking energy recovery

When the brake pedal is depressed, the vehicle will enter the braking energy recovery mode. The braking energy recovery is generally greater than the coasting energy recovery power, which can reduce the vehicle speed in a short time and recover more energy into the power battery, so that the vehicle can obtain a better energy-saving effect.

Energy recovery may not occur under the following circumstances:

1. The traction battery is high and cannot store more electric quantity.

2. The vehicle speed is too low. This model has creeping function. After the vehicle is in D/R gear, if the accelerator pedal is not depressed and the brake pedal is released, the vehicle will run at a low speed (the same as idle running of traditional vehicles), and sliding energy recovery cannot be carried out.

3. The charging capacity of the traction battery is seriously limited due to extremely low ambient temperature or excessively high temperature.

4. When the vehicle speed is high, the running resistance of the vehicle is relatively large. In order to maintain good driving comfort, sliding energy recovery will not be carried out at higher speeds.

5. The vehicle is in a gear without coasting energy recovery.

6. Safety assistance systems (such as ABS) for vehicle driving are activated.

7. The cruise function is being used.

8. The vehicle has a fault that restricts driving. In case of any fault indication, please contact an authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing.

When the vehicle speed is high and other systems of the vehicle are under appropriate conditions, release the accelerator pedal, and the vehicle will enter the energy recovery mode. During energy recovery, the kinetic energy of the vehicle is converted into electric energy by the drive motor and stored in the traction battery. The engine and generator are stopped or have no output.

The multi-mode power system will automatically select an appropriate power mode according to the drive load, depressing depth of accelerator pedal, traction battery SOC and charging/discharging capacity, vehicle speed, consumption of accessories such as A/C, so as to maintain better power performance, economy and driving comfort during driving.

The driving economy (fuel consumption and endurance mileage) is related to driving habits, road conditions, weather, load conditions, A/C on, windows opening, tire pressure and other factors. To reduce fuel consumption and extend the endurance mileage, please gently depress the accelerator pedal to avoid rapid acceleration and close the windows when the vehicle speed is high.

Limp mode

When some specific faults occur to the vehicle, the power of the vehicle will be limited, the limited power status indicator on the combination instrument will illuminate, and the maximum speed of the vehicle will decrease.

Starting requirements

1. Do not continue to start after several startup failures. Please contact a Forthing authorized service station as soon as possible.

2. Do not push or tow the vehicle to start.

Driving requirements

1. Do not overload or overload the drive motor.

2. Do not turn off the Start switch when the vehicle is running.

3. If the power drops during driving, please contact a Forthing authorized service station as soon as possible.

4. Do not drive on the terrain where it is easy to hit the bottom of the vehicle.

5. Make sure that the combination instrument has no fault alarm signal before driving.

Parking

To park the vehicle, press the P position button and pull up the EPB switch.

Charge-sustaining mode

Tap [Vehicle control] - [Vehicle settings] - [Driving experience] - [Battery level holding] on the multimedia display screen in turn to set the battery level sustaining mode as OFF, intelligent power saving or forced pure electric according to driving habits and subsequent road conditions.

Close state

This is the default state. In this state, the traction battery will be automatically maintained at a low level, and the vehicle will automatically start and stop the hybrid system according to the traction battery level and driving demand, so as to realize the balance of vehicle power performance and economy.

Intelligent power reservation

In this mode, the target SOC of traction battery can be set in the "Intelligent Power-storage Electric Quantity Setting" on the multimedia display screen. When the traction battery SOC is lower than the set target SOC, the vehicle will start the hybrid system to charge the traction battery and maintain the SOC near the target SOC. This mode can be activated in advance under relatively complex road conditions (such as mountainous road and high-speed condition) or when you want to set the target SOC of traction battery by yourself.

Note

- For long-distance driving or driving in mountainous areas, it is recommended to set the target SOC in the high range section to cope with high-speed driving or road conditions with high power performance requirements.
- When used in urban areas, it is recommended to turn off the intelligent power protection or set the target electric quantity of intelligent power protection at a low range, which can effectively use the electric quantity of traction battery and save energy costs.

Caution

After the traction battery is low or enters the intelligent power protection mode, the hybrid system will enter the power generation condition. At this time, the engine sound is slightly louder than that in the normal case.

Forced EV mode

The demand of "continuous power consumption without fuel" is provided to ensure that the vehicle runs with pure electricity to the greatest extent. When the battery level drops to a lower level, the vehicle will automatically exit this mode and resume the off state of the battery level holding mode.

Caution

- When the traction battery SOC is too low, the power may decrease and the fuel consumption may increase. It is not recommended to use the forced pure electric mode frequently.
- When the ambient temperature is too low, the hybrid system may be started in advance.
- After the vehicle is powered off or the engine is automatically started due to low battery, it will automatically exit the forced pure electric mode.
- To slow down the performance degradation of the traction battery, do not keep the traction battery in a low state for a long time. It is recommended to fully charge it once a week.
- Forced electric-only mode in a low temperature environment may cause problems such as low power of the traction battery, failure to start again after parking, and poor heating effect due to engine failure. Therefore, it is not recommended to use the forced electric-only mode when the ambient temperature is below 0°C.

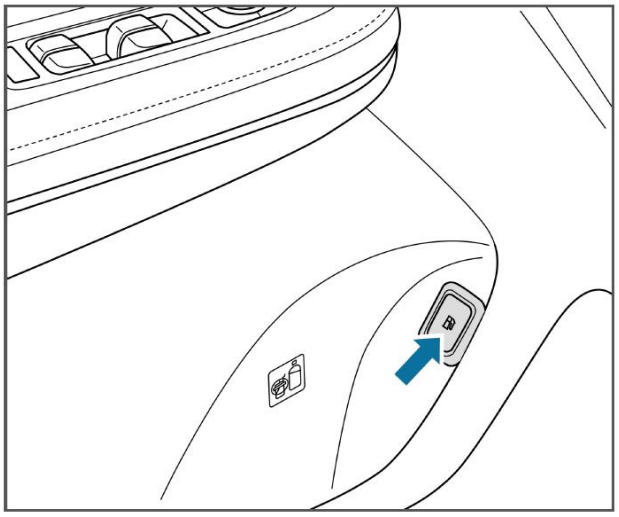
Filling the fuel

Fuel requirements

Please use 92# unleaded gasoline or above.

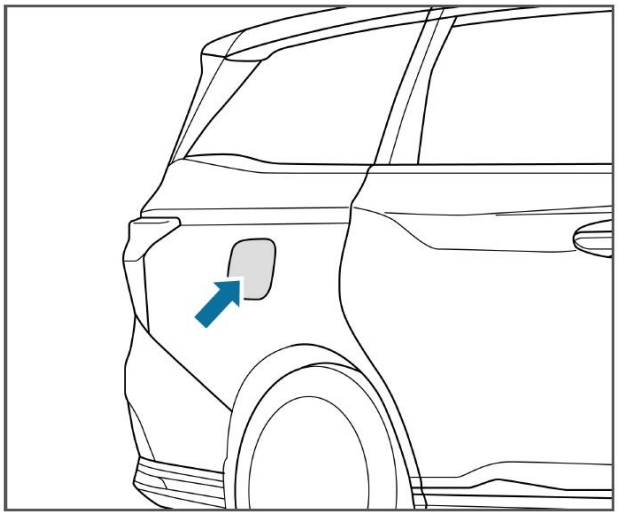
Open and close the fuel filler cap

Fuel filler cap switch *



The fuel filler cap switch is located in front of the storage tank on the driver's door.

Open



When the Start switch is at "OFF" position, press the left middle part of the fuel filler cap to open it.

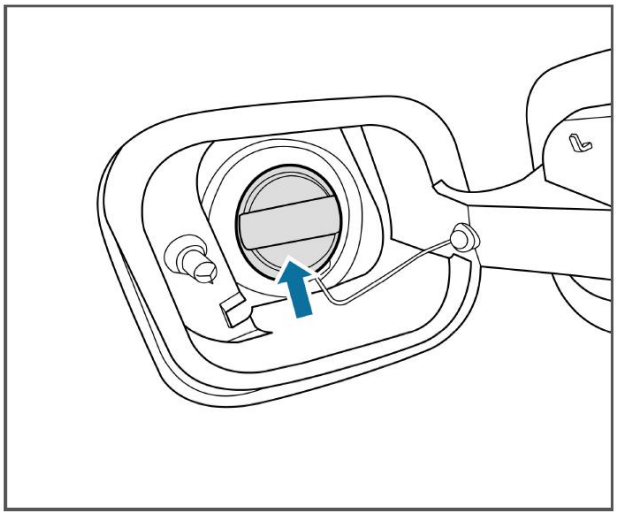
Note

For some models, before refueling, please press the fuel cap switch for 2~10s to open the fuel cap.

Closing

After closing the fuel filler cap, press the central door lock button or the intelligent key lock button to lock the fuel filler cap.

Refueling



Rotate the fuel filler cap counterclockwise to slowly open it and add fuel. After refueling, rotate the filler cap clockwise until a "click" sound is heard, and then close it.

Warning

- During refueling, put the Start switch to "OFF" position to avoid sudden start when the engine is running or during refueling.
- Keep away from heat and open flames.
- After the nozzle is automatically closed for the first time, refueling shall be stopped. At this time, there is a certain space in the fuel tank to cope with fuel expansion when temperature changes. Otherwise, the fuel tank will be filled up. In hot environments, fuel expansion will cause fuel leakage.
- Please use 92# or above unleaded gasoline, otherwise it will cause failure of fuel system parts.
- Do not refuel at a low refueling speed, as this will cause the fuel quantity to exceed the design value, thus damaging the fuel system components.

Suggestions for driving

Precautions for safe driving

In case of a serious traffic accident or severe front, side and rear collisions of the vehicle, immediately press the starting switch to power off the vehicle, depress the brake pedal, and disconnect the emergency service switch (if equipped). Get off the vehicle and contact an authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing.

Avoid driving the vehicle through road sections with pits, many big stones, potholes and excessively high buffer zones as far as possible, and avoid wading to prevent the battery pack from being soaked in water. In case of any abnormality, first ensure personnel safety, press the Start switch to power off the vehicle, depress the brake pedal, disconnect the emergency service switch (if equipped), and contact a Forthing authorized service station.

Vehicle running-in period

Special attention shall be paid to the driving mode within the mileage of 1000 km of the new vehicle, which will help to ensure the reliability of the vehicle and prolong the service life of the vehicle. Observe the following precautions in this stage:

1. Avoid driving the vehicle under full load, and do not overload.
2. Try to avoid depressing the brake pedal suddenly.
3. It is forbidden to use this vehicle to tow other vehicles.
4. Avoid driving at the same speed for a long time.

Caution

After overhaul or replacement of engine and brake lining, the above precautions shall also be followed.

Driving at night

When driving at night, please pay attention to the following matters due to poor vision and fatigue:

1. Adjust the position of interior rearview mirror to reduce glare.
2. Keep a longer distance from the vehicle ahead.
3. Drive carefully and be careful of animals.
4. Drive at a low speed.
5. Avoid looking directly at the headlamp of oncoming vehicle and reduce the speed when meeting other vehicles.
6. Do not drive when you are tired. If you feel sleepy, stop the vehicle at a safe place on the roadside in time to rest.
7. Keep all glass clean and tidy to avoid dazzling lights and blocking sight.

Driving under the influence

Never drive while under the influence. Driving under the influence is very dangerous, and even a small amount of alcohol can affect people's reaction, perception, attention and judgment. Drunk driving can lead not only to accidents but also serious personal injuries. The traffic department will impose corresponding penalties on drunk driving in accordance with the provisions of the *Road Traffic*

Safety Law.

Driving through water

In order to avoid damaging the vehicle when driving through water, pay attention to the following matters:

1. Determine the water depth and water level before driving through water.

The maximum water level can only reach 1/4 of the height of the wheel.

2. Drive the vehicle at a speed lower than 10 km/h. If the vehicle speed is too high, waves may be formed in front of the vehicle. As a result, water will flow into the engine intake system or other components of the vehicle, causing damage to the vehicle.

3. Do not park, reverse or turn off the vehicle in water under any circumstances.

Caution

- When the vehicle passes through waterlogging or muddy roads, the braking effect may be affected and the braking distance will be extended, which may cause an accident!
- Avoid rapid acceleration or emergency braking immediately after driving through water.
- Some components of the vehicle, such as engine, transmission, chassis or electrical system, may be damaged when driving through water.
- After driving through water, when the traffic conditions permit, clean the brake and dry it as soon as possible by intermittent braking. Do not affect other traffic participants to avoid traffic accidents.
- The waves caused by the opposite vehicle may exceed the allowable water height of this vehicle.
- There may be ponding, mud pits or stones hidden in the water, which will make it more difficult for or hinder wading.
- Avoid driving on waterlogged roads as much as possible. After passing through the road, it is recommended to drive your vehicle to a Forthing authorized service station for a comprehensive inspection and troubleshooting to ensure driving safety.

Long-distance driving

Before long-distance driving, please make sure that relevant preparations are made and try to have a good rest.

Please check the following components of the vehicle before traveling:

1. Check whether the washer fluid reservoir is full and whether the inside and outside of all windows are cleaned.

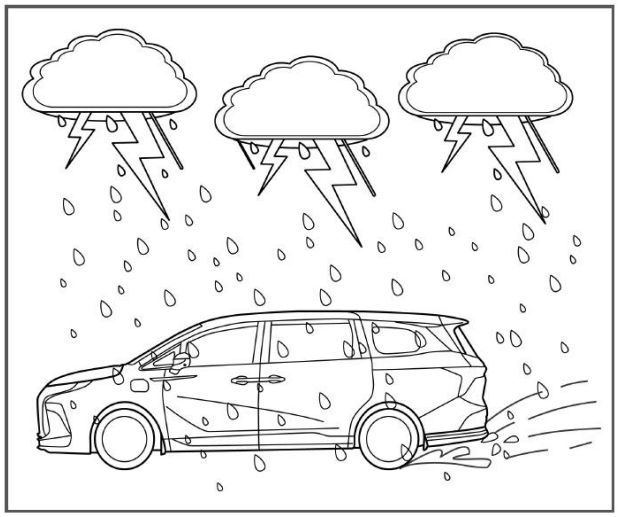
2. Check whether the fuel, engine oil and other fluids reach the specified level.

3. Check whether all the lamps work normally.

4. Check whether the lamp surface is clean.

5. Check whether the tire has been inflated to the recommended pressure value and whether the tread pattern is suitable for long-distance driving.

Driving on rainy and slippery roads



Please pay attention to the following items when driving in rainy days:

1. Heavy rain will deteriorate the sight and increase the braking distance, so please slow down.

2. Check the wiper frequently. If there are stripes or missing wiping areas on the front windshield, please replace the wiper blade in time.

3. Please ensure that the vehicle tires are in good condition. If the vehicle tires are in poor condition, braking on a wet and slippery road may cause the vehicle to slip or even cause an accident.

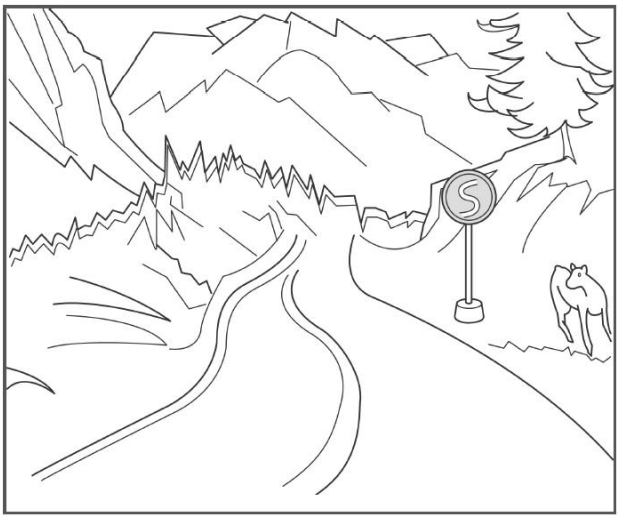
4. Please turn on the headlights, fog lamp and hazard warning lamp to block your sight.

5. Please slow down when passing through waterlogged roads.

6. During driving, do not turn sharply or brake suddenly to avoid accidents.

7. After the vehicle is driven with wet brake or in water, gently depress the brake pedal during low-speed driving to dry the brake until it returns to normal.

Driving on slopes and mountainous roads



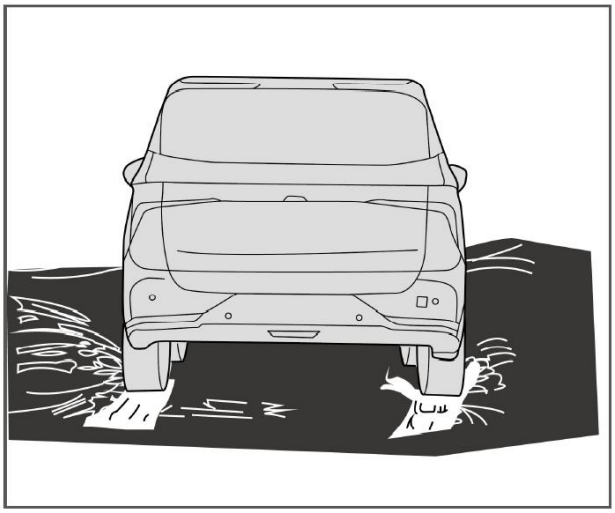
When driving on slopes and mountainous roads:

1. Please keep the vehicle in good condition.

2. Pay special attention when going uphill and passing over the top of the slope, as there may be obstacles in your lane.

3. Special warning signs may be seen on mountainous roads. Please pay attention to these signals and take appropriate measures when driving.

Driving on icy and snowy road

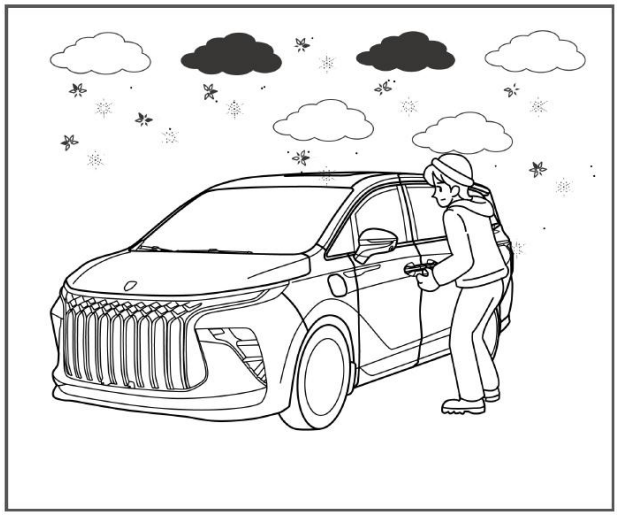


1. When driving in snow, use snow tires as much as possible. Please select snow tires of the same size and model as those originally assembled.

2. When driving in snow, try to avoid high speed, rapid acceleration, emergency braking and small-angle turning.

3. When driving on icy ground, emergency braking will cause the vehicle to drift. Please keep a safe distance.

Driving in winter



Harsh driving environment in winter will increase vehicle wear or cause vehicle failure. The probability of failure can be reduced by referring to the following recommendations:

1. If necessary, replace with low-viscosity winter engine oil.

2. Check the coolant specifications to confirm that the freezing point is suitable for the expected winter temperature. At present, the freezing point of coolant produced by Dongfeng Liuzhou Motor Co., Ltd. is -35°C, and the lowest freezing point of low-temperature coolant is -45°C (model OAT-45). If it does not meet the requirements, replace with qualified coolant.

3. Check the wiper to ensure that the wiper blade can wipe freely.

4. Depress the accelerator pedal deeply in situ before shutting down the vehicle, and repeat many times to prevent the exhaust system from being blocked by ice, resulting in failure to start the vehicle.

5. Carry appropriate emergency equipment according to weather changes.

Electric power steering

The electric power steering system can provide power during driving, so that the driver can turn the steering wheel easily.

Tap [Vehicle control] - [Vehicle settings] - [Driving experience] - [Steering wheel hand feeling mode] on the multimedia display screen in turn, including three modes: comfort, standard and sport.

Comfort: The steering power is increased, and the steering is easier.

Standard: The steering assist is moderate and suitable for general driving habits. This item is the default state.

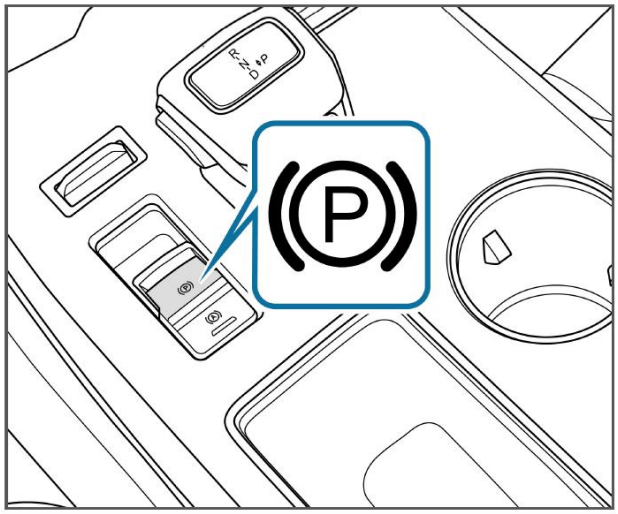
Sports: The steering power is reduced, and the steering hand feels steady.

Caution

- Please select the steering mode when the vehicle is stationary and no steering operation is performed.
- When turning the steering wheel quickly, you may hear the working sound of the power steering assist motor, which is a normal state and not a fault.
- During parking or driving at a very low speed, if the steering wheel is repeatedly and continuously turned or turned to the end for a long time, the electric power steering system will be overheated, and the power of the steering motor will decrease or even fail to provide power temporarily. In order to avoid this situation, try not to do similar operations.
- If the steering system fault warning lamp illuminates after the vehicle is successfully started, it indicates that the EPS system or related systems are abnormal. At this time, more force is required to turn the steering wheel. Please reduce the speed as soon as possible and pull over safely. Shut down the vehicle and restart it five minutes later. If the fault indicator no longer illuminates, you can drive normally. If it still illuminates, please pay attention to driving safety and contact a Forthing authorized service station as soon as possible.

Parking brake

Electrical Parking Brake (EPB)



The driver can use the EPB switch to park the vehicle reliably.

EPB activation and release

Activation: After the vehicle stops stably, pull up the EPB switch to complete manual parking, and the parking state indicator lights up.

Release: Depress the brake pedal and press the EPB switch at the same time. The electronic parking brake is released, and the parking state indicator goes out.

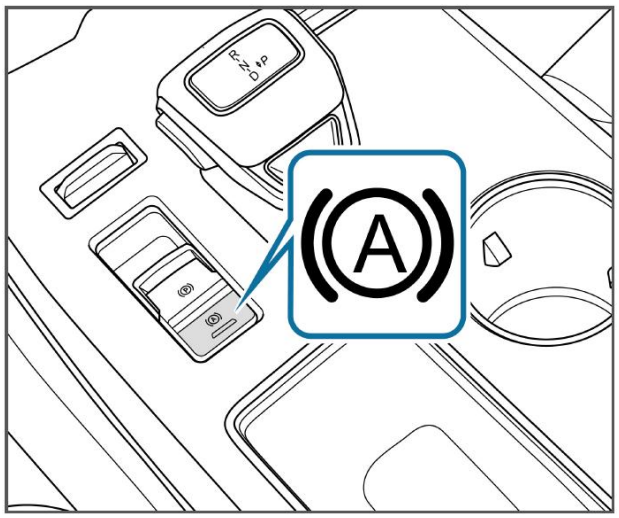
Emergency brake function

The system can only be used when the brake pedal fails or is blocked. Pull up the EPB switch continuously to realize vehicle braking with electronic parking function. As long as the EPB switch is released, the emergency brake can be withdrawn.

Warning

Avoid using the emergency braking function as much as possible. On roads with large bends, poor road conditions or slippery roads, using the emergency braking function may cause drifting and sideslipping of vehicles.

AUTO HOLD



The AUTO HOLD function helps the driver to start the vehicle more comfortably on the slope section or at a traffic light intersection. This function can be activated and inactivated by press AUTO HOLD switch. After the function is turned on, when the driver releases the brake pedal on a hill or at an intersection with traffic lights, the system will continue to hold braking.

Turn-on conditions of AUTO HOLD:

1. The vehicle is in the starting state.
2. The driver has fastened the seat belt.
3. All doors of the vehicle are closed.

Turn on AUTO HOLD function

Press the AUTO HOLD switch on the console to enable the AUTO HOLD function, and the switch indicator will light up.

When the engine is running, if the vehicle keeps stationary for a long time, such as on a slope, at red light or when driving and stopping frequently, AUTO HOLD function provides support to the driver and takes over the parking task of the vehicle. After the driver depresses the brake pedal to stop the vehicle, the AVH indicator will illuminate and the driver can release the brake pedal.

When starting, no matter on flat road or uphill and downhill, you need to depress the accelerator pedal before parking can be released automatically; otherwise, the vehicle may fail to start.

Turn off AUTO HOLD function

1. When the AUTO HOLD function is activated, press the AUTO HOLD switch to deactivate it and the switch indicator will go out.

2. If the driver's door is opened, the driver's

seat belt is released or the vehicle is powered off, AUTO HOLD function will exit automatically and change to EPB parking mode to ensure parking safety.

Warning

The AUTO HOLD function cannot fix the vehicle on a slope (such as landslide or snowy ground) in any case.

Brake assist system

Anti-lock Braking System (ABS)

Working principle

The ABS system controls the brake of the vehicle, and adjusts the braking force by detecting the speed of each wheel to prevent wheel locking and sideslip. During vehicle braking, the steering wheel can still be used to avoid collision.

System self-inspection

The ABS system has a built-in self-inspection function. When the vehicle is started and running at low speed, the system will conduct self-inspection. In case of any fault, the self-inspection function will turn off the ABS system and illuminate the ABS system fault warning lamp on the combination instrument. At this time, the brake system works normally, but the ABS system does not work. If the ABS fault warning lamp illuminates during self-inspection or driving, please contact an authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing.

Normal operation

The ABS system will start automatically when the vehicle speed reaches more than 5 km/h. When the ABS detects that one or more wheels are approaching the locked state, the actuator acts quickly to release and restore the braking force. When the actuator is working, you may feel slight vibration of the brake pedal and hear the vibrating sound from the actuator under the engine hood.It is normal and indicates that the ABS system works normally.

Caution

- The ABS cannot reduce the braking distance.
- During emergency braking, the steering shall be moderate.

Electronic Brakeforce Distribution (EBD) System

The EBD system will automatically distribute the braking force between the front and rear wheels, so that the vehicle can have good braking performance under different load conditions.

Electronic Stability Program (ESP) control system

The ESP system can improve the stability of driving the vehicle. When the ESP system detects a deviation between the expected driving state and the actual body state, it will start to work and selectively apply braking force on the vehicle brake to improve the driving stability.

Caution

- The electronic stability control (ESP) system cannot prevent accidents caused by sudden steering at a high speed or dangerous driving techniques.
- Try to avoid driving on very inclined roads.
- If wheels, rims and brake-related components not recommended by Dongfeng Forthing are used, the ESP system may not work normally and the ESP warning lamp may illuminate.
- Do not refit the suspension.
- The ESP system cannot replace the use of winter tires or tire slip prevention on snowy roads.

ESP switch

The ESP system is turned on by default. Click [Vehicle control] - [Quick control] - [ESP] on the multimedia display screen in order to turn off the ESP system, and the electronic stability program OFF indicator on the combination instrument will light up.

After the ESP system is turned off, when the vehicle speed exceeds 80 km/h, the ESP system will be turned on automatically and the electronic stability program (ESP) OFF indicator will go out.

After the ESP system is turned off, press the ESP switch again to turn on the ESP system and the electronic stability program (ESP) OFF indicator on the combination instrument will go out.

Brake priority

The brake priority system can automatically

reduce the driving force of the vehicle to zero when it detects that the driver depresses the brake pedal.

Traction Control System (TCS)

When the vehicle is running, the traction control system (TCS) reduces wheel slip in its rotation direction by controlling the engine and properly braking the driving wheels.

Hill Hold Control (HHC)

To prevent the vehicle from sliding down when starting on a steep or smooth slope, HHC system will temporarily (for about 2 s) apply braking force to four wheels to stop the vehicle from sliding down and help the vehicle start normally.

The HHC system will work automatically under the following conditions:

1. The gear is in D or R position and the vehicle is going uphill.

2. Depress the brake pedal, and the vehicle stops completely on the slope.

The HHC system will not work under the following conditions:

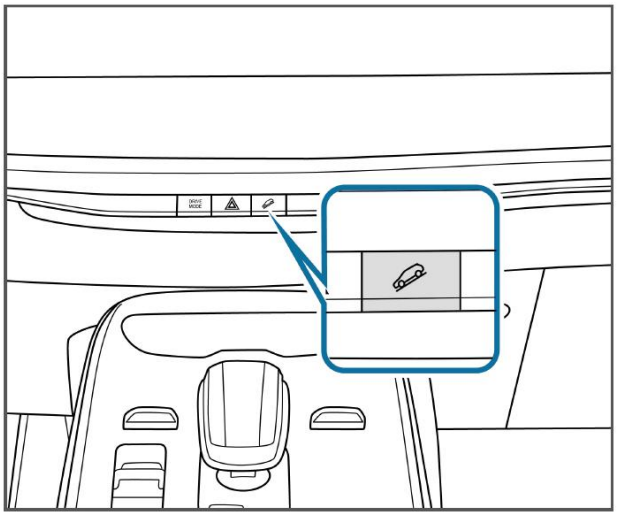
1. The gear is in N or P position, or the vehicle is on a horizontal road.

2. The ESP system is turned off or has a fault.

Warning

- Do not rely solely on the HHC system to prevent the vehicle from sliding down a ramp.
- When parking the vehicle on a steep slope, icy and muddy road, depress the brake pedal to prevent the vehicle from sliding backward.

Hill Decent Control (HDC) system



The HDC system allows the driver to smoothly pass through a steep downhill section without depressing the brake pedal. Press the HDC switch, and the HDC working indicator on the combination instrument will illuminate, indicating that the HDC system is turned on. When the HDC switch is pressed again or the vehicle speed exceeds 60 km/h, the HDC working indicator will go out and the HDC system will be turned off.

HDC braking

When the vehicle runs downhill on a steep slope, with the HDC system turned on, the system will apply brake actively to keep the speed within 8 km/h ~ 35 km/h. The driver can depress the accelerator pedal or brake pedal to adjust the downhill speed to be maintained by using the hill descent control function within this speed range.

When the HDC system performs active braking, the hill descent control working indicator on the combination instrument flashes and the vehicle brake light illuminates. At the same time, the ESP system will make motor working sound and the brake will make braking sound, which are normal phenomena.

Warning

- Before using the HDC function, the driver needs to confirm that the system is activated.
- The HDC function only controls the vehicle speed through active braking. The driver should pay attention to controlling the vehicle at any time to ensure driving safety.
- When the hill descent control function is activated, it will not respond to the deceleration request from the ACC function and the ACC function will deactivate. Do not use the ACC function when the hill descent control is enabled.

Brake power assistance

When the force applied on the brake pedal exceeds a certain level, the brake booster will be activated. At this time, even if the brake pedal is gently depressed, a large braking force will be generated, which is normal.

Brake Assist (BA)

Most drivers can brake in time under dangerous conditions, but the force to depress the brake pedal is insufficient, resulting in an increase in braking distance. For vehicles with BA system, when the brake pedal is depressed quickly during driving, the hydraulic auxiliary braking system will be activated. At this time, the BA system will generate a braking force greater than that during normal braking, so as to shorten the braking distance and ensure your safety.

Brake pedal feeling adjustment

The brake mode selection can be used to adjust the foot feeling of the brake pedal, and the driver can select his/her favorite foot feeling style of the brake pedal in the brake mode adjustment.

Click [Vehicle control] - [Vehicle settings] - [Driving experience] - [Brake pedal sense adjustment] on the multimedia display screen in turn to select three different modes: Comfort, standard and sport. After the vehicle is restarted, the brake pedal will memorize the last setting state.

Comfort Stop System (CST)

During braking of the vehicle on a flat and level road, before the vehicle stops, CST system can appropriately reduce the brake pressure to make the vehicle park stably and reduce the pitch jitter during parking, thus improving the braking comfort.

Turning on and off the CST system

Click [Vehicle control] - [Vehicle settings] - [Driving experience] - [CST] on the multimedia display screen in turn to turn on or off the system. After the vehicle is restarted, the CST system will remember the last setting state.

Wire control brake system

The wire control brake system can detect the driver's braking intention and thus provide the brake pressure.

Caution

The wire control brake system will generate noise under the following conditions:

- After the vehicle is started, a short "tick-tack" sound will be produced. This is the self-inspection sound of the wire control brake system and it is normal.
- When the vehicle accelerates to about 15km/h, it will also produce a short "buzz" sound, which is the sound of ABS self-inspection and is a normal phenomenon.

There will also be sound when the wire control brake system works normally, which is mainly reflected in the following aspects:

1. Action sound of motor, solenoid valve and pump in the wire control brake system.
2. Sound caused by rebound of brake pedal.
3. After the vehicle is started, the wire control brake system will conduct self-inspection. During self-inspection, it is normal to hear a "tick-tack" sound when depressing the brake pedal.

Parking assist system

Introduction

The parking assist system can assist the driver and sense the surrounding environment during low-speed driving or parking, and provide visual and audible warnings for the driver when there are obstacles around that hinder driving or parking. The main functions of the parking assist system include:

1. Parking radar system.
2. Reversing camera.
3. Panoramic view system*.
4. Automatic parking assist system*.
5. Trail reversing system*.
6. Remote parking system*.

Parking radar system

The parking radar system can detect obstacles around the vehicle when the vehicle is running at a low speed and give a warning when the vehicle is approaching obstacles to assist the driver in ensuring parking safety.

According to different configurations, the parking assist system radar sensors are divided into two categories:

Type I

Four radar sensors in the rear.

Type II

Four radar sensors in front and four in rear.

Type III

There are 6 radar sensors at the front and rear respectively.

When the parking assist system is started, it will automatically check whether its functions are normal. If the buzzer of the system sounds once for 3 s, it indicates that the system fails. Please contact an authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing.

Front radar*

Click [Vehicle control] - [Quick control] - [Front radar] on the multimedia display screen in sequence to turn on and off the front radar system.

ON

The front radar system can be turned on when the following operations are met simultaneously:

1. The start switch is at "ON" position and the front sensor switch is on.
2. The gear is not in P position.
3. The speed is less than 15 km/h after starting or the vehicle decelerates from a higher speed to 10 km/h during driving.
4. Release the EPB switch.

Closing

The front radar system can be turned off by the following operations:

1. Turn the start switch to a position other than "ON" position.
2. The front radar switch is off.
3. The gear is in P position.
4. The vehicle speed exceeds 15 km/h.
5. EPB switch is pulled up.

Caution

The front radar switch controls the radar sensor on the front bumper. When this switch is turned off, the front radar system does not work.

Reversing radar

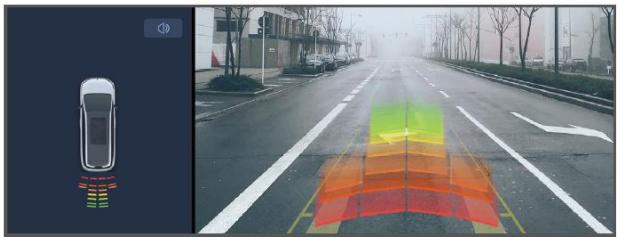
On and off

1. The start switch is at "ON" position.
2. When the gear is in R position, the reversing radar will be turned on automatically; when the gear is disengaged from R position, the system will be turned off automatically.

Alarm mode

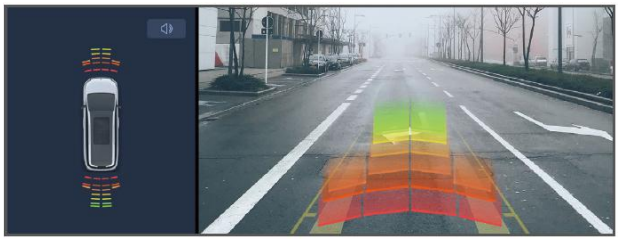
The parking assist system will give a display alarm and an audible alarm according to the distance between the radar sensor and the obstacle. The shorter the distance is, the shorter the interval of alarm sounds will be; the closer the obstacle is to the vehicle, different colors will be displayed for different types of configurations.

Type I



Four radar sensors in the rear.

Type II



Four radar sensors in front and four in rear.

Type III

There are 6 radar sensors at the front and rear respectively.

Multimedia display screen interface

Alarm sound

Touch the alarm sound button on the multimedia display screen interface, reversing camera interface or panoramic view interface to turn on or off the radar alarm sound.

Detection range of radar sensor

Sensor Position	Maximum Detection Distance (cm)
Both rear sides	60±10
Rear middle	150±10
Both front sides	60±10
Front middle	120±10

Display of fault

Front radar fault

Rear radar fault

A single radar sensor in front of the vehicle fails, and the other sensors in front do not work. If a single radar sensor behind the vehicle fails, other rear sensors do not work. Please contact an authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing in time.

Conditions in which the system may not work

Due to the characteristics of objects, location, angle, size, material or places with complex background, etc., the system may not work or give false alarms. The following conditions will cause detection failure or poor detection:

1. Objects such as wire mesh and steel rope.
2. The vehicle is running in bushes or on a bumpy road.
3. Cotton or sound-absorbing materials on the surface.
4. Foreign matters attached to the sensor surface.
5. Ultrasonic noise, metallic sound and high-pressure gas emission sound of the same frequency.
6. Adding or connecting other electronic equipment will also affect the function of this system during use.

Warning

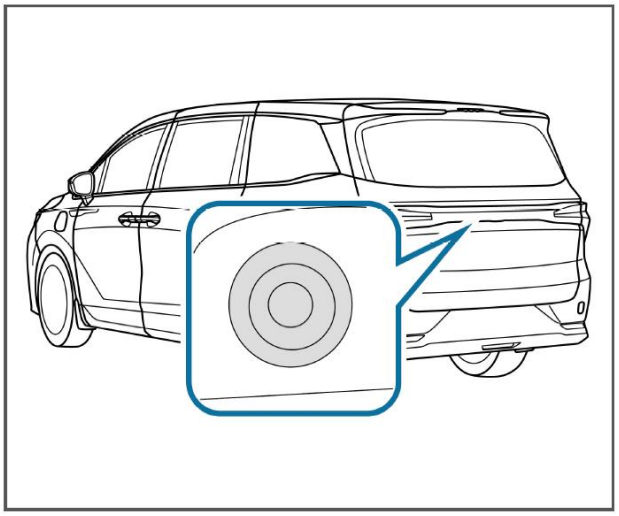
- The parking assist system is only used as an auxiliary warning for obstacles in front of and behind the vehicle during parking and reversing, and cannot replace the driver's observation of the surrounding environment. The driver needs to monitor the environment in real time during the whole driving process, and Dongfeng Forthing is not responsible for

Warning

accidents caused by the driver's negligence.

- As the parking assist system has a blind spot, please do not use it as the only credential for reversing safety. The driver is responsible for driving safety.

Reversing camera



The reversing image collects images through the camera installed behind the vehicle, which is convenient for the driver to check the obstacles behind in time when reversing.

Turning on/off the reversing image

1. The start switch is at "ON" position.

2. When the gear is in R position, the reversing camera will be turned on automatically; when the gear is disengaged from R position, the system will be turned off automatically.

Reversing auxiliary line

The reversing auxiliary line is divided into three sections: 0 ~ 0.3 m, 0.3 ~ 1 m and 1 ~ 1.5 m from the rear of the vehicle.

Width of auxiliary line: The longest distance between exterior rearview mirrors on both sides plus 7 cm.

The reversing auxiliary line can assist the driver in judging the reversing track, which can only be activated after the steering wheel is turned to a certain angle.

Caution

- The spoke lines are for reference only and cannot be used as the basis for judging the actual distance and driving track of the vehicle. Please pay attention to the surrounding environment when parking the vehicle and drive safely.

Caution

- Similar to human eyes, cameras have limited ability to see objects in dusk, night, dawn, snow, rain and fog. This product is mainly used for driver assistance, and the driver is always responsible for keeping a distance from any obstacle.
- The camera will enlarge and distort the image with a short delay, so the surround view function cannot replace the driver's operation and judgment. Please always pay attention to the safety around the vehicle during use.
- There will be a certain error between the amplitude line and the radar wave distance and the actual distance. Please pay attention to the safety around the vehicle when parking the vehicle.
- When the camera is dirty, it will affect the use of the system. Please clean it in time.
- When the weather is harsh and the light is insufficient, the system cannot be used normally.

Panoramic view system*

The panoramic image can be spliced with images from four cameras at the front, rear, left and right of the vehicle to form an aerial view on the multimedia display screen. It is used together with the reversing radar to make it safer and more convenient to park the vehicle.

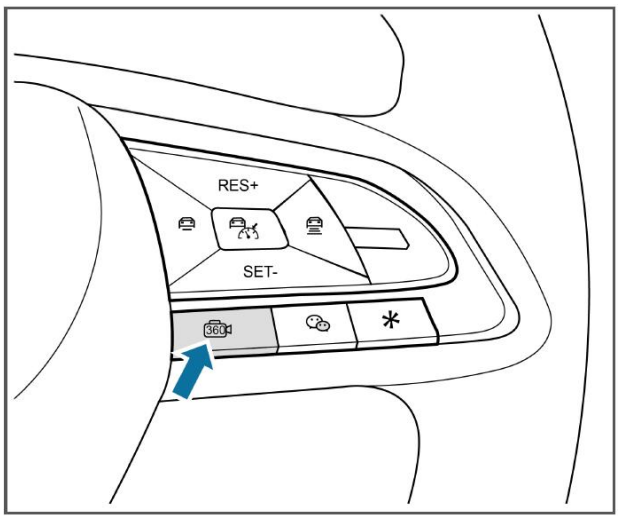
Turn panoramic image on/off

Preconditions for panoramic image turn on:

1. The start switch is at "ON" position.

2. The vehicle speed is lower than 30 km/h.

Panoramic image ON



1. Press the 360° panoramic button on the steering wheel to manually turn on the panoramic image, and press it again to turn off the panoramic image.

2. When the driver turns left and right, the panoramic image will be turned on automatically.

3. When the gearshift lever is in R position, the panoramic image will be turned on automatically.

The panoramic view will be turned off when any of the following conditions is met:

1. Press the return button.
2. The vehicle is not in R gear.
3. The turn signal returns to the center.
4. The vehicle speed is more than 30 km/h.
5. Press the 360° panoramic button again.
6. Voice exit.

Caution

After the vehicle overspeeds, it needs to be reduced to 25 km/h before it can be started again.

Description of panoramic image function

2D view

Touch any position of the splicing view to display front, rear, left and right icons. Click it to switch the corresponding angle of view (the icon will be automatically folded if there is no operation for 5 s).

3D view

Touch any position of the splicing view to display icons of front, rear, left, right, left front, left rear, right front and right rear. Click it to switch the corresponding view (the icon will be automatically folded if there is no operation for 5 s).

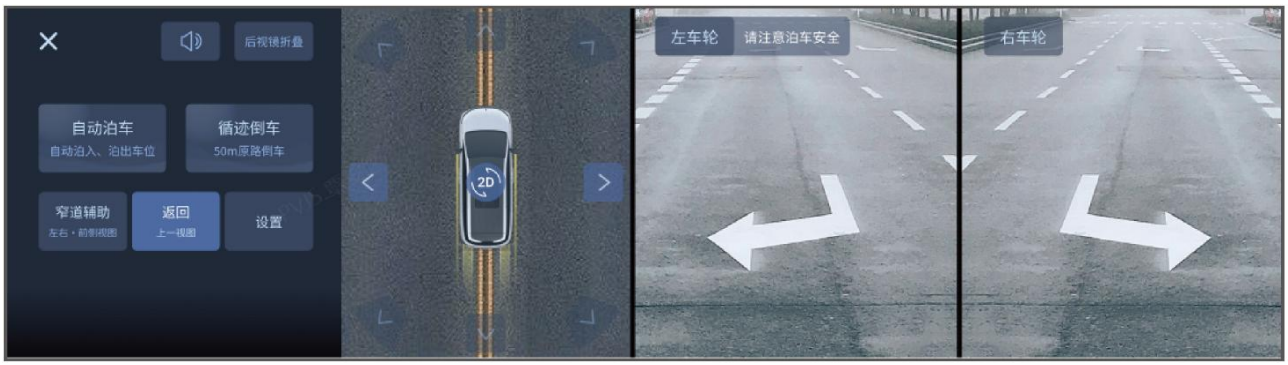
Steering view

When the steering ON/OFF switch is turned on (not at R position), turn on the left/right turn signal to enter the corresponding left/right turning angle. After pulling the steering lever straight, exit the panoramic view interface with a delay of 1s.

Auxiliary view of narrow lane

Click the narrow lane assistance button to display the auxiliary view of narrow lane, showing the actual images of left front and right front of the vehicle.

Auxiliary view of parking



Click the parking assistance button to display the auxiliary view of parking, showing the actual images of the left and right wheels of the vehicle.

Settings

Click [Settings] to enable and disable functions such as transparent vehicle body, radar close-up and turn signal entry in the settings. Transparent body initialization is turned off by default, radar close-up and turn signal entering initialization are turned on by default, both of which have memory function.

Reversing auxiliary line

Both the 2D front and rear single view images and the 2D splicing view image have reversing auxiliary lines. The auxiliary lines switch forward and backward with gear D and gear R, and the actual length of the auxiliary line is 5m.

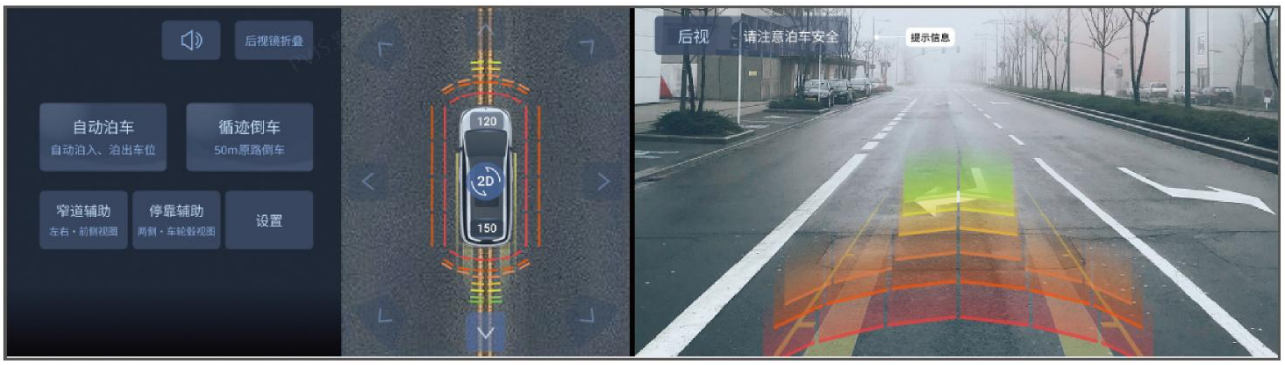
The width of the outer layer is the maximum distance of the exterior rearview mirrors on both sides plus 7 cm, and the width of the inner layer is the width of the wheel.

The scale style track line has a scale line, which is divided into three sections: 0 ~ 0.3 m, 0.3 ~ 1 m and 1 ~ 1.5 m.

Warning

The auxiliary line is only for reference and cannot be used as the basis for judging the actual distance and driving track of the vehicle. Please pay attention to the surrounding environment of the vehicle and drive safely when parking the vehicle.

Radar obstacle board display



In the panoramic interface, when the working conditions of the radar system are met, the obstacle board will be displayed and an alarm sound will be given.

Front cross traffic warning *

In the panoramic view, automatic parking or trail reversing interface, the alarm is displayed when the corner radar alarm conditions are met.

Rear crossing warning *

In the panoramic view, automatic parking or trail reversing interface, the alarm is displayed when the corner radar alarm conditions are met.

Caution

- The spoke line is only for reference and cannot be used as the basis for judging the actual distance and driving track of the vehicle. Please pay attention to the surrounding environment and drive safely when parking the vehicle.
- The camera is similar to the human eye as it has limited visibility in environments such as dusk, night, dawn, snow, rain, and fog. The panoramic view is mainly used for driving assistance, and the driver always has the responsibility to keep a distance from any obstacle.
- The camera will zoom in and distort the image with a short delay. All parking assist system functions (radar, images) of the vehicle cannot replace the driver's operation and judgment. Please always pay attention to the safety around the vehicle during use.
- The panoramic image only splices the ground images. There will be dead zones in the air for objects with a certain height. When parking the vehicle, be sure to pay attention to children, concrete columns and other objects around the vehicle.
- There will be a certain error between the auxiliary line and the radar wave distance and the actual distance. Please pay attention to the safety around the vehicle when parking the vehicle.
- The dirty camera will affect the use of the system. Please clean it up in time.
- When the weather is harsh and the light is insufficient, the system cannot be used normally.

Automatic parking assist system *

The automatic parking assist system automatically searches for effective parking spaces on the left and right sides of the vehicle through 12 ultrasonic radars and 4 HD panoramic cameras around the vehicle, and prompts the driver to stop when a suitable parking space is found. After parking, the system automatically calculates the parking plan and controls the steering wheel, braking, gear shifting, etc. of the vehicle to complete horizontal parking, vertical parking, diagonal parking, horizontal parking-out, vertical parking-out and diagonal parking-out. During parking, the driver shall always observe the surroundings.

Turning on and off the automatic parking assist system

Panoramic view interface switch

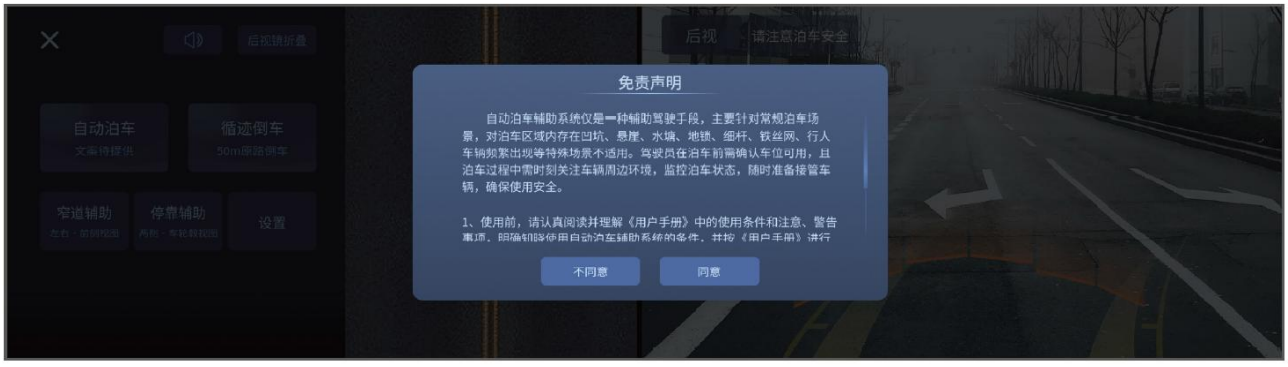
Multimedia display switch

The automatic parking function can be activated by pressing the automatic parking button on the panoramic view interface or at the lower part of the multimedia display screen, or by voice activation on the multimedia display screen interface.

Full automatic parking will be disabled when any of the following conditions is met:

1. Press the return button.
2. The vehicle speed is more than 30 km/h.
3. The system interrupts.

Function entry



The user clicks the automatic parking function button, and a [Disclaimer] pops up on the multimedia display screen, stating precautions. Click [Agree] to enter the function selection interface, and click [Disagree] to deactivate parking.

Automatic parking-in

1. Search for parking space

After confirmation, select [Automatic parking-in] to enter the parking space searching interface and drive slowly. After a parking space is successfully searched, the multimedia display screen will show the parking space

icon and prompt the driver to park.

2. Parking activation

After the vehicle stops, keep braking, confirm that the found parking space and surrounding environment are suitable and safe, click the [Start parking] button on the multimedia display screen, release the steering wheel and brake according to the prompt, and the vehicle starts automatic parking.

3. Parking process

In the process of parking, the driver should always observe the surroundings of the vehicle to ensure the safety of automatic parking.

4. Parking completed

After automatic parking is completed, the multimedia display screen will prompt [Parking completed].

Background parking space searching

If the background parking space searching has been completed before parking-in is enabled, directly select a parking space after parking-in is enabled.

Automatic parking-out

1. Parking-out on

Parking-out can be activated when all the following conditions are met:

a. The vehicle is stationary.

b.The gear is in P position and the EPB switch is pulled up.

c. The sum of the front and rear spaces of the vehicle is greater than 0.9 ± 0.1 m, there are obstacles within 3 ± 0.1 m in front of the vehicle head, and there are no obstacles within 3 ± 0.1 m in the parking-out direction.

2. Select direction

After confirming that the surrounding environment is suitable and safe, select [Automatic parking-out] to enter the automatic parking-out interface, and activate the left or right turn signal according to the prompt to select the parking-out direction.

Note

The automatic parking assist system will prompt the current parking-out direction.

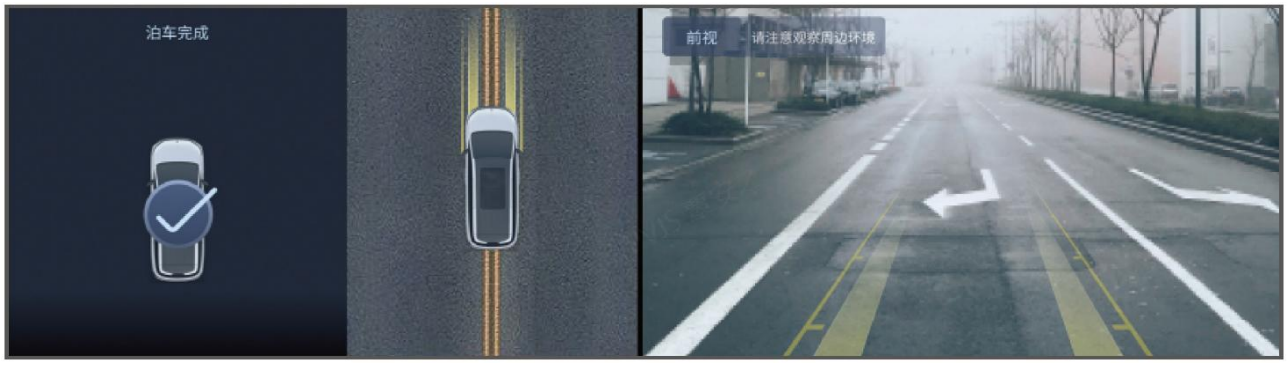
3. Parking activation

Press the EPB switch, keep depressing the brake pedal, click the [Start parking] button on the multimedia display screen, and release the brake pedal as prompted.

4. Parking process

In the process of parking, the driver should always observe the surroundings of the vehicle to ensure the safety of automatic parking.

5. Parking completed



After automatic parking-out is completed, the multimedia display screen will prompt [Parking completed].

Self-selected parking space

1. Parking space setting

Select "self-selected parking space" on the multimedia display screen or voice "self-selected parking space", and then enter the parking space setting interface. Drag the parking space box on the multimedia display screen to find a parking space available for parking; press and hold the parking space box to drag the adjustment angle at any angle, prompting "Parking Space is being Adjusted". After releasing, it will automatically adjust to vertical, diagonal or horizontal angle.

2. Activate parking

When the parking space box is green, it indicates that the parking space status can be confirmed. After confirming that the parking space and surrounding environment are suitable and safe, click the [Start parking] button on the multimedia display screen, and release the steering wheel and brake according to the prompt.

3. Parking process

In the process of parking, the driver should always observe the surroundings of the vehicle to ensure the safety of automatic parking.

4. Parking completed

After automatic parking is completed, the multimedia display screen will prompt [Parking completed].

Caution

Parking lot locating

- The system can identify vertical parking space, horizontal parking space and 45° diagonal parking space. If there is no marking line for the parking space, there should be other vehicles or larger objects on the left or right side of the vertical parking space (front or rear side of the horizontal parking space). If there are clear parking space lines, both sides of the parking space can be detected without reference objects.
- The size of parking space without lines can be identified: Vertical parking space: Vehicle width ± 1 m; horizontal parking space: Vehicle length ± 1.2 m.
- The size of lined parking spaces can be identified: the width of vertical parking spaces shall be greater than 2 meters, and the length of horizontal parking spaces shall be greater than 5.3 meters.
- When searching the parking space, please keep the vehicle parallel to the driving direction as far as possible.
- In the process of searching for a parking space, please keep the lateral distance between your vehicle and the parking space within 0.5 ~ 1.6 meters.
- For the first parking space searched by the system, there will be a "ding" prompt tone on the combination instrument. There will be no prompt tone for the next parking space found within 6 meters, and there will be a prompt tone for the first parking space searched beyond 6 meters, and so on.
- When searching for parking spaces with obstacles on one or both sides, if the speed exceeds 10 km/h, it may be impossible to identify the parking space. It is recommended that the vehicle should be used at a speed less than 10 km/h when searching for parking spaces in this scenario.

Automatic parking

- During parking, if the brake pedal is depressed, automatic parking will be suspended. Release the brake pedal to continue parking.
- During parking, if an obstacle is detected or the non-driver side door is opened or the automatic parking button is pressed again, the automatic parking will be suspended for 30 s. After the interruption operation is

Caution

resumed within 30 s, press the automatic parking button again to continue parking (within 30 s).

- Before parking out of the parking space, make sure that the vehicle is stationary, the gear is in P position and the EPB switch is pulled up.

System deactivated

The parking function being executed will be deactivated under the following conditions, and you need to take over your vehicle in time:

- Click the "×" button on the parking interface.
- Turn the steering wheel manually.
- Depress the brake pedal to shift gears.
- Pull up EPB switch.
- Open the driver's door or release the driver's seat belt.
- Open the trunk lid.
- Parking pause has not been restored for more than 30 s.
- The number of system interruptions is more than 8.
- The parking takes more than 4 min.
- The parking interface prompts "Abnormal parking assist system".

Warning

- The automatic parking assist system detects the surrounding environment of the vehicle and identifies the parking space through ultrasonic sensors and around-view cameras. Due to physical limitations of sensors, it cannot guarantee that all objects in the parking space and parking path can be detected. You are always responsible for actively intervening when necessary to ensure parking safety.
- During the parking process, generally do not operate the steering wheel. In case of emergency, please take over the steering wheel or depress the brake pedal in time. Failure to observe this may result in personal injury.
- During parking, do not operate the accelerator pedal or gearshift lever. False touching or active operation may cause abnormal exit of parking.
- During parking, if vehicles, pedestrians or objects suddenly appear on the parking track, the vehicle will trigger emergency braking to exit parking to prevent collision.
- Although the system has an automatic parking function for avoiding obstacles, due to sensor limitations, the driver needs to be ready to brake at any time to avoid vehicles, pedestrians and objects.
- In case of automatic parking in a narrow space, the number of consecutive parking shall not be more than 10 times. Multiple consecutive parking will lead to a rapid rise in actuator temperature and a decrease in parking control accuracy, resulting in an increased risk of collision between the vehicle and surrounding objects or abnormal system exit from parking.
- For scenarios that meet the parking conditions but are not suitable for parking, such as intersections with curbs, lawns with steps, concrete ground with cracks, lane lines and obstacles at the bottom of the parking space, the system may misidentify them as parking spaces. Before parking, the driver should confirm in advance whether the parking space identified by the system and the surrounding environment are suitable for parking.
- Automatic parking in narrow areas can affect the accuracy of sensor detection of obstacle positions, leading to an increase in the probability of scratch and collision between the vehicle and surrounding objects.
- The system is affected by the surrounding environment. After parking, the vehicle may tilt or move forward in vertical parking space or outward in horizontal parking space. You may need to further adjust the position of the vehicle to ensure correct parking.
- In the process of parking into the parking space, the vehicle may occupy the opposite lane. Please do not bring danger to other vehicles. Therefore, the driver should pay attention to the surrounding environment and manually intervene to take over the vehicle when necessary.
- After parking is completed, the steering wheel of the vehicle may rebound, that is, the steering wheel does not return to normal. When the vehicle is stationary, turn the steering wheel at a large angle and then release it. As the steering wheel has no force to maintain its original angle and the elastic deformation of tires and system is released, the steering wheel will rebound, which is normal.
- The identification ability and range of the sensor are limited, and it cannot identify suspended obstacles and

Warning

obstacles with small size, width or shortness (such as wire meshes, thin columns or drawbars). Therefore, before parking the vehicle into the parking space, please check whether the parking space displayed by the system is sufficient. During parking, be sure to pay attention to the surrounding environment and be ready to intervene to take over the vehicle at any time to avoid collision.

- If the parking space is insufficient, the system may also release the parking space. In this case, parking interruption or automatic exit may occur during parking.
- Darkness or poor visibility affects the use of the system. It is not suitable to use automatic parking assist system.
- The automatic parking assist system is not suitable for uneven roads.
- Do not use the automatic parking assist system when there are obstacles made of cotton or materials that can easily absorb sound waves around the parking environment, which may be difficult for sensors to identify.
- Do not use the automatic parking assist system when one or more ultrasonic sensors are damaged, the around-view camera is dirty, damaged or in an abnormal position.
- Do not use the automatic parking assist system when there are electrical equipment or devices around the parking place that interfere with the sensor and affect the operation of the system.
- Please keep the outer surfaces of sensors and cameras clean. If it is found that the equipment surface is covered by snow, ice, frost, mud, dust and other objects, please remove them in time to avoid affecting the automatic parking assist system.
- If the vehicle is modified or not repaired at an authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing, the automatic parking assist system may be affected and scratches and collisions are likely to occur during automatic parking.

Trail reversing system*

When the vehicle runs in D gear and the speed is lower than 35 km/h, the system will record the last 50 m route in real time. When the trail reversing function is turned on, the system will control the steering wheel, brake and speed to automatically reverse according to the recorded route. During reversing, if unfixed obstacles such as pedestrians and vehicles are detected and there is a risk of collision, the system will automatically perform emergency braking to complete vehicle braking quickly.

Function on

After the vehicle is started, click the "Trail Reversing" button on the panoramic view interface to agree with the disclaimer. The pattern reversing function will be enabled.

After the trail reversing function is enabled, the trail reversing is completed according to the prompts on the multimedia display screen.

Function interrupted or deactivated

The reversing assist function will be interrupted or deactivated if any of the following conditions occurs during reversing:

a. Turn the steering wheel manually.

b. Depress the brake pedal to shift gears.

c. Pull up the EPB switch.

d. Open the driver's door or release the driver's seat belt. e. Open the back door.

f. Click the "×" button on the parking interface. g. Parking pause has not been restored for more than 30 s .

h. The parking interface prompts "Abnormal Parking Assist System".

When the following situations occur, the system will stop and the recorded route will be cleared:

a. The vehicle speed exceeds 35 km/h.

b. The steering wheel is turned too much (about 450°). c. The vehicle deviates from the recorded route by about 1 m after reversing.

Remote parking system *

Before using the system, please carefully read and observe the following contents to avoid accident risks caused by ignorance of working conditions or limitations of the system.

Service conditions

1. Before using the remote parking system, you need to download Dongfeng Forthing APP, turn on the internet of vehicles and connect Bluetooth. If Bluetooth is not connected, remote parking cannot be activated.

2. The configuration varies depending on the vehicle model. Please confirm whether your vehicle is equipped with remote parking function.

3. Before using the system, make sure that the mobile phone APP runs normally and keeps smooth communication between the mobile phone and the vehicle.

4. Before using the system, make sure that there is enough space around the vehicle body to ensure unfolding of exterior rearview mirrors.

5. Before using the system, make sure that the doors are locked,

The sunroof window, engine hood and trunk are closed.

6. When using the system, it is necessary to operate the mobile phone outside the vehicle and get off with the vehicle key.

7. When using the system, it is necessary to closely observe the surrounding environment so as to take over the vehicle in time.

Warning

- It is forbidden for unauthorized personnel to use the system.
- It is forbidden to use the system in non-standard parking lots, highways and other scenarios.
- It is forbidden to start the system in bad weather or on slippery, muddy, pitted and icy roads.
- It is forbidden to use the system on roads with obvious slopes or in scenarios with height differences (such as cliff edges, pond edges and road shoulders higher than adjacent roads)
- It is forbidden to use the system when there are passengers or pets in the vehicle.

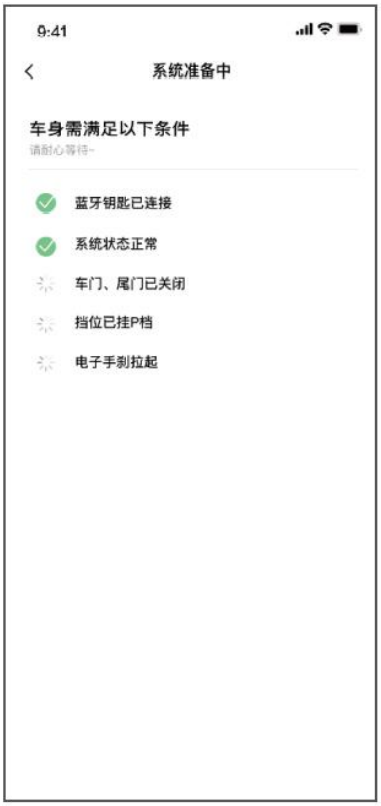
After the Bluetooth key is connected, users can realize remote parking in and out of the parking space

through mobile APP.

Parking-in procedure

1. After the automatic parking system is activated and a parking space is searched, take the mobile phone that has obtained the Bluetooth key of the vehicle to get off according to the prompts on the multimedia display screen. Operate the mobile phone APP to enter the vehicle homepage and click Remote Parking - Remote Parking-in.

2. The page of terms for use of remote parking pops up. Click the Agree button to continue or click Exit, and check "No Reminder Next Time".



3. After clicking "Agree Terms and Conditions for Use of Parking", the system will enter the self-inspection interface of remote parking system.

4. After passing the self-inspection, enter the remote parking operation interface. Press and hold [Start parking] for 3 s to start remote parking of the

vehicle.

5. After parking is activated, the current vehicle speed, gear position, parking space map and radar signal are displayed. Check whether the vehicle and parking space are consistent with the actual body or click the Pause button to pause parking.

6. After the remote parking-in is completed, the vehicle model and the parking space coincide. Return to the self-test passed interface after 5 s, and click the Exit Parking button to return to the vehicle homepage.

Horizontal parking-out procedure

1. Approach the vehicle with a mobile phone that has obtained this vehicle's Bluetooth key, open the mobile phone APP and keep connecting to the vehicle through Bluetooth. Click [Remote parking-out] on the vehicle homepage, and enter the parking-out mode selection interface after passing the system self-inspection.

2. After selecting "Horizontal parking-out", choose left or right parking-out according to actual needs and scenarios.

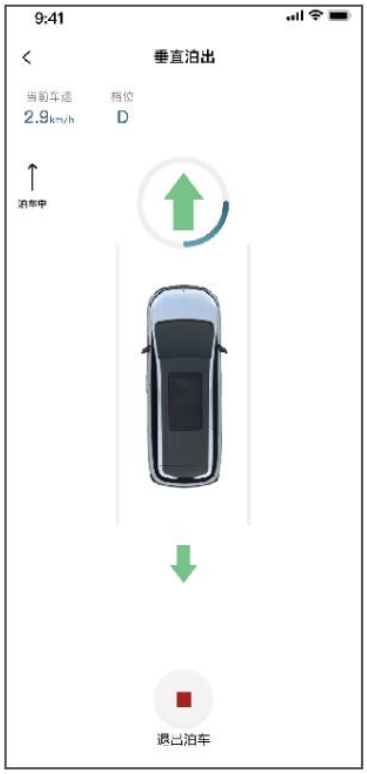
3. Long press [Start parking] for 3 s to activate parking.

4. After parking is activated, the current vehicle speed, gear position, parking space map and radar signal are displayed. Check whether the vehicle and parking space are consistent with the actual body or click the Pause button to pause parking.

5. After horizontal parking-out is completed, the vehicle model will be moved out of the parking space. 5 s later, it will return to the self-test passed interface, and click [Exit parking] button to return to the vehicle homepage.

Vertical parking-out procedure

1. Select vertical parking-out in the parking-out mode selection interface.



2. Choose forward or backward parking-out according to actual demand and scenario. In the process of parking-out, the current vehicle speed, gear position, parking space map and radar signal are displayed. You can check whether the vehicle/parking space is consistent with the actual body or release the button to suspend parking.

3. After vertical parking-out is completed, click the Exit Parking button to return to the vehicle homepage.

Pause and resumption of remote parking

1. During parking, click the [Pause parking] button at any time to pause remote parking.

2. After parking is paused, click the [Continue parking] button according to the prompt on the page to resume remote parking.

Caution

- The difference in mobile phone models may lead to poor communication between the mobile phone and the vehicle and delay in operation. Drivers shall observe the surrounding obstacles in advance and intervene actively when necessary.
- It is not recommended to work in dim environment, low contrast environment and
- In the process of remote parking, the system may not respond to moving objects (pedestrians, animals, vehicles, etc.) crossing or oncoming, objects on the side of the vehicle or low obstacles in time. When using the function, always pay attention to the surrounding environment of the vehicle and your own safety.
- The remote parking function cannot be separated from the driver's monitoring. During use, always pay attention to the surrounding environment of the vehicle and the prompt in the mobile phone APP, and take active intervention if necessary.
- The vehicle may not be able to identify intersections, double yellow lines on the road surface, solid lines, traffic signs and opposite lanes, etc., and may deviate from the predetermined driving path. It is recommended that the driver should observe the environment when using this function to avoid the risk caused by the vehicle violating traffic rules.
- Cameras and ultrasonic sensors cannot identify obstacles beyond the detection capability (such as start/stop poles, trees, grass, thin columns, wire meshes, iron chains, ropes, wall columns, fences, low obstacles, wave-absorbing objects, reflecting objects, etc. in parking lots), which may cause false alarms or omissions of obstacles. The driver shall always pay attention to the surrounding conditions to avoid accidents or damage to goods.
- When the camera and ultrasonic sensor are

Caution

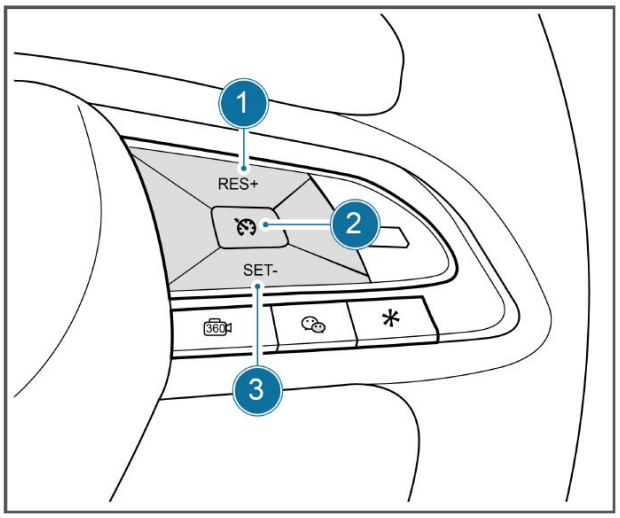
covered by snow, water, frost, mud, dust and other objects or interfered by noise and external sound sources, the system may not be able to effectively identify surrounding objects, personnel and other obstacles.

- The vertical parking-out function cannot actively brake the obstacles around the vehicle. It is recommended that the driver should confirm the surrounding environment of the vehicle in advance when using this function, pay attention to the surrounding environment at all times during the process, and actively intervene if necessary.

Cruise control system (CCS)

The cruise control system allows the driver to keep the vehicle running at a preset speed higher than 40 km/h without depressing the accelerator pedal. The system may be activated while driving on a highway.

Description of buttons



The cruise control button is located on the right side of the multi-function steering wheel.

1. Cruise Resume/Acceleration button: Resume the set cruising speed and drive at the set speed, or increase the original set speed.

2. Cruise Control button: Press this button to enable or disable the cruise control function.

3. Speed Setting/Deceleration button: It is used to set the cruise speed or decrease the originally set speed.

Cruise control on, suspended and off

ON

Press the cruise control button, and the system will enter the standby state. If conditions are met, the cruise on indicator lamp on the combination instrument will light up.

Pause

Any of the following operations will suspend the cruise control function:

1. Gently depress the brake pedal.

2. Switch the gear to a position other than D position.

Closing

When the cruise system is activated, press the cruise control button to turn off the cruise system and cancel the previously set cruise speed.

Restoring cruise function

When the cruise control function is suspended, if it needs to be restored, accelerate to above 40 km/h first, and then press the Cruise Resume/Acceleration button to re-enter the cruise state. The vehicle will resume the originally set cruising speed.

Change the set vehicle speed

Speed setting

When driving, press the Speed Setting/Deceleration button. If cruise conditions are met, the vehicle will cruise at the current speed.

Increasing the speed

Method 1: Short press the Cruise Resume/Acceleration button once to increase the speed by 1 km/h, and long press it to increase the speed by 5 km/h.

Method 2: Depress the accelerator pedal, release the accelerator pedal when the desired speed is reached, and press the Speed Setting/Deceleration button. The vehicle cruises at this speed.

Reducing the speed

Method 1: Short press the Speed Setting/Deceleration button once to decrease the speed by 1 km/h, and long press it to decrease by 5 km/h.

Method 2: Gently depress the brake pedal, release the brake pedal when the desired speed is reached, and press the Speed Setting/Deceleration button.

Warning

It is strictly prohibited to use the cruise control system on icy and snowy roads.

Caution

- When the vehicle speed is lower than 40 km/h or higher than 180 km/h, the cruise control function will not be activated.
- When the system is faulty, the cruise function will not be enabled.
- It is not recommended to start the system in urban areas, winding roads, slippery roads, heavy rain or other severe weather conditions.
- When the vehicle moves up or down a slope, the cruise control cannot maintain the pre-set speed. When the vehicle speed increases downhill, the brake can be used to reduce the speed, which will suspend the cruise control function. To restore the originally set speed, press the Cruise Resume/Acceleration

Caution

button.

- When the vehicle is running under cruise control, you can still use the accelerator pedal to accelerate for overtaking. After overtaking, remove the foot from the accelerator pedal. If the cruise conditions are still met, the vehicle will return to the preset cruising speed.

Driver assistance *

Introduction

The driver assistance system can assist the driver in observing and perceiving the surrounding environment during driving, and provide collision warning, active safety and cruise assistance for the driver to ensure driving safety.

The main functions of the driver assistance system include:

1. Forward collision assist.
2. Lane departure assist.
3. Cruise assist.
4. IHC.
5. Traffic sign recognition.
6. Lateral driving assistance.

Forward collision assistance (FCA)*

Forward collision assistance includes forward collision warning (FCW) system and automatic emergency braking (AEB) system. During driving, when there is a risk of collision in front of the vehicle, it provides alarm prompt and auxiliary braking for the driver.

Switch settings

Tap the [Vehicle control] - [Intelligent driving] - [Forward assistance] - [Forward collision assistance] switch on the multimedia display screen in turn to turn on or off the system, which is turned on by default.

Click [Alarm time] to set the alarm sensitivity, which supports advance, normal and delay options. The alarm time is normal by default.

When the system fails, the FCW fault warning indicator on the combination instrument will illuminate; when the function is disabled, the FCW off indicator on the combination instrument interface will illuminate.

Forward Collision Warning (FCW) system *

When the vehicle is running, if it is detected that there is a risk of collision between the front vehicle, cyclist or pedestrian and the vehicle, the FCW system will remind the driver to pay attention visually and auditorily.

Function on

When the forward collision assist switch is turned on, the function will be activated when the vehicle speed is greater than or equal to 8 km/h to monitor the condition in front of the vehicle in real time.

Function triggering

When the FCW is triggered, the front of the vehicle will be marked red on the driving interface of the combination instrument and the text prompts "Danger Ahead, Please Be Careful", accompanied by medium-high frequency alarm sound.

Warning

The following operations may cause the FCW not to issue an alarm, including but not limited to:

- When the driver is already braking.
- The driver depresses the accelerator pedal

Warning

deeply.

- The driver turns the steering wheel suddenly.

Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB) system

When the vehicle is running, if it is detected that the front vehicle, cyclist or pedestrian is about to collide with this vehicle, AEB system will automatically perform emergency braking to avoid collision or reduce injuries caused by collision.

Function on

When the forward collision assist switch is turned on, the function will be activated when the vehicle speed is in the range of 8 ~ 85 km/h to monitor the condition in front of the vehicle in real time and trigger automatic emergency braking when a collision is about to occur.

Function triggering

When the automatic emergency braking is triggered, the front of the vehicle will be marked red on the driving interface of the combination instrument, and the text prompts "Danger Ahead, Please Be Careful", accompanied by high-frequency alarm sound.

When automatic emergency braking is triggered, the speed will be reduced by 60 km/h at most. If automatic emergency braking is triggered when the vehicle speed is 80 km/h, it will end after the vehicle speed drops to 20 km/h.

Warning

- Automatic emergency braking cannot replace the function of maintaining a safe driving distance from vehicles, cyclists and pedestrians ahead. Please avoid being too close to vehicles, cyclists or pedestrians in front of you or driving violently.

Warning

- Automatic emergency braking is only used to mitigate the impact of a frontal collision. When the vehicle is in the reverse gear, AEB does not work.

The following conditions may cause the automatic emergency braking not to brake or stop braking, including but not limited to:

- The driver depresses the accelerator pedal deeply or sharply.
- The driver turns the steering wheel violently.
- The driver does not fasten the seat belt.
- Any door is not closed.
- Automatic emergency braking cannot be triggered again immediately after being triggered.
- No vehicle, cyclist or pedestrian is detected ahead.

Caution

- The braking distance will be longer on a wet and slippery road.
- If the anti-lock brake system, traction control system and electronic stability control system are triggered, the ability of automatic emergency braking to mitigate collision may be reduced or even it may not be triggered.

Functional limitation

The following conditions may lead to camera recognition failure, resulting in the failure of forward collision assistance as expected. This includes, but is not limited to:

1. The installation position of the camera is changed.
2. The camera is blocked or dirty.
3. The recognition ability is reduced at night.
4. The surrounding environment is dark, such as at dawn, dusk, night and in tunnels.
5. The brightness of the surrounding environment changes suddenly, such as at tunnel entrance or exit.
6. Large shadows cast by buildings, landscapes or large vehicles.
7. The camera is exposed to oblique sunlight or direct light.
8. Severe weather such as rain, snow, fog and haze.
9. Exhaust, water spray, snow or dust raised by the vehicle ahead.

10. Water, dust, micro-scratches, grease, dirt, wipers, freezing, snowfall, etc. on the windshield in front of the camera.

11. Wet road surface.

12. Camera out of focus or fault.

Only vehicles, cyclists and pedestrians in the same direction that meet the conditions will be responded to by forward collision assistance. The following targets will not be responded to, including but not limited to:

1.Oncoming vehicles.

2. Side-crossing vehicles.

3. Animals.

4. Traffic lights.

5. Walls.

6. Barricades (cones, etc.).

7. Other non-vehicle objects.

The following conditions may cause the forward collision assist to fail to operate as expected because the target is not right ahead, including but not limited to:

1. The target is in the sensor blind zone, such as targets in the corner blind zone of the vehicle and the blind zones on both sides and behind the vehicle.

2. The target may be selected by mistake or missed when approaching or turning through the road.

3. The target may be lost or the distance to the target may be misjudged when the aircraft is on a slope.

4. When only part of the vehicle body in the adjacent lane cuts into the front of the subject vehicle (especially large vehicles such as buses and trucks), it may not be identified in time.

5. When the subject vehicle suddenly cuts into the rear of the front vehicle, or other vehicles suddenly cut in or out of the front of the vehicle, it may not be identified in time.

Warning

- Forward collision assist is for reference only and cannot replace your attention and judgment. Forward collision assist is only a driving assistance function, which cannot cope with all traffic, weather and road conditions, nor can it detect vehicles, cyclists or pedestrians in all cases. It may fail, be improper or delay due to several factors.
- After the forward collision assist function switch is turned off, the vehicle will not give early warning of possible collision risk or perform braking. It is strongly suggested that you should not turn off this function. To ensure your driving safety, this function will be activated each time the vehicle is restarted. Please note that the forward collision assist function will be deactivated automatically after the ESP system is turned off.
- You must always pay attention to the traffic conditions and road environment. Do not rely on the judgment of forward collision assist. Otherwise, personal injury or vehicle damage may be caused. For safety reasons, do not deliberately drive to vehicles, cyclists or pedestrians actively to test the forward collision assistance function. If you find a danger, do not wait for the FCW to be triggered before taking action. You shall bear the ultimate responsibility for safe driving all the times and abide by prevailing traffic laws and regulations.

Caution

- Forward collision assist can only identify licensed and legal vehicles driving on the road, and cannot detect vehicles in all cases. For example, the rear of the vehicle is seriously blocked, the shape of the vehicle is strange (such as an overloaded vehicle transporting trees), and the rear of the vehicle is seriously damaged.
- Forward collision assist can identify unobstructed adults of normal height, but cannot detect pedestrians in all cases. For example, pedestrians who are partially blocked, whose body shape cannot be recognized by their clothes, who are too short or too high, carry large objects, and have poor contrast.
- FCA can identify cyclists with clear and complete body contours, main features and bicycle contours, but it cannot detect them in all cases, such as when the bicycle is running fast, or when the characteristics of cyclists or bicycles are covered by clothes or other objects, resulting in unobvious contours.
- FCA cannot identify vehicles coming from the opposite direction and crossing vehicles ahead, so it will not trigger alarm prompt or automatic emergency braking.
- The response capability of forward collision assist is limited, and the alarm prompt and automatic braking may not be triggered in time. For example, when a vehicle ahead forcibly enters the driving lane under extreme working conditions or a pedestrian suddenly enters the driving lane, it may not be able to give an alarm in time.
- Under complex traffic conditions, forward

Caution

collision assist may not identify vehicles in time, resulting in lag of alarm prompt.

- The recognition function of the FCA system requires sufficient contrast between pedestrians and the environmental background, and too bright or too dark light has a negative impact on the system. If the pedestrian is detected or cannot be detected at all due to pedestrian posture or environmental impact, the alarm prompt will also be delayed or cannot be activated.
- When the sensor is blocked by ice, snow or dust on a curved road or hillside road, the system may not detect the vehicle ahead. Please clean the front windshield in time.

Lane departure assist (LDA)*

Lane departure assist includes lane departure correction and lane departure warning. During driving, it provides steering assistance and alarm prompt for the driver when the vehicle unconsciously departs from the lane.

The lane departure assist works only when the driver holds the steering wheel with both hands during driving. If the lane departure assist detects that you do not hold the steering wheel with both hands for a period of time, it will automatically exit the activation state. After the steering wheel is held with both hands, the function will be activated again when the function activation conditions are met.

Switch settings

Click the multimedia display screen [Vehicle control] - [Intelligent driving] - [Cruise assist] - [Lane departure assist] switch in turn to turn on or off the system. It is enabled by default. On the premise that the function switch is turned on, you can select the alarm mode as [Warning] or [Warning + Correction]. The default setting is Warning.

Click [Alarm time] to set the alarm sensitivity, which supports advance, normal and delay options. The default is normal.

Function activation

When the lane line on the driving interface of the combination instrument is gray, the LDA function is not activated. When the lane line is white, it indicates that the function is activated.

Function triggering

Lane departure correction

The lane line on the driving interface of the combination instrument is displayed in yellow, and the vehicle deviates towards the yellow lane side. Departure correction will be triggered to provide reverse steering assistance.

Lane departure warning

When the vehicle is about to deviate from the lane, the vehicle will give an alarm prompt, and the departure side lane line on the driving interface of the combination instrument will turn red, accompanied by medium frequency alarm sound.

Functional limitation

The following conditions may cause the lane departure assist to fail to operate as expected or deactivate automatically, including but not limited to:

1. Pass through curves with excessive curvature, such as high-speed ramps.

2. The lane lines are unclear, worn, missing, crossed, or blocked by shadows cast by other vehicles, buildings or landscapes.

3. Pass through road sections without lane lines, such as non-standardized roads, intersections and construction areas.

4. Pass through road sections with special lane lines, such as deceleration prompt lines and diversion lines.

5. Pass through areas with unclear lane division, such as lane line convergence or separation areas, highway ramp crossings, urban intersection areas and left-turn waiting areas.

6. The road surface has edges or other high-contrast lines rather than lane lines, such as pavement joints and curbs.

7. The lane lines cannot be identified or are incorrectly identified due to height change, such as uphill and downhill.

8. The lane lines cannot be identified or are incorrectly identified due to light reasons, such as lane line reflection caused by strong lighting, poor visibility or insufficient light caused by bad weather and night.

9. The distance between lane lines on both sides is too wide or narrow.

The following conditions may result in the failure of lane departure assist to operate as expected or automatic exit due to camera identification obstacles, including but not limited to:

1. The installation position of the camera is changed.

2. The camera is blocked or dirty.

3. The recognition ability is reduced at night.

4. The surrounding environment is dark, such as at dawn, dusk, night and in tunnels.

5. The brightness of the surrounding environment changes suddenly, such as at tunnel entrance or exit.

6. Large shadows cast by buildings, landscapes or large vehicles.

7. The camera is directly exposed to light.

8. Severe weather such as rain, snow, fog and haze.

9. Exhaust, water spray, snow or dust raised by the vehicle ahead.

10. Water, dust, micro-scratches, grease, dirt, wipers, freezing, snowfall, etc. on the windshield in front of the camera.

11. Wet road surface.

Lane departure assist is not recommended under special or complex road conditions, which may cause the failure of lane departure assist to operate as expected or automatic exit, including but not limited to:

1. Waterlogged, muddy, potholed and icy roads; roads with speed bumps and obstacles.

2. Traffic conditions with many pedestrians, bicycles or animals.

3. Complex and changeable traffic conditions, such as busy intersections, expressway ramps, crowded roads, etc.

4. Winding roads and sharp turns.

5. Uphill and downhill roads.

6. Bumpy road.

7. Narrow roads.

8. Tunnel entrance and exit.

9. Non-standardized roads.

10. Roads without median strip.

Warning

- Lane departure assist can only provide certain steering assistance, but cannot control the vehicle speed.
- Lane departure assist cannot continuously control the vehicle direction, that is, it cannot keep the vehicle in the middle of the lane all the time.
- The lane departure assist steering force is limited, which can only provide slight corrective steering assistance and cannot guarantee to completely prevent the vehicle from deviating from the lane. Do not rely on lane departure assist (LDA) to control the direction. You should always be prepared to increase steering force, especially in curves. Please take over the steering wheel immediately if you need to turn, make a U-turn or pass through winding and sharp turns.
- Lane departure assist is only a driving assistance function and cannot cope with all traffic, weather and road conditions. Lane departure assist is for reference only and cannot replace your visual inspection.
- The lane departure assist system may fail to detect the road edge. Please drive carefully and always keep in the lane.
- You must always pay attention to the traffic conditions and road environment, and decide whether to use the lane departure assist system on the premise of ensuring safety. When using the lane departure control function, you should be ready to take over the vehicle at any time if it is found that the traffic conditions, road environment or vehicle conditions are not suitable for this function, or there are other unsafe factors. The driver always bears the ultimate responsibility for keeping the vehicle running safely in the lane and complying with current traffic laws and regulations.

Caution

- When the corresponding switch on the multimedia display screen is turned on, it does not mean that the function is enabled. Only when the working conditions are met will the lane departure assist function be activated automatically.
- When the lane deviates from the assist control direction, the steering wheel will rotate. You can also turn the steering wheel to actively take over the vehicle.
- When the turn signal is turned on and the vehicle departs to corresponding side, lane departure assist will not give warning or control.
- The display on the combination instrument is for reference only and cannot fully reflect the real traffic conditions. Do not rely excessively on the display content of the combination instrument.

Caution

Cruise assist *

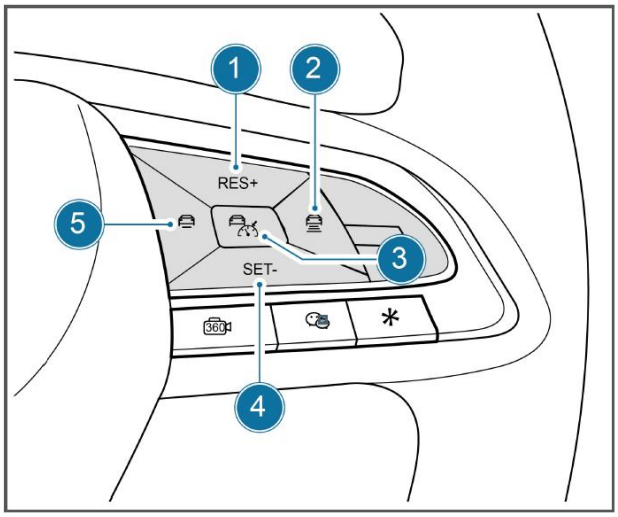
Cruise assist includes adaptive cruise control (ACC), advanced cruise control system (SCC) and navigate on autopilot (NOA). During driving, the vehicle keeps running in its own lane at the cruising speed or cruise distance set by the driver.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

ACC includes cruise control, fixed distance vehicle-following and vehicle-following start/stop. The vehicle can run at the cruising speed set by the driver, or follow a vehicle ahead to run, stop or start according to the cruising distance set by the driver.

ACC is mainly suitable for long-distance driving on dry and smooth standardized straight roads, such as highways, expressways and long straight trunk roads.

Description of buttons



1. ACC Resume/Speed + button

a. Resume: After the ACC deactivates, press this button to reactivate it, so as to exit from the front speed and headway driving.

b. Speed +: With the cruise control function activated, press this button to increase the cruising speed by 1 km/h or 5 km/h respectively.

2. Distance + button: With the cruise function activated, press this button to increase the following distance. The maximum level is Level 4.

3. Function button: It is the ACC ON/OFF button. Press it once to activate the function when the conditions for activating the function are met, and press it once to deactivate when the function is activated.

4. Speed - button: With the cruise control function activated, press this button to decrease the cruising speed. Press this button shortly to decrease the speed by 1 km/h and press and hold this button to decrease the speed by 5 km/h.

5. Distance - button: With the cruise control function activated, press this button to reduce the following distance. The minimum level is Level 1.

Function on

Working conditions of ACC

1. The vehicle speed shall not exceed 140 km/h.

2. The ADAS camera functions normally and has a clear view.

3. All components of ACC normally.

4.The ESP system is not turned off.

5. The hill descent control or hill hold control function is not activated.

6. The vehicle meets all safety conditions. For example, the driver fastens the seat belt, all doors are closed, the gear is in D position, and the driver does not depress the brake pedal; the anti-lock braking system, traction control system and electronic stability control system are not triggered; the traction control system and electronic stability control system are not manually disabled.

When the ACC working conditions are met, press the Function button to activate the ACC function:

a. When there is no vehicle ahead, ACC can be activated within the speed range of 15 ~ 130 km/h;

b. When there is a vehicle ahead, ACC can be activated within the speed range of 0 ~ 130 km/h.

c. When the vehicle speed is lower than 30 km/h, set 30 km/h as the cruise speed; when the vehicle speed is higher than 30 km/h, the current vehicle speed can be set as the cruise speed.

After the function is enabled, the driver can release the accelerator pedal and ACC will keep the set cruising speed: If there is a vehicle ahead, ACC will automatically adjust the speed according to the speed of the front vehicle and the cruising distance, and the maximum speed shall not exceed the cruising speed. If there is no vehicle ahead, ACC will adjust the vehicle speed until it reaches the cruising speed.

After ACC is turned on, you can depress the accelerator pedal at any time to take over control of the vehicle in a short period of time. At this moment, ACC will no longer respond to the target front vehicle and the vehicle will be completely controlled by the driver. When the accelerator pedal is released, the vehicle will return to cruising speed.

When ACC actively accelerates, the accelerator pedal will not move. When ACC decelerates, the brake pedal will move. When ACC is deactivated by pressing the function button or depressing the brake pedal, it can be reactivated by pressing the ACC resume / speed + button, which will resume the previously set cruise speed.

After ACC follows and stops the front vehicle for about 3 s, it can be activated again by pressing the ACC resume/speed + button or depressing the accelerator pedal to resume the previously set cruise speed.

Function exit

ACC will deactivate the activated state in the following cases:

1. Press the function button.

2. Depress the brake pedal.

3. Depress and hold the accelerator pedal to actively take over the vehicle for about 1 minute.

4. The vehicle follows and stops for more than 3 minutes.

In addition, when ACC does not meet the working conditions, ACC will deactivate automatically, and the driver shall take over the vehicle immediately after the function deactivates.

After ACC is deactivated, the vehicle may decelerate due to energy recovery braking and no longer keep the set distance from the front vehicle.

Warning

ACC may deactivate automatically under unexpected circumstances. Please always pay attention to the traffic conditions and road environment, and be ready to take over the vehicle at any time.

Instrument cluster interface

1. ACC status icon
2. Set cruise speed
3. Target front vehicle followed
4. Following distance

When the ACC state icon does not appear, it indicates that cruise has not been activated temporarily or cannot be activated if conditions are not met; when the icon is gray, it indicates that ACC is ready to be activated and can be activated by function buttons; when the icon is blue, it indicates that ACC is activated.

Warning

If you find a danger, do not wait for an alarm on the combination instrument interface before taking action. Please take over the vehicle immediately.

Caution

The display on the combination instrument is only for reference and cannot fully reflect the real traffic conditions. Please do not rely on the display content of the combination instrument.

Cruise control

When ACC is activated:

1. Short press ACC resume/speed + button or speed-button to increase or decrease the cruise speed by 1 km/h.

2. Press and hold the ACC resume/speed + button or speed-button to increase or decrease the cruise speed by 5 km/h.

3. The maximum set speed of ACC is 130 km/h.

4. The minimum set speed of ACC is 30 km/h, but it can follow and stop to 0 km/h.

Warning

The above maximum set speed is the maximum speed theoretically supported by ACC. Please comply with the road traffic safety regulations when staring and setting ACC, including but not limited to the regulations on vehicle running speed.

Fixed-range cruise control

When the ACC is activated or in standby mode, the following distance can be adjusted in 4 gears, and the vehicle has 4 gears (the farthest gear) by default.

1. Press the distance + button to set a longer following distance.

2. Press the distance - button to set a closer following distance.

Warning

It is your responsibility to determine and maintain a safe following distance at any time. Do not rely solely on adaptive cruise control to keep this distance.

Caution

- When the following distance is set close, the ACC driving behavior will be more intense and may cause discomfort.
- The following distance is set according to the safety and comfort of the vehicle, and there will be a certain distance from the front vehicle in specific scenarios.

Following start/stop

When ACC follows and stops the front vehicle:

1. If the front vehicle starts, the ACC will automatically follow to start the front vehicle. You need to confirm that the surrounding environment is safe at all times to avoid collision accidents.

2. After ACC follows and stops the front vehicle for about 3 s, you need to confirm that the surrounding environment is safe, and press the ACC resume/speed + button or depress the accelerator pedal to reactivate the ACC function. Then, the vehicle follows and starts the vehicle.

3. After about 3 minutes, the ACC function will deactivate.

Warning

- ACC cannot detect other traffic participants in all situations and may be invalid, malfunction or be

Warning

delayed due to several factors.

- You must always pay attention to the traffic conditions and road environment. Please do not rely on ACC for automatic follow to start; otherwise, personal injury or vehicle damage may be caused.

Note

After ACC follows and stops the front vehicle, ACC will follow and start only when the starting distance of the front vehicle exceeds about 4 m.

Functional limitation

The following conditions may lead to camera recognition failure, affect ACC performance and even cause function deactivate. This includes, but is not limited to:

1. The installation position of the camera is changed.
2. The camera is blocked or dirty.
3. The recognition ability is reduced at night.
4. The surrounding environment is dark, such as dawn, dusk, night and tunnel.
5. The brightness of the surrounding environment changes suddenly, such as at tunnel entrance or exit.
6. Large shadows cast by buildings, landscapes or large vehicles.
7. The camera is directly exposed to light.
8. Severe weather such as rain, snow, fog and haze.
9. Exhaust, water spray, snow or dust raised by the vehicle ahead.
10. Water, dust, micro-scratches, grease, dirt, wipers, freezing, snowfall, etc. on the windshield in front of the camera.
11. Wet road surface.

The following situations could lead to ACC recognizing and responding too late due to the target not being directly ahead, including but not limited to:

1. ACC will not respond to targets in the blind spots of sensors, such as failure to detect corner and side blind spots of vehicles.
2. When approaching or turning through the road, the target may be selected by mistake or missed, resulting in unexpected acceleration and deceleration of the vehicle.
3. When the vehicle is running on uphill, it may lose the target or misjudge the distance from the front vehicle; when the vehicle runs downhill, the driving speed will increase, resulting in exceeding the cruising speed.
4. When only part of the vehicle body in the adjacent lane drives into the front of the vehicle (especially large vehicles such as buses and trucks), it may not be able to identify and respond, and you need to take over in time.
5. When the vehicle suddenly drives behind the front vehicle, or when another vehicle suddenly drives into or out of the front of the vehicle, it may not be able to identify the target in time and you need to take over in time.

Under the following conditions, if the relative speed with a front vehicle is too high, ACC may have limited control ability, resulting in failure to keep distance in time. This includes, but is not limited to:

1. Sudden manipulation of the front vehicle (such as sudden turn, acceleration and deceleration).
2. Other vehicles suddenly drives into or out of the front of the vehicle.
3. The vehicle suddenly drives behind the front vehicle.
4. The vehicle rushes to the stationary or slow moving target ahead at a high speed.

Sufficient braking force may not be obtained in the following cases. This includes, but is not limited to:

1. Brake function fails to work fully (e.g. brake parts are too cold, overheated and damp).
2. Improper vehicle maintenance (such as excessive wear of brake or tire, abnormal tire pressure, etc.).
3. The vehicle is running on special road surfaces (such as uphill and downhill, waterlogging, muddy, potholed and icy or snowy roads,etc.).

Warning

- As a driving assistance function, ACC cannot cope with all traffic, weather and road conditions. Please do not completely rely on the system.
- ACC can only control the vehicle speed, but not the driving direction.
- You must always pay attention to the traffic conditions and road environment, and independently decide whether to use ACC on the premise of ensuring safety. When using ACC, you should be ready to take over the vehicle at any time if it is found that traffic

Warning

conditions, road environment or vehicle conditions are not suitable for using this function, or there are other unsafe factors. Always bear the ultimate responsibility for keeping a proper distance and speed and complying with current traffic laws and regulations.

- Do not leave the steering wheel with both hands when driving, and always pay attention to the road.
- ACC is a comfort function, not an anti-collision function, so its maximum deceleration is limited and less than the maximum deceleration that can be requested during automatic emergency braking and driving. Therefore, please do not rely on ACC to fully decelerate the vehicle to avoid collision.
- When the relative speed between the vehicle and the front vehicle is greater than 50 km/h, if the front vehicle is stationary or slows down, ACC may fail to brake. In order to ensure safety, please deactivate ACC immediately when the above situation occurs.Please do not try ACC to brake a stationary vehicle or follow and stop the front vehicle under the above situation.
- Please do not use the ACC system on hillside roads, smooth roads (prone to hydroplaning), poor road conditions (such as slippery roads, waterlogged roads, macadam roads and construction roads) and in severe weather with low visibility (such as fog, rain or snow), or when sensors are blocked by snow, ice, fog, dirt or dust. Otherwise, an accident may occur!

Caution

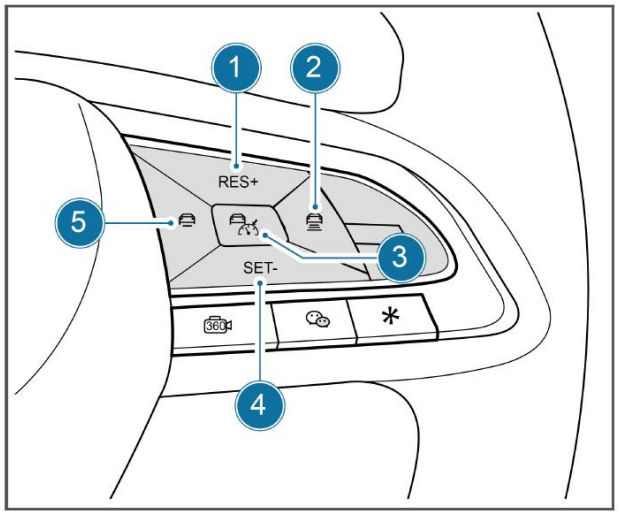
- The ACC system will occasionally accelerate when there is no need to accelerate or the driver does not intend to accelerate, which may be caused by the change or loss of following target (especially in turning or lane changing).
- The ACC system occasionally applies the brakes when it is not necessary or the driver does not intend to brake. This may be caused by the detection of vehicles, objects or stationary targets changing or missing in adjacent lanes (especially during turning or lane change).
- For safety, when driving in urban areas, in heavy traffic, or on curvy roads, please use the ACC system with caution, closely monitor the surrounding environment, and be ready to take over the vehicle at any time.
- ACC is not recommended under special or complex road conditions, which may affect the ACC performance and even cause function deactivate, including but not limited to roads with complicated traffic, winding roads, uphill and downhill slopes, bumpy roads, narrow roads, tunnel entrances and exits or roads with waterlogging, ice and snow, speed bumps and obstacles,etc.
- When the target front vehicle displayed on the combination instrument does not match the actual situation, please take over control of the vehicle in time.
- The ACC system can only adjust the distance from the vehicle running ahead. Generally, it cannot detect and brake vehicles in other lanes, other sides of the vehicle (other than the rear), children, pedestrians, animals, traffic lamps, walls, roadblocks (traffic cones, etc.) or other objects.
- If there is an oncoming vehicle in the same lane, ACC will not respond.
- ACC system can assist the driver but cannot replace the driver in driving. Even if the ACC system is activated, the driver must drive carefully and be ready to take over the vehicle at any time and comply with traffic rules.
- Please note that the ACC function will be deactivated automatically when the ESP system is turned off.

Advanced Cruise Control System (SCC)

On the basis of realizing longitudinal control of constant speed cruise, fixed distance cruise and following start/stop, SCC adds lateral control function to keep the vehicle running within the lane line.

SCC is mainly applicable to closed roads with clear lane lines and access restrictions, such as such as highways, elevated main roads, and congested sections.

Switch settings



1. SCC resume/speed + button

a. Resume: After the SCC deactivates, press this button to reactivate to deactivate from the front speed

and distance driving.

b. Speed +: With the cruise control function activated, press this button to increase the cruising speed by 1 km/h or 5 km/h respectively.

2. Distance + button

When the cruise function is activated, press this button to increase the following distance. The maximum level is Level 4.

3. Function button

SCC function activate / deactivate button. Press twice consecutively to activate when activation conditions are met; press briefly once to deactivate when the function is enabled.

4. Vehicle speed-button

With the cruise control function is activated, press this button to decrease the cruising speed. Press this button shortly to decrease the speed by 1 km/h and press and hold this button to decrease the speed by 5 km/h.

5. Distance-button

When the cruise function is activated, press this button to reduce the following distance. The minimum level is Level 1.

Function on

SCC working conditions

1. The vehicle speed shall not exceed 140 km/h.

2. The ADAS camera functions normally and has a clear view.

3. All components of the SCC are functioning without faults.

4.The ESP system is not turned off.

5. The hill descent control or hill hold control function is not activated.

6. The vehicle meets all safety conditions. For example, the driver fastens the seat belt, all doors are closed, the gear is in D position, and the driver does not depress the brake pedal; the anti-lock braking system, traction control system and electronic stability control system are not triggered; the traction control system and electronic stability control system are not manually disabled.

When the SCC working conditions are met, press the function button twice to activate SCC:

a. If the lane lines on both sides are clear and the vehicle is in the middle of the lane, it will enter lateral and longitudinal control at the same time.

b. If the lane lines on both sides are not clear or the vehicle is not in the center of the lane, it will preferentially enter longitudinal control and start searching for lane lines, and enter lateral control at the same time after conditions are met.

SCC can be activated at a vehicle speed of 15 ~ 130 km/h when there is no front vehicle, and at a vehicle speed of 0 ~ 130 km/h when there is a front vehicle.

a. When the vehicle speed is lower than 30 km/h, set 30 km/h as the cruise speed.

b. When the vehicle speed is higher than 30 km/h, it means that the current speed will be set as the cruise speed.

When SCC enters longitudinal control and starts searching for lane lines, you can release the accelerator pedal to maintain the set cruise speed by SCC.

If there is a front vehicle, SCC will automatically adjust the speed according to the speed and distance of the front vehicle. The maximum speed shall not exceed the cruising speed. When there is no front vehicle, SCC will quickly control the speed of the vehicle to cruise speed.

When the SCC enters lateral control, it will actively control the direction, but please keep your hands gently holding the steering wheel. At this time, your superimposed hand force may have a slight impact on lateral control. Please closely monitor the vehicle traveling situation and be ready to take over the steering wheel control direction at any time.

When the SCC controls direction, the steering wheel turns. When the SCC actively accelerates, the accelerator pedal will not move; when the SCC decelerates, the brake pedal may move.

Instrument cluster interface

1. SCC longitudinal control icon
2. SCC lateral control icon
3. Set cruise speed
4. Following target front vehicle
5. Following distance

When the longitudinal control icon or lateral control icon does not appear, it indicates that the SCC longitudinal or lateral control function has not been activated temporarily or cannot be activated if conditions are met. When the icon is gray, it indicates that the SCC longitudinal or lateral control function is ready to be activated and can be activated by pressing the functional button. When the icon is blue, it indicates that the SCC longitudinal or lateral control function is activated.

Warning

- When the lane lines on both sides are unclear and the vehicle follows the front vehicle, if the front vehicle slowly changes its driving path, the VUT has a risk of colliding with vehicles beside it. If the front vehicle changes its driving path too fast or the steering angle is too large, the VUT cannot follow the front vehicle, and the vehicle will drive at cruise speed because the following target disappears, which may lead to sudden acceleration. It is necessary to be ready to take over the vehicle at any time to ensure driving safety.
- The system may miss the alarm. Please do not rely on the system to remind you to hold the steering wheel.

Caution

- The display on the combination instrument is only for reference and cannot fully reflect the real traffic conditions. Please do not rely on the display content of the combination instrument.
- When the lane lines on both sides are not clear, but there is a vehicle that meets the conditions directly ahead in a close range, the vehicle can follow the other vehicle in a short time.
- When using the SCC, you must hold the steering wheel and look at the road ahead. If the system detects that you have not held the steering wheel after a period of time, the combination instrument will display the textual prompt "Please hold the steering wheel" and give an alert tone. After you hold the steering wheel with both hands, the alarm will disappear. If after a period of time the system detects that you are not holding the steering wheel at all times, the SCC feature will deactivate.
- SCC may still prompt the alarm when you hold the steering wheel. At this time, you can hold or shake the steering wheel gently to release the alarm.

Cruise control

When the SCC is activated:

1. Short press the SCC resume/speed + or speed-button to increase or decrease the cruising speed by 1 km/h.

2. Press and hold the SCC resume/speed + or speed-button to increase or decrease the cruising speed by 5 km/h.

3. The maximum set speed of SCC is 130 km/h.

4. The minimum set speed of SCC is 30 km/h, but it can follow and stop to 0 km/h.

Warning

The above maximum set speed is the maximum speed theoretically supported by SCC. Please comply with the road traffic safety regulations when staring and setting SCC, including but not limited to the regulations on vehicle running speed.

Fixed-range cruise control

When SCC is activated or ready to be activated, the following distance can be adjusted in 4 gears, and the vehicle has 4 gears (the farthest gear) by default.

1. Press the distance + button to set a longer following distance.

2. Press the distance - button to set a closer following distance.

Warning

You are responsible for determining and maintaining a

Warning

safe following distance at any time. Please do not rely solely on SCC to maintain this distance.

Caution

- When the following distance is set close, the SCC driving behavior is more intense and may cause discomfort.
- The following distance is set according to the safety and comfort of the vehicle, and there will be a certain distance from the front vehicle in specific scenarios.

Following start/stop

After the SCC follows and stops the front vehicle:

1. If the front vehicle starts, the ACC will automatically follow to start the front vehicle. You need to confirm that the surrounding environment is safe at all times to avoid collision accidents.

2. After follows and stops the front vehicle for more than 3 s, you need to confirm that the surrounding environment is safe, and press the function button or depress the accelerator pedal to reactivate the SCC function, so that the vehicle can follow and start.

3. The SCC will deactivate after about 3 minutes.

Warning

- SCC cannot detect other traffic participants in all situations and may be invalid, malfunction or be delayed due to several factors.
- You must always pay attention to the traffic conditions and road environment. Please do not rely on SCC for automatic vehicle follow to start; otherwise, personal injury or vehicle damage may be caused.

Note

After SCC follows and stops with the front vehicle, the SCC will follow and start only when the starting distance of the front vehicle exceeds that of this vehicle by about 4 meters.

Take over and resume

When driving with SCC, you can depress the accelerator pedal deeply or turn the steering wheel at any time to actively take over the vehicle. When taking over actively in this way, SCC will no longer respond to the target front vehicle.

The SCC will resume longitudinal control as soon as you stop depressing the accelerator pedal deeply.

When the vehicle is actively taken over by turning the steering wheel, SCC lateral control will deactivate temporarily, but longitudinal control will be maintained and lane lines will be searched. At this time, you can control the direction of the vehicle.

When you stop turning the steering wheel, if the lane lines on both sides are clear and the vehicle is in the middle of the lane, SCC will automatically resume lateral control.

When SCC is deactivated by pressing the function button or depressing the brake pedal,it can reactivate it by pressing the function button again and resume the previously set cruise speed.

After SCC follows and stops with the front vehicle, it can be activated again by pressing the function button or depressing the accelerator pedal, and it will resume the previously set cruise speed.

Resume activate SCC, preferentially enter longitudinal control and start searching lane lines. If the lane lines on both sides are clear and the vehicle is in the middle of the lane, immediately enter lateral control at the same time.

Caution

- When SCC lateral control works normally, when the light control handle is turned on to turn on the turn signal, SCC lateral control will deactivate temporarily, and you need to take over the steering wheel in time to control the vehicle direction. At this time, longitudinal control is retained and lane lines are continuously searched. Lateral control will automatically resume after conditions are met.
- When SCC lateral control is working normally, if you need to change lanes, please actively take over the steering wheel to control the vehicle direction and deactivate SCC lateral control.

Function exit

When the following conditions occur, SCC will be deactivated and no longer automatically control speed and direction, and you will be reminded by sound:

1. Press the function button.

2. Depress the brake pedal.

3. Depress and hold the accelerator pedal to actively take over the vehicle for about 1 minute.

4. Keep the vehicle stationary for about 3 minutes.

In addition, when SCC does not meet the working conditions, it will deactivate by itself. Please take over the brake pedal, accelerator pedal and steering wheel of the vehicle immediately after SCC deactivates to control the speed and direction of the vehicle.

Caution

After the SCC deactivates, the vehicle may decelerate due to energy recovery braking and no longer automatically control direction and speed.

Functional limitation

The following conditions may cause SCC lateral control failure or temporary deactivate, and you need to take over the steering wheel in time to control the vehicle direction. At this time, longitudinal control is retained and lane lines are continuously searched. Lateral control will automatically resume after conditions are met. This includes, but is not limited to:

1. Pass through curves with excessive curvature, such as high-speed ramps.

2. The lane lines are unclear, worn, missing, crossed, or blocked by shadows cast by other vehicles, buildings or landscapes.

3. Pass through road sections without lane lines, such as non-standardized roads, intersections and construction areas.

4. Road sections passing through special lane lines, such as deceleration prompt line and traffic flow guide line, etc.

5. Areas with unclear lane division, such as lane line converge or diverge, highway ramps, urban intersections, left-turn waiting areas, etc.

6. The road surface has edges or other high-contrast lines rather than lane lines, such as pavement joints and curbs.

7. The lane lines cannot be identified or are incorrectly identified due to height change, such as uphill and downhill.

8. The lane lines cannot be identified or are incorrectly identified due to light reasons, such as lane line reflection caused by strong lighting, poor visibility or insufficient light caused by bad weather and night.

9. The distance between lane lines on both sides is too wide or narrow.

The following conditions may lead to camera recognition failure, affect SCC performance, and even cause function deactivate. This includes, but is not limited to:

1. The installation position of the camera is changed.

2. The camera is blocked or dirty.

3. The recognition ability is reduced at night.

4. The surrounding environment is dark, such as dawn, dusk, night and tunnel.

5. The brightness of the surrounding environment changes suddenly, such as at tunnel entrance or exit.

6. Large shadows cast by buildings, landscapes or large vehicles.

7. The camera is directly exposed to light.

8. Severe weather such as rain, snow, fog and haze.

9. Exhaust, water spray, snow or dust raised by the vehicle ahead.

10. The windshield in front of the camera has water, dust, micro-scratches, grease, dirt, wipers, freezing, snowfall, etc.

11. Wet road surface.

Under the following conditions, if the relative speed with a front vehicle is too high, SCC may have limited control ability, resulting in failure to keep distance in time. This includes, but is not limited to:

1. Sudden manipulation of the front vehicle (such as sudden turn, acceleration and deceleration).

2. Other vehicles suddenly drives into or out of the front of the vehicle.

3. The vehicle suddenly drives behind the front vehicle.

4. The vehicle rushes to the stationary or slow moving target ahead at a high speed.

Sufficient braking force may not be obtained in the following cases. This includes, but is not limited to:

1. Brake function fails to work fully (e.g. brake parts are too cold, overheated and damp).

2. Improper vehicle maintenance (such as excessive wear of brake or tire, abnormal tire pressure, etc.).

3. The vehicle is running on special road surfaces (such as uphill and downhill, waterlogging, muddy, potholed and icy or snowy roads,etc.).

The following situations may lead to late SCC identification and response due to the target not being directly ahead, including but not limited to:

1. SCC will not respond to targets in the sensor blind spot, such as failure to detect corner blind spots and side blind spots of vehicles.

2. When approaching or turning through the road, the target may be selected by mistake or missed, resulting in unexpected acceleration and deceleration of the vehicle.

3. When the vehicle is running on uphill, it may lose the target or misjudge the distance from the front vehicle; when the vehicle runs downhill, the driving speed will increase, resulting in exceeding the cruising speed.

4. When only part of the vehicle body in the adjacent lane drives into the front of the vehicle (especially large vehicles such as buses and trucks), it may not be able to identify and respond, and you need to take over in time.

5. When the vehicle suddenly drives behind the front vehicle,

Or when another vehicle suddenly drives into or out of the front of the vehicle, it may not be able to identify the target in time and you need to take over in time.

Warning

- As a driving assistance function, SCC cannot cope with all traffic, weather and road conditions. Please do not completely rely on this function.
- SCC cannot guarantee recognition of special vehicles,such as those with obscured rears, irregularly shaped vehicles, vehicles with rear vertical surfaces below a certain height, or unladen carrier vehicles. Special attention is required especially at night.
- You must always pay attention to the traffic conditions and road environment, and independently decide whether to use SCC on your own while ensuring safety. When using the SCC, if it is found that the traffic conditions, road environment or vehicle condition are not suitable for using this function, or there are other unsafe factors, the driver shall be ready to take over the vehicle at any time. You always bear the ultimate responsibility for keeping a proper distance, speed and direction and complying with current traffic laws and regulations.
- SCC may deactivated due to unexpected circumstances. Please always pay attention to the traffic conditions and road environment, and be ready to take over the vehicle at any time.
- SCC is a comfort function, not an anti-collision function. The maximum deceleration of SCC is limited and less than the maximum deceleration that can be requested during automatic emergency braking and driving. Therefore, please do not rely on SCC to sufficiently decelerate the vehicle to avoid a collision.
- When the relative speed between the vehicle and the front vehicle is greater than 50 km/h, if the front vehicle is stationary or moving slowly, there is a risk that SCC cannot brake. In order to ensure safety, please deactivate SCC immediately in case of the above situation. Please do not try SCC to brake the stationary vehicle or follow and stop the front vehicle under the above situation.
- The maximum steering force of SCC is limited and less than the maximum steering force that can be requested when driving, so please do not rely on SCC to fully steer the vehicle for direction control. You should always be prepared to take over steering control, especially in curves.
- If it is necessary to turn, make a U-turn or pass through winding or sharp turn road, please take over the steering wheel immediately to control the direction. Do not use SCC in these situations.
- Please do not use the SCC in bad weather, on roads with small turning radius, winding roads, tunnel entrances and exits, narrow roads, or in complex environments where lane lines are unclear or lighting is poor, or in complex environments with many pedestrians or animals.

Caution

- SCC may give visual warnings to dangerous targets ahead, lane changes, unclear lane lines, sharp turns, construction areas or environments with limited camera vision. Please drive carefully.
- Environmental reminders are for reference only and cannot replace your attention and judgment. They may be invalid, malfunction or be delayed due to several factors. You must always pay attention to the traffic conditions and road environment, and please do not rely on the judgment of environmental reminders.
- SCC is not recommended under special or complex road conditions, which may affect cruise performance and even cause function deactivate, including but not limited to roads with complicated traffic, winding roads, uphill and downhill slopes, bumpy roads, narrow roads, tunnel entrances and exits or roads with waterlogging, ice and snow, speed bumps and obstacles,etc.
- SCC will occasionally accelerate when there is no need to accelerate or you do not intend to accelerate, which may be caused by the change or loss of following target (especially during turning or lane changing).
- The SCC occasionally applies the brakes when it

Caution

is not necessary or you do not intend to brake. This may be caused by the detection of vehicles, objects or stationary targets changing or missing in adjacent lanes (especially during turning or lane change).

- The SCC cannot detect and brake vehicles in other traffic lanes, other sides of the vehicle (other than the rear), children, pedestrians, animals, traffic lamps, walls or other non-vehicular objects.
- Please note that the SCC function will be deactivated automatically when the ESP system is turned off.

Navigate on Autopilot (NOA)

The NOA function is to realize the functions of intelligent lane change, intelligent overtaking and automatic on/off ramp based on SCC in combination with navigation route, so as to assist the driver in completing the driving route from point A to point B.

Switch settings

Tap the multimedia display screen [vehicle control] - [Intelligent driving] - [cruise assist] - [NOA] switch in turn to turn on or off. The function is disabled by default.

The lane change mode can be [Shift lever] or [Shift lever + Automatic].

Lane change by shifting the lever: The vehicle cannot automatically change lanes. When driving to the scenario where lane change is required according to navigation, the combination instrument will prompt "Please shift the lever left/right to change lanes" with voice broadcast. Pull the light control lever in the lane change direction, and the vehicle will automatically change lanes at an appropriate time. If do not pull it, the vehicle will not change lanes; if pull it reversely, this lane change will be canceled. After changing lanes, please pull the lever back in time.

Shift lever + automatic lane change: When a lane change prompt appears, the vehicle will not request confirmation and will automatically change the lane at the right time by default. The driver can also complete automatic lane change by toggling the light control handle.

Inhibition of automatic lane change after shifting the lever: The driver actively shifts the lever to change to a low-speed road, and inhibits automatic lane change for 10 min. During this period, drivers can shift the lever to change to an expressway. After the inhibition time is reached, the principle of lane change on freeways shall be followed.

Warning

Lane change may occur at an extremely fast speed at any time. No matter whether the driver chooses to "shift the lever for lane change" or not, the driver must always confirm whether it is safe and appropriate to change lane before and during lane change. Please pay attention to the road conditions, always put your hands on the steering wheel and be ready to take over the vehicle at any time.

Caution

- When the vehicle enters a ramp or obliquely merges into the main road from the ramp, it will not request lane change confirmation and will be directly guided to change lane automatically.
- In case of lane change by shifting the lever, please manually shift the lever as soon as possible on the premise of ensuring safety when a lane change prompt appears to avoid missing the opportunity for lane change.
- When the shift lever is selected for lane change, when the light control handle is toggled, the turn signal will be on and remain on during lane change. When the shift lever + automatic lane change is selected, the turn signal will automatically light up when a lane change prompt appears and remain on during lane change.
- When the shift lever is selected for lane change, please pull back the light control handle in time after the vehicle completes lane change. If the light control handle has not been pulled back for a long time, intelligent lane change cannot be automatically triggered again.
- Before changing lanes and crossing lines, the vehicle may adjust its speed on the current lane.

Working conditions

When the following conditions are met, the combination instrument will display the NOA is ready to activate screen.

1. Navigation works normally.

2. The switch of NOA setting item is activated.

3. The GPS signal is good.

4. The high-precision map is displayed normally.

5. The vehicle drives into the road section supporting NOA.

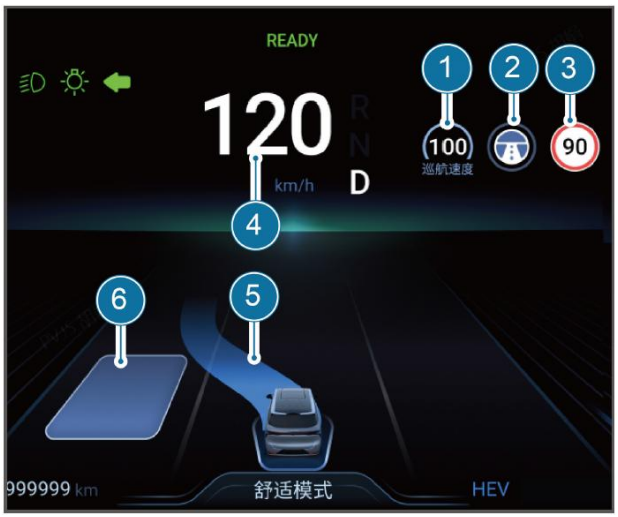
6. The hazard warning lamp is not turned on.

7. The turn signal has no fault.

8. The ADAS camera and five millimeter-wave radars function normally with a clear field of view.

Function activate

Press the function button on the steering wheel twice (the same as SCC function button), and NOA will be automatically activated when the working conditions are met.



1. Set cruise speed

After NOA is activated through the function button, the system will automatically set the cruising speed with reference to the road speed limit. You can press the cruise speed +/- button on the steering wheel to change the set cruising speed. When you change the set cruise speed, NOA will not automatically set the cruise speed before the next road speed limit change point.

Caution

After NOA is activated, please note that the vehicle may accelerate to the road speed limit of the main road when merging into the main road.

2. NOA longitudinal + lateral control icons

If this icon is not displayed: NOA does not meet the conditions and cannot be activated.

Gray icon: NOA is ready to be activated and can be activated via function buttons.

The icon is blue: NOA is activated.

3. Speed limit prompt

4. Current driving speed

The system will adjust the current speed according to factors such as front vehicle speed, traffic flow speed and road curvature, but the maximum speed will not exceed the set cruise speed.

You can actively increase the current speed by depressing the accelerator pedal deeply. At this time, the system will no longer respond to the target front vehicle and other speed limits. After stopping depressing the accelerator pedal deeply, if the system does not deactivated, it will continue to respond to the road speed limit.

After the accelerator pedal is depressed deeply for a certain period of time, the system will deactivate. At this moment, you control the vehicle speed and direction.

Warning

- The road speed limit referenced by NOA is not always accurate and may not conform to the actual road conditions, resulting in unexpected acceleration or deceleration of the vehicle. Please always pay attention to the actual road conditions at all times, and manually adjust the set cruise speed or directly take over the vehicle if necessary.
- Please do not rely on NOA to control the vehicle speed. You must always pay attention to traffic conditions, road environment and speed limit signs, and drive within a safe speed range that conforms to traffic regulations.

5. Running track line

When the vehicle is running, the driving track line will be displayed and guided by a blue path.

6. Lane change and landing point

During lane change, the appropriate drop-off point is displayed for dynamic display of lane change.

Note

- After NOA is turned on, you will see whether different paths support this function when planning the path.
- Turning on NOA will enable other necessary functions at the same time, such as forward collision

assistance, lane change assist and traffic sign recognition.

Function exit

You can voluntarily deactivate NOA by the following methods, and you need to take over the vehicle in time:

1. Press the functional button on the steering wheel and deactivate SCC at the same time.

2. Depress the brake pedal and deactivate SCC.

3. Actively take over the direction by turning the steering wheel.

4. Deactivate navigation.

Warning

NOA may lead to deactivate due to unexpected circumstances. Please always pay attention to the traffic conditions and road environment, and be ready to take over the vehicle at any time.

Caution

- When NOA deactivates, if SCC working conditions and restrictions are met, NOA will deactivate to SCC. Please note that SCC will not automatically adjust the set cruise speed and drive according to the navigation route. It is necessary to manually adjust the set cruise speed or directly take over the vehicle.
- When NOA deactivates, if SCC working conditions and restrictions are not met, NOA and SCC will deactivate at the same time. Please take over the vehicle immediately to control its speed and direction.

Functional limitation

The following situations may lead to late NOA identification and response due to the target not being directly ahead, including but not limited to:

1. NOA will not respond to targets in the blind spots of sensors, such as failure to detect corner and side blind spots of vehicles.

2. When approaching or turning through the road, the target may be selected by mistake or missed, resulting in unexpected acceleration and deceleration of the vehicle.

3. When the vehicle is running on uphill, it may lose the target or misjudge the distance from the front vehicle; when the vehicle runs downhill, the driving speed will increase, resulting in exceeding the cruising speed.

4. When only part of the vehicle body in the adjacent lane cuts into the front of the vehicle (especially large vehicles such as buses and trucks), it may not be able to identify and respond, and you need to take over in time.

5. When the vehicle suddenly drives behind the front vehicle, or when another vehicle suddenly drives into or out of the front of the vehicle, it may not be able to identify the target in time and you need to take over in time.

The following conditions may cause navigation failure, including but not limited to:

1. The navigation guidance information cannot be updated in real time due to network abnormality.

2. Navigation is unexpectedly deactivated due to route calculation failure and other reasons.

The following situations may cause NOA to fail to successfully enter the correct lane. Please make sure to pay attention to the route and road conditions, and be ready to manually get on/off the ramps or change lanes at any time to ensure safe merging into the proper lane. This includes, but is not limited to:

1. The approach length of upper and lower ramps is insufficient.

2. The terrain at the ramp entrance or junction is complex.

3. The lane line is not clear.

4. The traffic flow is large.

5. The map information is outdated or inaccurate.

6. The waypoint set in navigation is near the ramp or fork.

NOA may not be able to correctly identify the following environments and targets. Please make sure to pay attention to the environment and road conditions, always put your hands on the steering wheel, and be ready to take over the vehicle at any time to ensure safe driving. This includes, but is not limited to:

1. Rear vehicle on the side approaching quickly.

2.Vehicles running sideways when the traffic volume is large.

3. Vehicles that merge quickly when there is a straight ramp on the side.

4. Vehicles driving from one lane to the adjacent lane.

5. Vehicles partially occupying the target lane for lane change.

6. Guardrails and crash bearers at ramp entrance or fork.

During NOA driving, the following scenarios may cause this function to deactivate, and the combination instrument will prompt "Please take over the vehicle":

1. The vehicle on the adjacent road is too close to stop, and it has no time to brake.

2. The vehicle ahead stops suddenly, and the following safety cannot be guaranteed.

3. The rear axle center of the vehicle passes through the line, but the body position rolls on the line, and there is a risk of collision with vehicles on adjacent roads.

4. The following target in front of the vehicle disappears abnormally.

5. The ramp curvature is too large to keep the vehicle in the lane.

NOA can only be used in the supporting sections of expressways and urban highways. The following locations may not be able to use navigate on autopilot (NOA) normally, including but not limited to:

1. NOA cannot be used in specific areas restricted by laws and regulations, such as within the fifth ring road of Beijing.

2. NOA may not work properly due to GPS signal loss, such as in long tunnels.

3. NOA may not be used normally due to the loss of high-precision maps.

4. NOA cannot be used normally near toll stations and service areas.

5. NOA may restrict its use at specific complex ramp intersections and accident-prone areas.

The following situations may result in the deactivate of SCC and NOA, requiring you to be ready to take over the vehicle at any time, including but not limited to:

1. Negotiate the curve with excessive curvature.

2. The lane lines of the current lane and target lane are unclear, worn, missing, crossed, or blocked by shadows cast by other vehicles, buildings or landscapes.

3. Pass through sections without lane lines, such as non-standardized roads and construction areas.

4. Unclear areas divided by lanes, such as lane line convergence or separation area.

5. Road sections passing through special lane lines, such as deceleration prompt line and traffic flow guide line.

6. The pavement has edges or other high-contrast lines rather than lane lines, such as pavement joints and curbs.

7. The lane line cannot be identified or is incorrectly identified due to height change, such as uphill and downhill.

8. Lane lines cannot be identified or are incorrectly identified due to light reasons, such as reflection of lane lines caused by strong illumination, poor visibility or insufficient lighting caused by bad weather and night.

9. The distance between lane lines on both sides is too wide or narrow.

The following conditions may lead to camera recognition failure, affect NOA performance, and even cause function deactivate, including but not limited to:

1. The installation position of the camera is changed.

2. The camera is blocked or dirty.

3. The recognition ability is reduced at night.

4. The surrounding environment is dark, such as at dawn, dusk, night and in tunnels.

5. The brightness of the surrounding environment changes suddenly, such as at tunnel entrance or exit.

6. Large shadows cast by buildings, landscapes or large vehicles.

7. The camera is directly exposed to light.

8. Severe weather such as rain, snow, fog and haze.

9. Exhaust, water spray, snow or dust raised by the vehicle ahead.

10. Water, dust, micro-scratches, grease, dirt, wipers, freezing, snowfall, etc. on the windshield in front of the camera.

11. Wet road surface.

The following conditions may lead to radar recognition failure, affect NOA performance and even cause function deactivate, including but not limited to:

1. The radar is dislocated, blocked or covered with dirt, ice and snow, metal plates, tapes, labels, leaves, etc.

2. The radar or surrounding area is impacted due to vehicle collision, scratch, etc.

3. Extreme weather conditions such as heavy rain, snow and fog may affect the radar performance.

4. Due to the limitation of radar identification target characteristics, under rare special circumstances, false alarms may be generated for some metal protective fences, green belts, concrete walls, etc.

Warning

- As a driving assistance function, NOA cannot cope with all traffic, weather and road conditions. Please do not completely rely on this function.
- NOA cannot respond to static obstacles (such as roadblocks, warning triangles, etc.). If there are accidents ahead, construction areas, temporary road closures, etc., please take over the vehicle immediately to control direction and speed.
- NOA is a comfort function, not an anti-collision function. The maximum deceleration of the system is limited and less than the maximum deceleration that can be requested during automatic emergency braking and driving. Therefore, please do not fully decelerate the vehicle according to NOA to avoid collision.
- If it is necessary to turn, make a U-turn or pass through a winding or sharp turn road, please take over the steering wheel immediately to control the direction. Do not use this function in these situations.
- Please do not rely on NOA to determine the correct driving lane. Please make sure to pay attention to your route and road conditions to ensure safe merging into the proper lane. If NOA fails to accurately recognize bus lane information and you inadvertently enter one during restricted hours, be sure to merge back into the main lane in time.
- The maximum steering force of NOA is limited and less than the maximum steering force that can be requested when driving, so please do not rely on NOA to fully steer the vehicle for direction control. You should always be prepared to take over steering control, especially in curves.
- NOA cannot guarantee recognition of special vehicles, such as those with obscured rears, irregularly shaped vehicles. NOA may not detect stationary or slow-moving vehicles, especially at night.
- You must always pay attention to the traffic conditions and road environment, and decide whether to use NOA on your own while ensuring safety. When using NOA, if it is found that the function is not suitable for use due to traffic conditions, road environment, bad weather or vehicle conditions, or there are other unsafe factors, you should be ready to take over the vehicle at any time. You always bear the ultimate responsibility for keeping a proper distance, speed and direction and complying with current traffic laws and regulations.

Warning

Caution

- When NOA is activated, in order to ensure driving safety, the vehicle may automatically slow down to the specified speed limit range in advance before merging into a ramp or entering a tunnel.
- NOA is not recommended under special or complex road conditions, including but not limited to roads with complicated and changeable traffic, winding roads, uphill and downhill slopes, bumpy roads, narrow roads, tunnel entrances and exits or roads with waterlogging, ice and snow, speed bumps and obstacles,etc.
- The on-board map display may be inconsistent with the actual road conditions. Please must always pay attention to the traffic conditions and road environment, and be ready to take over your vehicle at any time.
- Due to the influence of network, it may occur that the NOA function is enabled but the multimedia display screen displays abnormally. Please observe the surrounding driving environment and take over the vehicle in time if necessary.
- If there is a difference between the actual road you are driving and the navigation display, NOA may be activated by mistake, resulting in unexpected acceleration, deceleration or lane change of the vehicle. In this case, it is necessary to deactivate NOA.
- NOA will occasionally accelerate when there is no need to accelerate or you do not intend to accelerate, which may be caused by the change or loss of following target (especially during turning or lane changing).
- NOA will occasionally applies the brakes when it is not necessary or you do not intend to brake. This may be caused by the detection of vehicles, objects or stationary targets changing or missing in adjacent lanes (especially during turning or lane change).

Intelligent high beam headlight control (IHC)*

During driving, the vehicle automatically switches between high and low beams according to the driving environment, which includes ambient lamp factors such as vehicles and street lamps.

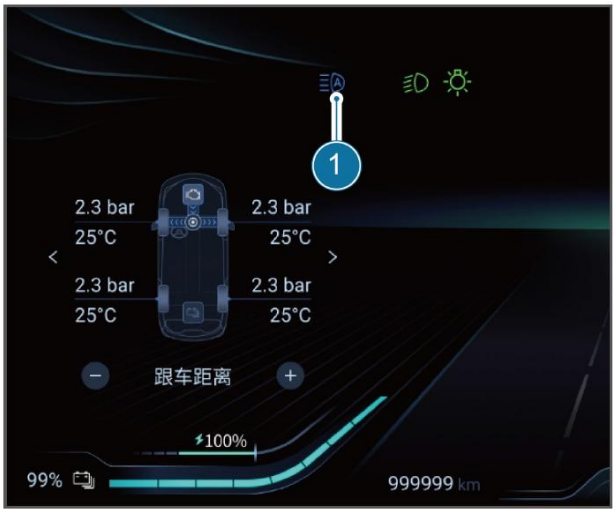
Switch settings

Tap the multimedia display screen [Vehicle control] - [Intelligent driving] - [Forward assistance] - [Automatic control of high and low lights] switch in turn to turn on or off. It is enabled by default.

Function activated

With the switch turned on, when the vehicle speed is greater than 30 km/h, the light control is in AUTO mode and the low beam headlight are turned on, IHC function will be activated.

Function triggering



1. IHC status icon

   Grayish white icon: IHC is ready to be activated.

   Blue icon: IHC is activated.

   Yellow icon: IHC is fault.

Switching from low beam to high beam: When the external environment is dark and there are no other traffic participants ahead, the vehicle automatically switches from low beam headlight to high beam headlight.

Switching from high beam to low beam: When the external ambient lamp source is sufficient or there are other traffic participants ahead, the vehicle automatically switches from high beam to low beam.

Function exit

The IHC system will exit if any of the following conditions are met:

1. The low beam headlight is turned off.
2. The function switch is turned off.
3. The vehicle speed drops below 25 km/h.
4. The light control is set to passing lamp or high beam.
5. The light control is not in AUTO position.

Functional limitation

1. Rain, ice and snow, dense fog and dirt may degrade the performance of IHC system.
2. The IHC system may not work normally when the lights of vehicles coming from ahead are blocked (e.g. crash barrier).
3. If there are highly reflective objects (such as traffic signs) near the road, IHC system may not work normally.
4. When the vehicle is running on poor road sections (such as slippery roads, slopes or pits and sharp turns), IHC system may not work normally due to unstable body.

Warning

- The IHC is an auxiliary function and cannot work under all driving conditions or traffic, weather and road conditions. The driver shall always be responsible for the driving safety and comply with applicable laws and road traffic rules.
- Extreme weather such as heavy rain, heavy snow and dense fog or camera being blocked may affect the normal use of this function. Please drive carefully.

Traffic sign recognition (TSR)*

When the vehicle is running, it identifies road traffic signs and displays them on the combination instrument interface to remind the driver to drive carefully.

Switch settings

Tap the multimedia display screen [Vehicle control] - [Intelligent driving] - [Forward assistance] - [Traffic sign recognition (TSR)] switch in turn to turn on or off. It is enabled by default.

Function activated

After the switch is turned on, the function will be activated automatically after the vehicle starts.

Function triggering

1. Speed limit sign
2. Prohibition/warning signs
3. Waiting time at traffic lights

After the system recognizes the above traffic signs, they will be displayed on the combination instrument interface.

Caution

The instrument display is only for indication and cannot fully reflect the real traffic conditions. Please do not completely rely on the display content of the combination instrument.

Functional limitation

The following situations may lead to unrecognized or restricted road marking recognition, including but not limited to:

1. The ADAS camera is blocked.
2. Road signs faded, damaged, blocked, covered by ice, snow and dust or on curves.
3. Multiple speed limit signs appear continuously, or there are different speed limit signs on adjacent roads.
4. Due to the clarity of traffic signs and other reasons, TSR may misidentify.

Warning

- The TSR is for information only and does not replace your visual inspection. Do not drive in total reliance on TSR speed limit information.
- As a driving assistance function, TSR cannot cope with all traffic, weather and road conditions. The driver must always pay attention to the traffic conditions and road environment, and decide whether to use TSR on the premise of ensuring safety. The driver always bears the ultimate responsibility for driving safely and complying with current traffic laws and regulations.

Caution

- At present, TSR only detects speed limit signs, no overtaking, attention to children and road construction information, but cannot identify other traffic signs.
- TSR system cannot accurately identify embedded traffic signs and traffic signs with auxiliary signs.
- TSR system can detect standard signboards, LED speed limit signs or speed limit release signs within 5 ~ 120 meters in front of the vehicle.
- Keep the surface of the front windshield clean, free from ice, snow, fog, and dirt.
- Do not stick any substance on the front windshield, which may reduce the effectiveness of TSR system or cause it to stop working.
- TSR system is a driving assistance function, which aims to improve the driving convenience and safety of vehicles. It cannot cope with all traffic and weather conditions.
- The TSR system cannot replace the driver's attention and judgment. The driver is always responsible for ensuring that the vehicle runs safely at an appropriate speed in accordance with current traffic laws and regulations.
- The TSR system may fail to identify traffic signs when the vehicle is running on a curved or hillside

Caution

road, or when the sensor is blocked by snow, ice and dust.

- When the visibility is poor, such as in foggy, rainy or snowy days, the recognition performance will be limited.
- When strong light (oncoming headlamp light or direct sunlight) obstructs the field of view of the front-view camera, TSR system may not recognize traffic signs.
- When a speed limit sign is blocked by an object, the TSR system may not recognize it.
- When the traffic sign does not meet the standard approved format, it may not be recognized by TSR system.
- TSR displays the speed limit information on the combination instrument according to the speed limit sign recognized by the ADAS camera. When the ADAS camera has no speed limit information source, it will not display any speed limit prompt information.
- When the camera needs to be cleaned, the combination instrument prompts "The camera is covered. Please clean it in time". In this case, use wiper to clean the glass or contact an Dongfeng Forthing authorized service station.

Lateral driving assistance *

Lateral driving assistance can detect vehicles in front of and behind the vehicle or on adjacent lanes through sensors at the front of the vehicle and on both sides of the rear bumper. If there is a collision risk, the system will give an alarm to remind the driver to drive safely.

According to the relevant provisions on radio astronomy service protection in the *Interim Provisions on the Radio Management of Automotive Radar*, the vehicle shall not use millimeter-wave radar within the interference protection distance of relevant radio observatories in China.

1. The radio observatory in Xiaoyematan, Zelinggou, Xuji Township, Delingha City, Haixi Inner Mongolia and Tibetan Autonomous Prefecture, Qinghai Province has an interference protection distance of 26 km from automotive radar.

2. The radio observatory located at No. 1703, Jiujiang Road, Songjiang District, Shanghai, Sheshan Town, Songjiang District, Shanghai and Bulaotun Town, Miyun District, Beijing shall have an interference protection distance of 3 km from automotive radar.

3. The radio observatory located in Gangou Township, Urumqi County, Urumqi City, Xinjiang Uygur Autonomous Region has an interference protection distance of 5 km from automotive radar.

4. The radio observatory in Shihezi Village, Qitai County, Changji Hui Autonomous Prefecture, Xinjiang Uygur Autonomous Region has an interference protection distance of 15 km from automotive radar.

5. The radio observatory in Dujuan Lake, Ailao Mountain Nature Reserve, Jingdong Yi Autonomous County, Pu'er City, Yunnan Province has an interference protection distance of 10 km from automotive radar.

Warning

- Please pay attention to keeping the radar installation place and nearby area clean. If it is covered with dirt, ice and snow, metal plates, tapes, labels or leaves, its performance will be affected and normal alarm cannot be given.
- Please do not use lateral driving assistance in trailer mode.
- In order to avoid affecting the performance of millimeter-wave radar, it is strictly prohibited to spray paint or install enclosure on the bumper without permission.
- If the lateral auxiliary driving function cannot work normally due to vehicle collision, scratch, radar failure or abnormality and other reasons, please contact an Dongfeng Forthing authorized service station in time.
- If there is no fault prompt and the radar function is abnormal for a long time, please contact an authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing in time.
- Lateral driving assistance will not give a warning to stationary objects. False alarm may be generated for some metal protective fences, green belts and cement walls.
- Extreme weather conditions such as heavy rain, snow and fog may affect the radar performance. Please drive carefully.

Caution

- Please turn off the rear side assist system when towing other vehicles.
- Please keep both sides of the rear bumper clean. Do not paste any object on it or cover it with foreign matters such as ice, snow and mud to avoid affecting the normal operation of the sensor.
- Improper maintenance or modification of the vehicle may cause sensor misalignment, affecting the normal operation of the rear side assist system. Therefore, it is recommended that you contact Dongfeng Forthing Special Service Station.

Blind spot warning lamp

The warning lamps are located on the left and right exterior rearview mirror surfaces.

Lane Change Assist (LCA) system

LCA system includes blind spot monitoring and lane change warning, which can detect vehicles approaching the vehicle from the rear side and provide early warning information to avoid collision.

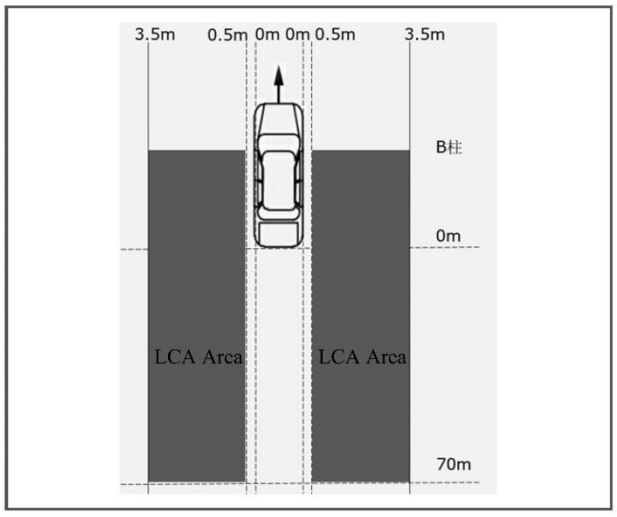
Switch settings

Tap the [Vehicle control] - [Intelligent driving] - [Blind spot assistance] - [Lane change assist] switch on the multimedia display screen in turn to turn on or off, which is enabled by default. The alarm mode can be selected as [Display] or [Display + Sound]. the vehicle defaults to [Display + Sound].

Function on

After the function switch is activated, when the vehicle speed is greater than or equal to 15 km/h, the function will be activated to monitor the rear vehicle conditions in real time and ensure the safety of lane change.

Lane change assist (LCA) range



The LCA monitoring area is 3.5 meters outside the vehicle and about 70 meters behind it, which are bilaterally symmetrical.

Function alarm

When a vehicle in the driver's blind spot or a vehicle approaching quickly from behind is detected,

the exterior rearview mirror blind spot warning lamp will illuminate. If you turn on the turn signal on corresponding side under such condition, the following warning message will be given to remind you not to change lane:

1. The rear side of the driving interface of combination instrument is marked in red.

2. The exterior rearview mirror blind spot warning lamp flashes.

3. Intermediate frequency alarm sound.

Functional limitation

When the vehicle is running on a road with large curves, wide lanes or uneven roads, LCA system may not be able to warn vehicles traveling in adjacent lanes.

LCA system may give false alarms in the following situations: 1. When the driving place is close to the guardrail. 2. The vehicle is running on or under a bridge or in a tunnel.

3. The vehicle is running beside shrubs, trees, etc.

4. There are telegraph poles, street lamps or concrete parapet walls on the roadside.

5. Driving near construction areas such as factory buildings and ports.

6. The vehicle is turning on an urban road or at a multi-lane intersection.

The above warnings and limitations do not address all situations that may interfere with the LCA system. There are many factors that can lead to LCA system failure. In order to avoid collision, the driver needs to be vigilant when driving the vehicle and always pay attention to the road conditions so as to change lanes when it is safe to do so.

Warning

LCA only warns detected vehicles, large motorcycles or objects, so there may be a certain degree of delay and even no warning for other targets including pedestrians, bicycles or skateboards.

Caution

- The LCA system is a driving assistance function and does not work in all cases.
- The LCA system cannot replace safe driving and the use of interior and exterior rearview mirrors.
- When the ambient noise is loud, for example, the interior audio volume is too loud or the exterior is too noisy, the alarm sound may not be heard.
- The instrument display is only for reference and cannot fully reflect the real traffic conditions. Please do not completely rely on the display content of the combination instrument.

Door Open Warning (DOW)*

When the vehicle is stationary, the DOW system can detect vehicles, cyclists or pedestrians approaching the vehicle from behind. When a target is detected approaching, the driver or passenger opens the door and the DOW system will give an early warning to avoid collision.

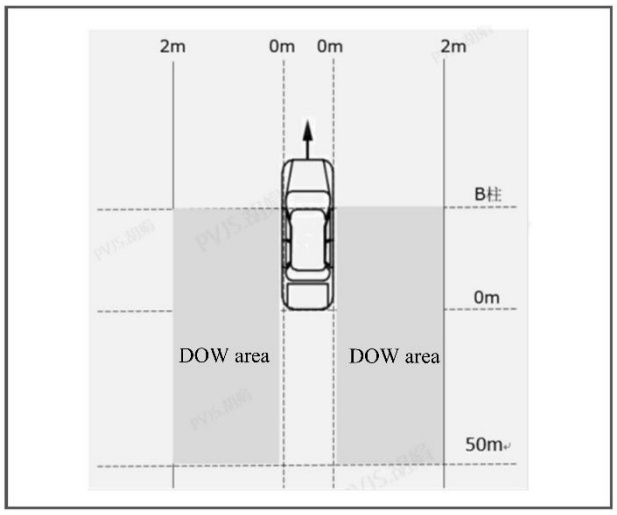
Switch settings

Sequentially navigate the multimedia display screen to access [Vehicle control] - [Intelligent driving] - [Blind spot assist] - [Door open warning] switch for enabling or disabling. It is set to be on by default. The alarm mode can be selected as [Display] or "Display + Sound], and the vehicle defaults to [Display + Sound].

Function on

When the door opening warning switch is turned on, the function will be activated when the vehicle speed is 0 km/h to monitor the conditions behind the vehicle in real time and ensure the safety of the user getting off the vehicle.

Door opening warning (DOW) range



The alarm area of DOW system is from 0m to 2m on the left and right sides of the vehicle laterally, and from the position of B-pillar of the vehicle longitudinally to 50m behind the rear of the vehicle, as shown in the figure. The shaded area is the warning area, which is bilaterally symmetrical.

Function alarm

When the DOW system is triggered and detects that there is a risk of collision when the door is opened, the vehicle will prompt in the following ways:

1. The rear side of the driving interface of combination instrument is marked in red.

2. The exterior rearview mirror blind spot warning lamp flashes.

3. Intermediate frequency alarm sound.

4. The combination instrument indicates "Danger! Left/Right door opening".

5. The interior atmosphere lamp on the corresponding side flashes.

6. Voice prompt "Danger! Door Opening, Please Pay Attention". 7.The hazard warning lamp is on.

System interruption

1. The vehicle speed is greater than 0 km/h.

2. The vehicle is shut down for more than 3 minutes.

Functional limitation

The DOW system does not always work in various situations. There are many reasons that may lead to unnecessary, untimely and invalid warnings or missing warnings, such as:

1. The radar is limited.

2. Smaller targets or static targets.

3. The target speed is too fast or there are turning behaviors. For example, when the target vehicle changes lane to the right rear of the subject vehicle, other vehicles suddenly change lane right rear of the subject vehicle and appear in the detection area.

4. Other vehicles and cyclists directly behind the vehicle.

5. The vehicle stops at a turning or beside a wall.

The above warnings and restrictions do not address all situations that may interfere with the door opening warning. There are many factors that can lead to the failure of door opening warning. In order to avoid the risk of scratching when opening the door, please remember to observe whether the door opening environment is safe and suitable.

Warning

DOW only warns of detected vehicles, large motorcycles or objects, so there may be a certain degree of delay and even no warning for other targets including pedestrians, bicycles or skateboards.

Caution

- The DOW system is effective only when the vehicle is stationary, and this function will not work when the vehicle is moving.
- When the ambient noise is loud, for example, the interior audio volume is too loud or the exterior is too noisy, the alarm sound may not be heard.
- The instrument display is only for reference and cannot fully reflect the real traffic conditions. Please do not completely rely on the display content of the combination instrument.
- Even when the vehicle is stationary, the DOW system cannot work under all circumstances and cannot replace the visual observation of the driver and passengers and the function of the interior and exterior rearview mirrors. Please do not rely too much on the DOW system.
- The DOW system is designed to remind the driver and passengers to pay attention to the environmental safety when opening doors. Limited by the performance of sensors and the complexity of traffic environment, unnecessary alarms or no alarms may be given. Actively observing the door-opening environment before getting off the vehicle is the most effective measure and responsibility for ensuring the personal safety of the driver and passengers.

Forward Cross Traffic Alert (FCTA)

When the vehicle is running at a low speed, FCTA detects vehicles, cyclists or pedestrians crossing ahead of the subject vehicle. When it detects that a target is approaching and there is a risk of collision when the vehicle is running, an early warning message will be sent to avoid collision.

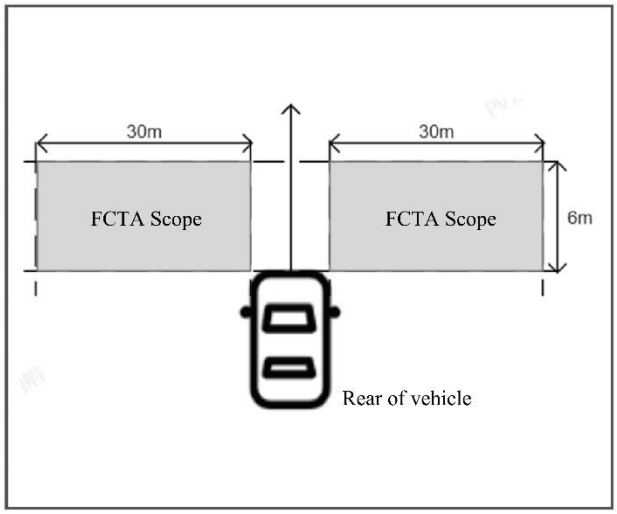
Switch settings

Sequentially navigate the multimedia display screen to access [Vehicle control] - [Intelligent driving] - [Blind spot assist] - [Forward crossing warning" switch for enabling or disabling. It is set to be on by default.

Function on

When the forward cross traffic warning switch is turned on, this function will be activated when the gearshift lever is in D position and the vehicle speed is less than or equal to 15 km/h. This function can monitor vehicles crossing the line in real time to ensure driving safety.

Forward crossing warning range



The alarm area of the forward cross traffic warning system is from 0m to 30m on the left and right sides of the vehicle laterally, and 6m in front of the vehicle head longitudinally, as shown in the figure. The shaded area is the warning area, which is bilaterally symmetrical.

Function alarm

When the FCTA trigger detects that there is a risk of collision due to vehicles crossing behind the vehicle, the vehicle will prompt in the following ways:

1. A red arrow is displayed in front of the driving interface of the instrument cluster.

2. The exterior rearview mirror blind spot warning lamp flashes.

3. Intermediate frequency alarm sound.

4. On the all-around view/parking interface, there is a red arrow in front of the vehicle.

Functional limitation

Unnecessary, untimely or invalid warnings and missing warnings of the RCTA system may occur for a variety of reasons, such as:

1. The radar is limited.

2. The speed of the detection object is too fast.

3. There are large and moving metal objects in the dead zone.

The following conditions may cause radar identification obstacles and affect the performance of FCTA, including but not limited to:

1. The radar is dislocated, blocked or covered with dirt, ice and snow, metal plates, tapes, labels, leaves, etc.

2. The radar or surrounding area is impacted due to vehicle collision, scratching, etc.

3. Extreme weather conditions such as rain, snow, fog and haze may affect the radar performance.

4. Due to the limitation of radar identification target characteristics, false alarms may be generated for some metal protective fences, green belts and concrete walls under rare special circumstances.

The above warnings and restrictions do not describe all situations that may interfere with FCTA. There are many factors that may cause FCTA failure. To avoid collision, the driver should keep alert and pay attention to road conditions at all times during driving so as to drive under safe conditions.

Warning

- As a driving assistance function, FCTA cannot cope with all traffic, weather and road conditions. Due to several factors, it may become invalid, improper or untimely.
- The FCTA is for information only and does not replace your visual inspection.
- FCTA is only for warning and will not stop the vehicle. Do not rely on the system to avoid collision or reduce the impact of collision.
- The driver must always pay attention to the traffic conditions and road environment, and independently decide whether to use the system while ensuring safety. The driver always bears the ultimate responsibility for driving safely and in compliance with current traffic laws and regulations.

Caution

- The instrument display is only for reference and cannot fully reflect the real traffic conditions. Please do not completely rely on the display content of the combination instrument.
- The FCTA system is a driving assistance function and does not work in all cases. The driver shall drive safely at all times.
- FCTA cannot identify all motorcycles, battery cars, tricycles or pedestrians, and may not identify animals, bicycles, other non-vehicle objects or oncoming vehicles/vehicles in the same direction.

Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA)

The RCTA system can detect vehicles, cyclists or pedestrians crossing the rear of the vehicle. When the vehicle is reversing, if the system detects a target approaching and the vehicle has a collision risk, the RCTA system will send out early warning information to avoid the danger of collision.

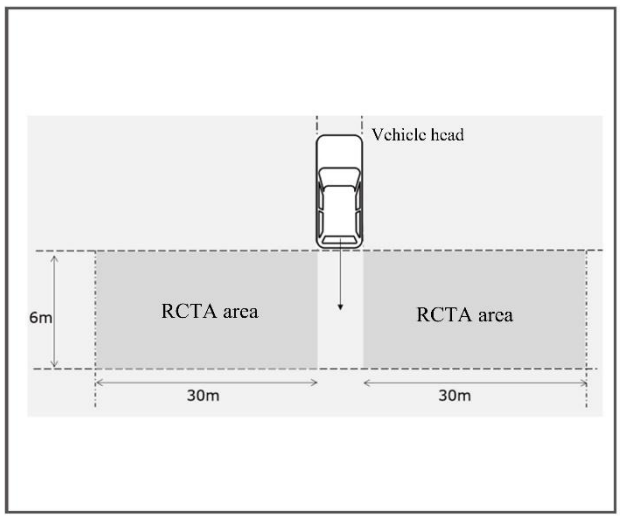
Switch settings

Sequentially navigate the multimedia display screen to access [Vehicle control] - [Intelligent driving] - [Blind spot assist] - [Rear crossing warning] switch for enabling or disabling. It is set to be on by default.

Function on

When the rear cross traffic warning switch is turned on, this function will be activated when the gearshift lever is in R position and the vehicle speed is less than or equal to 15 km/h. This function can monitor vehicles crossing behind the vehicle in real time to ensure reversing safety.

RCTA range



The alarm area of RCTA system is from 0m to 30m laterally on the left and right sides of the vehicle, and from the rear to 6m rearward, as shown in the figure. The shaded area is the warning area, which is bilaterally symmetrical.

Function alarm

When the RCTA trigger detects that there is a collision risk between vehicles crossing behind the vehicle, it will be prompted in the following ways:

1. A red arrow is displayed behind the driving interface of instrument cluster.

2. The exterior rearview mirror blind spot warning lamp flashes.

3. Intermediate frequency alarm sound.

4. All-around view/parking interface There is a red arrow behind the vehicle.

Functional limitation

There are a number of reasons that can lead to unnecessary, untimely, or ineffective warnings and missed warnings in the RCTA system, such as:

1. The radar is limited.

2. The speed of the detection object is too fast.

3. There are large and moving metal objects in the dead zone.

The following conditions may cause radar identification obstacles and affect the performance of RCTA system, including but not limited to:

1. The radar is dislocated, blocked or covered with mud, ice and snow, metal plates, tapes, labels, leaves, etc.

2. The radar or surrounding area is impacted due to vehicle collision, scratching, etc.

3. Extreme weather conditions such as rain, snow, fog and haze may affect the radar performance.

4. Due to the limitation of radar identification target characteristics, under rare special circumstances, false alarms may be generated for some metal protective fences, green belts and concrete walls.

The above warnings and restrictions do not address all situations that may interfere with RCTA. Many factors may cause the malfunction of RCTA system. To avoid collision, the driver shall keep vigilant and pay attention to road conditions at all times during driving so as to reverse safely.

Warning

- RCTA is for reference only and cannot replace safe driving and the use of interior and exterior rearview mirrors.
- As a driving assistance function, RCTA cannot cope with all traffic, weather and road conditions. Due to several factors, it may fail, be improper or not timely.
- RCTA is only for warning and will not stop the vehicle. Do not rely on the system to avoid collision or reduce the impact of collision.
- The driver must always pay attention to the traffic conditions and road environment, and independently decide whether to use the system while ensuring safety. The driver always bears the ultimate responsibility for driving safely and in compliance with current traffic laws and regulations.

Caution

- The instrument display is only for reference and cannot fully reflect the real traffic conditions. Please do not completely rely on the display content of the combination instrument.
- The RCTA system is a driver assistance function and does not work in all situations. The driver shall drive safely at all times.
- RCTA cannot identify all motorcycles, battery cars, tricycles or pedestrians, and may not identify animals, bicycles, other non-vehicle objects or oncoming vehicles/vehicles in the same direction.
- RCTA cannot identify targets in the radar blind zone, and cannot detect vehicles behind them through obstacles or parked vehicles.

Rear Collision Warning (RCW) system

Warning information is provided to remind the driver when a risk of rear-end collision due to close following of an identified target is detected during vehicle running.

Switch settings

Sequentially navigate the multimedia display screen to access [Vehicle control] - [Intelligent driving] -> [Blind spot assist] - [Rear crossing warning] switch for enabling or disabling. It is set to be on by default.

Function on

With the rear collision warning switch on, this function is activated when the vehicle is started and not in R gear.

RCW range

The RCW monitoring area is about 70 m behind the vehicle.

Function alarm

When RCW trigger detects that there is a risk of collision with the vehicle behind too close, it will be prompted in the following ways:

1. The rear mark on the driving interface of instrument cluster is displayed in red.
2. The exterior rearview mirror blind spot warning lamp flashes.
3. The hazard warning lamp illuminates.

Functional limitation

Unwanted, untimely or ineffective warnings and missed warnings from the RCW system can occur for a variety of reasons such as:

1. The radar is limited.
2. The speed of the detection object is too fast.
3. There are large and moving metal objects in the dead zone.

The following conditions may lead to radar

identification obstacles and affect the performance of RCW system, including but not limited to:

1. The radar is dislocated, blocked or covered with mud, ice and snow, metal plates, tapes, labels, leaves, etc.

2. The radar or surrounding area is impacted due to vehicle collision, scratching, etc.

3. Extreme weather conditions such as rain, snow, fog and haze may affect the radar performance.

4. Due to the limitation of radar identification target characteristics, under rare special circumstances, false alarms may be generated for some metal protective fences, green belts and concrete walls.

The above warnings and limitations are not intended to address all possible interference with the RCW. There are many factors that may cause RCW failure. To avoid collision, the driver should keep alert and pay attention to road conditions at all times during driving so as to reverse under safe conditions.

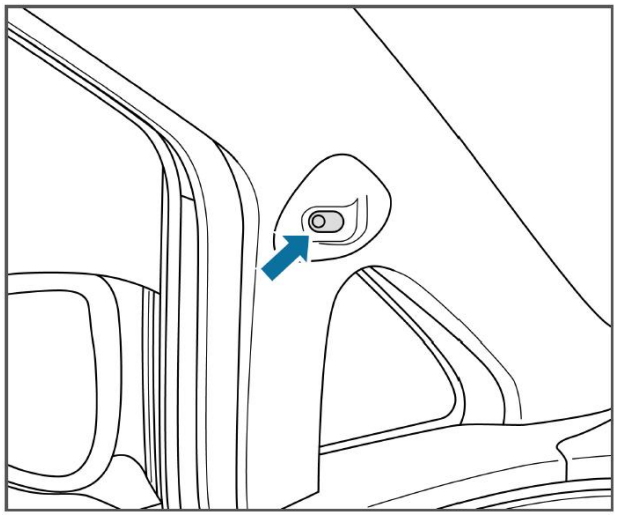
Warning

- RCW is for reference only and cannot replace safe driving and the use of interior and exterior rearview mirrors.
- As a driving assistance function, RCW cannot cope with all traffic, weather and road conditions, and may fail, be improper or not timely due to several factors.
- The RCW function does not in any way mean that the driver can sit idle and relax. Driving in a safe manner is always the driver's responsibility.

Caution

- The instrument display is only for reference and cannot fully reflect the real traffic conditions. Please do not completely rely on the display content of the instrument.
- RCW is an auxiliary driving function and does not work in all cases.
- RCW cannot identify all motorcycles, battery cars and tricycles, and may not identify pedestrians, animals, bicycles, other non-vehicle objects or oncoming vehicles/vehicles in the same direction.
- RCW cannot identify targets in the radar blind zone, and cannot detect vehicles behind them through obstacles or parked vehicles.

In-vehicle monitoring system *



The in-vehicle monitoring system senses the conditions of occupants in the vehicle through interior cameras or sensors and gives timely feedback to improve driving safety.

The main functions of the interior monitoring system include:

1. Driver monitoring.
2. Occupant monitoring.
3. Rear occupant monitoring.

Driver monitoring

The driver monitoring system monitors the driver's status and behavior characteristics through the camera in the vehicle to realize fatigue reminder and distraction reminder functions, thus improving the driving experience.

Switch settings

Sequentially navigate the multimedia display

screen to access [Vehicle control] - [Intelligent driving] - [In-vehicle monitoring] - [Fatigue monitoring] and [Distraction monitoring] switches to enable or disable driver monitoring functionality. After the function is enabled, it starts to monitor the driver status when the vehicle speed is higher than 30 km/h. The system is turned on by default.

Functional warning

Fatigue reminder

When the driver is less fatigued, only the text prompt "Please pay attention to the road conditions" will be displayed on the instrument cluster.

When the driver is severely fatigued, a message will appear on the combination instrument stating "You are driving while fatigued," and a prompt will appear on the multimedia display screen to activate the "Refresh and Alert" mode.

Distraction reminder

When the system detects that the driver is distracted, the text on the combination instrument will prompt the driver to "Please drive carefully".

Caution

- Do not install any other parts on the steering wheel to prevent the camera from being blocked. Otherwise, the real-time status of the driver may not be detected correctly.
- Do not block the interior monitoring camera on the interior rearview mirror with trims or install any other parts in front of the camera to prevent the camera from being blocked. Otherwise, the detection device may be damaged or the real-time state of the driver cannot be detected correctly.
- If the combination instrument pops up the message of "DMS system failure, relevant functions disabled", it indicates that the system fails. It is recommended to contact Dongfeng Forthing for after-sales maintenance in time.

The driver monitoring system will not record or upload any image, video, sound and other information related to the driver and passengers. The intelligent perception system relies on clear facial images, and its performance may be degraded in some cases:

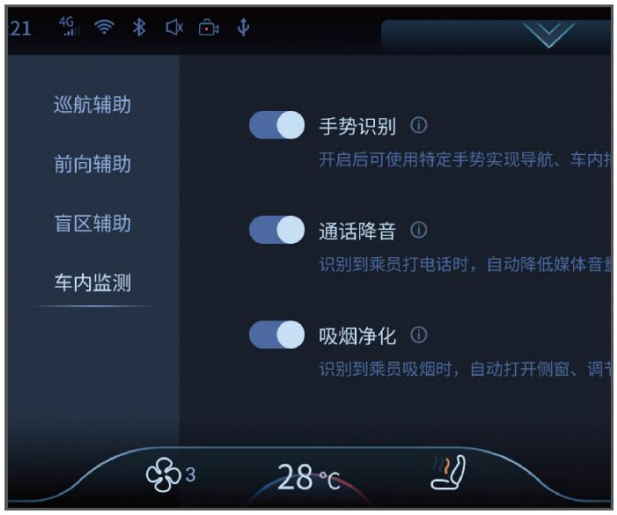
- Strong sunlight directly hits the face.
- Loss of facial monitoring due to seat or steering wheel adjustment.
- The front passenger is wearing certain sunglasses that may interfere with the infrared camera.
- The steering wheel blocks the camera during turning.

Occupant monitoring

The occupant monitoring system monitors the status and behavior characteristics of occupants

through the camera above the interior rearview mirror to realize gesture recognition, voice reduction during call, smoking purification and quiet guardianship functions, thus improving the driving experience.

Switch settings



Sequentially navigate the multimedia display screen to access [Vehicle control] - [Intelligent driving] - [In-vehicle monitoring] - [Gesture recognition]/[Voice reduction]/[Smoke purification] switches to enable or disable the corresponding features. Voice reduction and smoke purification are turned on by default.

Gesture recognition

The gesture recognition function supports three gestures: navigation to company, navigation home and photographing in the car.

Gesture description

Photographing inside the vehicle: V-shaped gesture, facing the camera directly.

Navigate to the company: Extend your thumb upward, make a fist with four fingers inward, and face the camera sideway.

Navigate home: The OK gesture is facing the camera.

Voice reduction during call

When it is detected that an occupant is making a call, the system will actively turn down the media volume and reduce the air volume of the A/C to provide a quiet communication environment for the occupant.

Smoke purification

When an occupant is detected to be smoking, the system will actively prompt to turn on the "Smoking Purification" scenario mode to provide a fresh riding environment for the occupants.

Quiet guardianship

When it is detected that any occupant is resting, the system will actively prompt to start the "silent guardian" scenario mode to provide a quiet rest environment for occupants.

Rear passenger monitoring

After the vehicle is shut down and locked, the interior sensor detects the middle and rear rows. If vital signs of people or animals are detected, the vehicle will send out alarm information to remind the driver to ensure the safety of passengers or pets.

Switch settings

Sequentially navigate the multimedia display screen to access [Vehicle control] - [Intelligent driving] - [In-vehicle monitoring] - [Rear passenger monitoring] switch for enabling or disabling. This switch defaults to the last operation state.

Functional warning

Level 1 alarm: When the vehicle detects that there are passengers left in the vehicle, the mobile phone will remind the driver.

Level 2 alarm: When the vehicle detects that there are occupants left in the vehicle, after the mobile phone reminds the driver of no operation, the vehicle will honk and flash to give an alarm.

The current alarm can be turned off by unlocking the door or operating the mobile APP.

Warning

- The rear occupant monitoring function may not be able to accurately detect organisms that are too small.
- The rear occupant monitoring function is an auxiliary reminder tool, and it is not responsible for casualties caused by passengers or animals left in the vehicle. Please confirm the situation in the vehicle before leaving.
- Please pay attention to the surrounding network environment of the vehicle. Limited network (for example, when the vehicle is parked in an underground parking lot) may cause failure or delay in sending alarm information and failure to execute remote instructions smoothly.

Warning

- Obstructions or moving objects will interfere with the normal operation of the sensor, which may affect the timeliness and accuracy of system detection.

Regular maintenance

Daily inspection items

Item	Inspection Contents
Engine oil level	The engine oil level should be checked at each refueling.
Engine coolant level	The coolant level should be checked at each refueling.
Power battery coolant level	During daily maintenance, check the coolant expansion tank level, which shall not be lower than the min mark.
Brake pedal	Check the brake pedal for its maneuverability before driving each time.
Horn	Check whether the horn is normal before driving each time.
Door	Check if the trunk lid and all other doors (including rear doors) can be opened/closed freely and locked firmly.
Air-conditioning system	The operation of the air conditioning unit shall be checked weekly.
Washing liquid	The stock of washing liquid should be checked once a month.
Wiper	Check the wiper once a month.
Brakes	Check the brake fluid level once a month.
Tire	Check the tire pressure once a month. Check the tread for wear and foreign matters.
12V LV battery	Check the condition of 12V LV battery and the corrosion of terminals once a month.
Front windshield defrosting device	Check the air outlet of defroster every month when using the heating device and the A/C.
Lights	Check the condition of headlamps, clearance lights, tail lamps, high-mounted brake lamps, and license plate lights once a month.

Cleaning and maintenance

Exterior maintenance

Regular and professional maintenance can keep the vehicle in good condition. The following will describe how to keep the appearance of the vehicle clean, including car washing, paint, polishing and wheel cleaning, as well as anti-corrosion measures.

Vehicle washing

Frequent washing helps to preserve the appearance of vehicle. Dust and grit will scratch the paint surface, and leaves and bird droppings will permanently damage the surface finish of the vehicle body. It is recommended to clean the vehicle body in a cool place.

Use only solvents and cleaning agents recommended in the *User Manual*. As drying the vehicle, check it for chips or scratches. If found, repair it with touch-up paint.

Caution

- Using chemical solvents and strong detergents when cleaning the vehicle will damage the paint, metal and plastic parts of the vehicle body. It is recommended to wash the vehicle thoroughly with cool water to remove floating dust.
- Check the vehicle body for asphalt, leaves and other dirt. Remove such dirt with asphalt scavenger or turpentine, and then wash it immediately with clean water to avoid damaging the surface finish of the vehicle body.
- After cleaning the entire body surface, wipe it dry with a soft towel. Natural drying in the air will cause loss of luster or formation of water stains on the exterior of the vehicle body.

Waxing

Vehicle waxing is helpful to prevent adhesion of dust and chemicals on the road. Wax the vehicle only after it is washed and wiped dry. Wax the vehicle at least once every three months to protect the body. Please use high quality liquid wax or paste wax. When using, please refer to the instructions on the package.

There are generally two types of products:

Body wax

Body wax is a kind of wax applied on the paint surface to protect it from sunlight, air pollution and other damages. It is recommended to wax the vehicle body after the new vehicle is used for about half a year.

Polishing wax

Polishing wax can repair the paint that has been oxidized or lost its gloss, making it glossy again. Such waxes generally contain soft abrasives and solvents to remove oxidized paint surfaces. If the original gloss cannot be restored after the body wax is applied, polishing wax shall be applied.

Caution

When the cleaning agent is used to remove pollutants

Caution

like asphalt and insect, dewaxing may occur. Therefore, it is necessary to replenish wax in the dewaxing position.

Refinishing

Small cracks and scratches on the paint coating shall be repaired immediately with a special repair film or repair paint to prevent corrosion.

Aluminum alloy wheel

When cleaning the vehicle body, clean the aluminum alloy wheels at the same time. A transparent protective coat is painted on these wheels to prevent causing corrosion and rust of aluminum. The use of inferior chemicals or hard brushes will damage this protection. Only use neutral detergent and soft brush or sponge to clean the wheels. After cleaning, rinse the aluminum alloy wheel thoroughly with water.

Front compartment gutter channel

The engine compartment drip rail is located in front of the front windshield and below the wiper cover. It is a very important water passage structure at the front part of the vehicle.

Check the drainage condition of the front compartment gutter channel every 5,000 km, and try to ensure that the wiper cover plate is clean and tidy, so as to avoid damage to relevant electrical equipment caused by blockage or water accumulation in the gutter channel. If blockage and water accumulation are found, please contact Dongfeng Forthing

authorized service station.

Vehicle sealing strip

The sealing strip is a rubber sealing part installed on the door or vehicle body. It is one of the parts that ensure the waterproof sealing of the door and belongs to other parts.

During the use of the vehicle, the surface of the sealing strip shall be cleaned in time to avoid excessive wear caused by gravel or hard particles on the surface of the sealing strip. Please contact Dongfeng Forthing authorized service station in time when the warranty period of parts expires, or if wear and damage are found on the surface of sealing strip.

Interior maintenance

Carpet

The dust on the carpet should often be cleaned by a vacuum cleaner. Excessive dust accumulation will accelerate the damage of the carpet. Regularly washing carpets with detergent will keep them in better condition.

Fabric

The dust and dirt on the textile fabrics would often be cleaned by a vacuum cleaner. Wash with low-temperature neutral soapy water and dry in the air.

Vinylon

Use a dust collector to remove the dust and pollutants. Scrub the vinylon with a soft cloth soaked in neutral soapy water to remove stains that are difficult to remove, or use a spray or foam type vinylon cleaner.

Leather

Frequently use a vacuum cleaner to remove dust and dirt from the leather, especially at wrinkles and joints. Clean the leather with a soft cloth dipped in clean water, and then wipe it dry with another soft dry cloth. If further cleaning is required, special soap for leather can be used.

Window

Use the glass detergent to clean both interior and exterior sides of the windows. Dry all glass and plastic surfaces with a soft cloth or paper towel.

Seat belts

If the seat belts are dirty, use a soft brush with neutral warm soapy water to wipe the seat belts clean. Do not use bleaching powder, dye or cleaning solvent as they will reduce the durability of seat belts. Do not use the seat belt before it is dry.

Too much dust accumulated at the loop at the seat belt outlet will lead to slow contraction of the seat belt. The inner side of the loop can be scrubbed with a clean soft cloth dipped in neutral warm soapy water or isopropyl alcohol. It is not recommended to disassemble the seat belt for cleaning. If the seat belt must be disassembled before cleaning, please contact an authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing.

Air freshener

If you need to use air freshener or deodorant inside the vehicle, it is recommended to choose solid type. Some liquid air fresheners contain chemical components that will cause fiber breakage or fading of interior trim and braided fabric.

If using liquid air freshener, ensure it is securely fastened to prevent splashing while driving.

Corrosion resistance

Salt, dirt and moisture can easily accumulate under the vehicle. Scraping off the vehicle paint or

wearing off by stones and sand grains will cause the metal to lose its protection and be exposed, thus causing the vehicle to rust. Common measures to prevent rusting include:

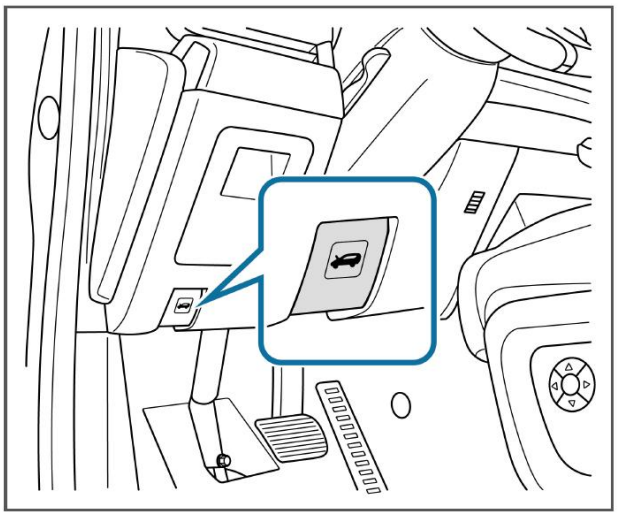
1. Keep the vehicle clean.
2. Keep the garage dry.
3. Keep the paintwork and decorations in good condition.
4. Carry out regular interior maintenance, etc.

Self-service maintenance

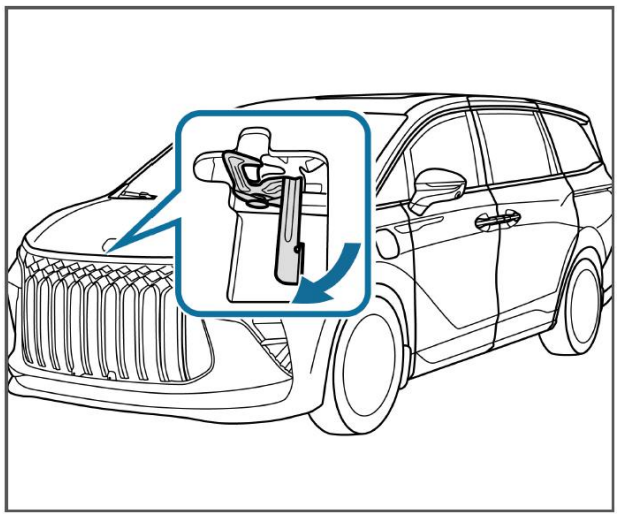
After driving each time, make the engine run at idle speed for 1 ~ 3 minutes and then shut it down to fully cool the engine and prolong its service life. After the engine is started for the first time, it will automatically warm up to lubricate the running parts of the engine. After the water temperature is appropriate, the engine speed can be changed according to the driving requirements. It is recommended to keep a gentle driving habit when driving.

Open and close the engine hood

Open the engine hood

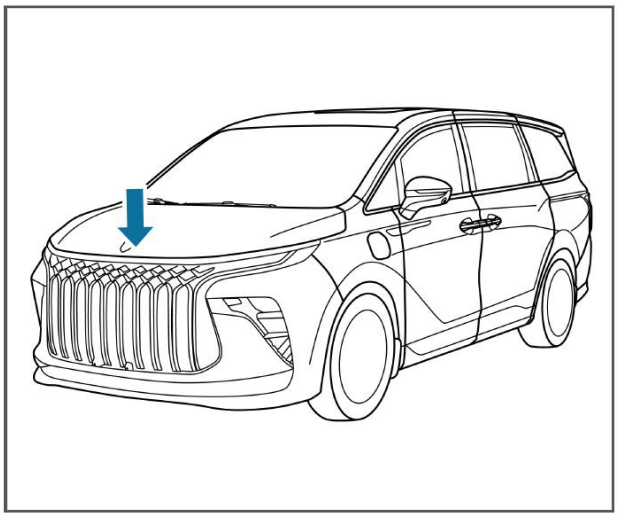


1. Park the vehicle and pull up the EPB switch.
2. Pull the engine hood opening handle at the lower left side of the instrument panel, and the engine hood will pop up slightly.



3.Pull the safety lock lever to the left and lift the engine hood.

Close the engine hood



Pull down the engine hood to a height of about 30 cm from the closing position, and then push it down to close and confirm that it is locked in place. If it is not locked in place, please press the middle part of the front end of the engine hood until it is fully closed.

Caution

- Make sure that the wipers are retracted before opening the engine hood.
- If gas comes out of the engine hood, please do not open it to avoid injury.

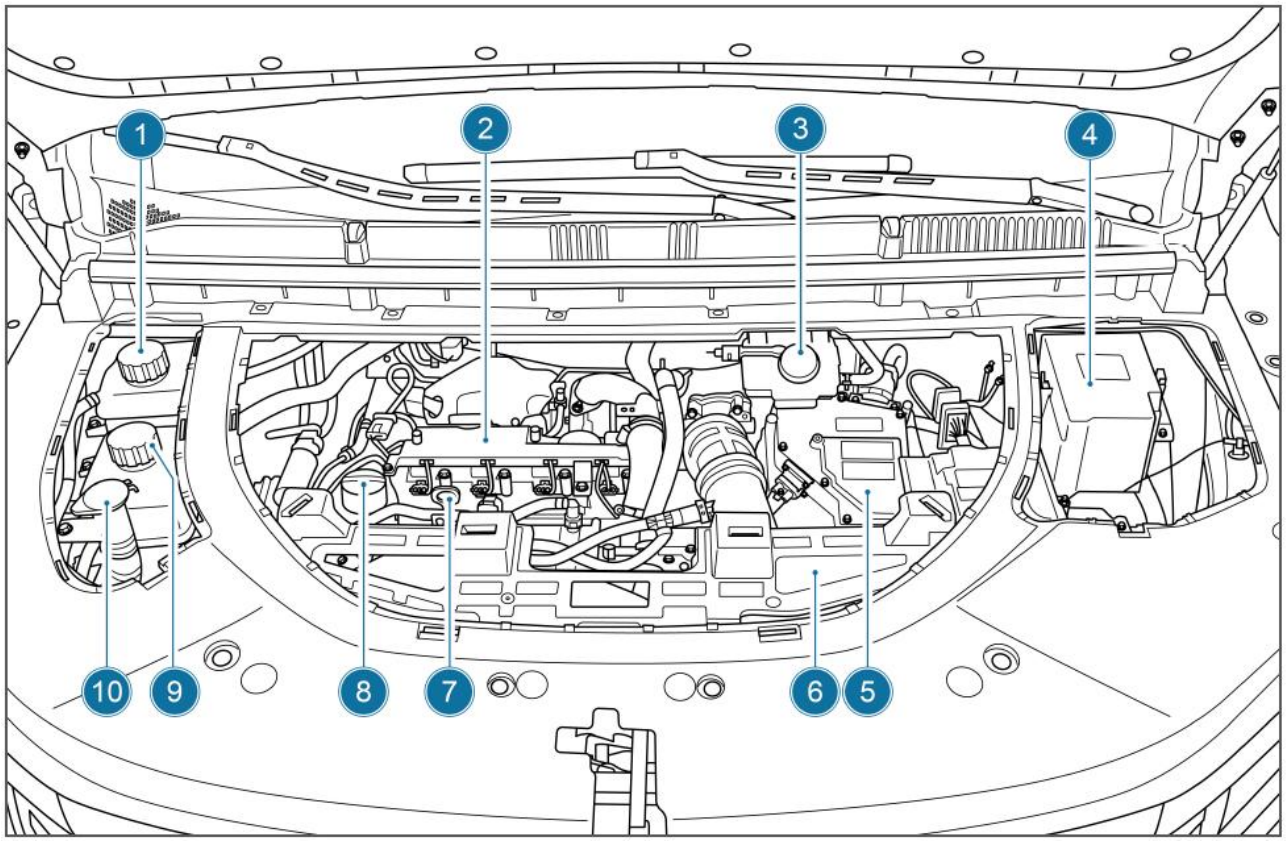
Warning

Before driving, make sure that the engine hood is locked.

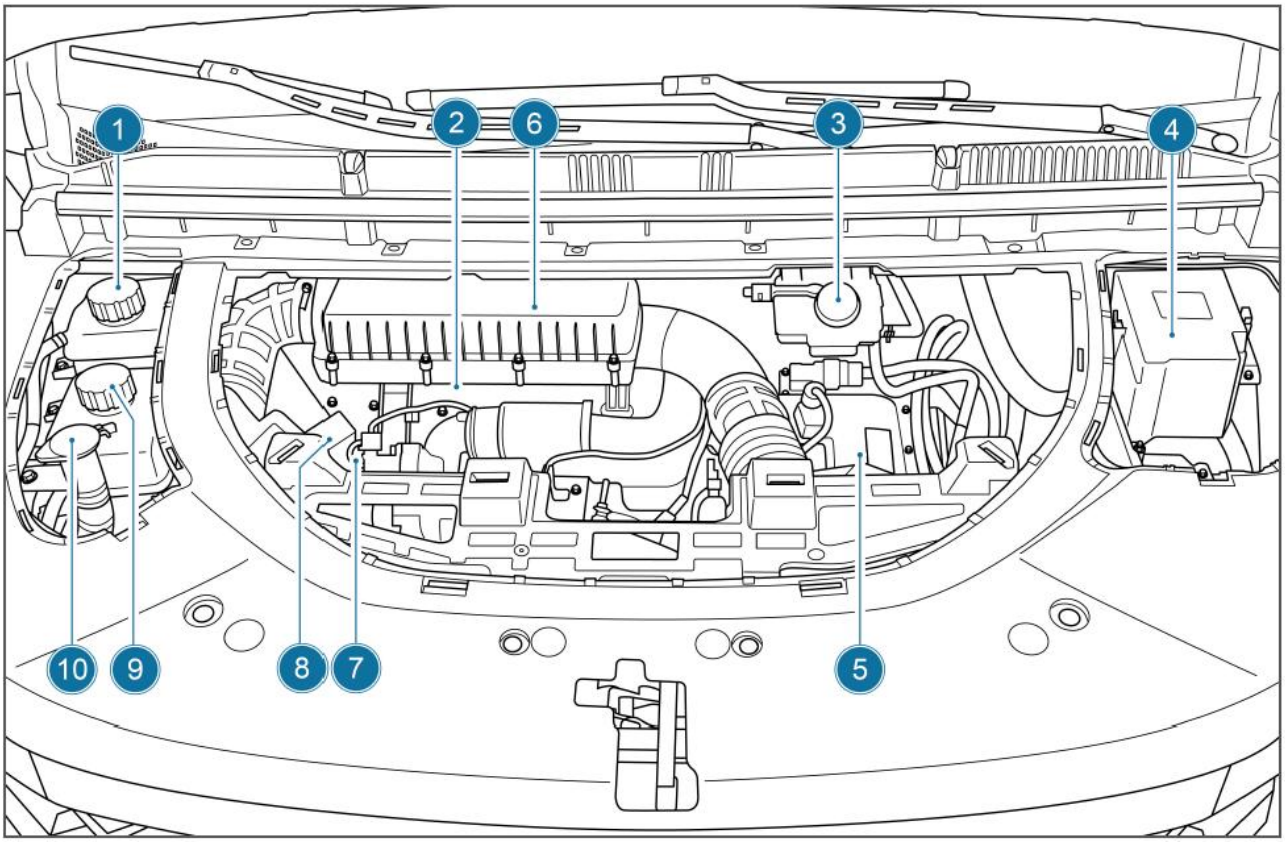
Layout of the engine compartment

The picture is for reference only, and the actual vehicle shall prevail.

PHEV model



HEV model



1. Intercooler circuit, motor controller and three-in-one circuit coolant reservoir
2. ENGINE
3. Brake fluid reservoir
4. Engine compartment fuse box
5. Motor controller (MTCU)
6. Air filter/air cleaner
7. Oil dipstick
8. Oil filler cap
9. Engine and heater circuit coolant reservoir
10. Washer fluid reservoir

Engine oil

Oil selection

Please select the engine oil suitable for your vehicle.

Engine model	Oil grade	Filling amount
4E15T	SN 5W-30 or SP 5W-30	4L
DFMC15TE3	SP 0W-20	4L

This vehicle does not require any oil additives. Additives do not improve the performance of the engine.

Caution

Dongfeng Liuzhou Motor Co., Ltd. will not bear any responsibility for the adverse consequences of the engine caused by the use of additives.

Technical requirements for lubricating oil of China VI vehicles equipped with GPF (gasoline particulate filter)

The main function of GPF is to filter the particulate matter in the tail gas and reduce the concentration and quantity of particulate matter in the tail gas.

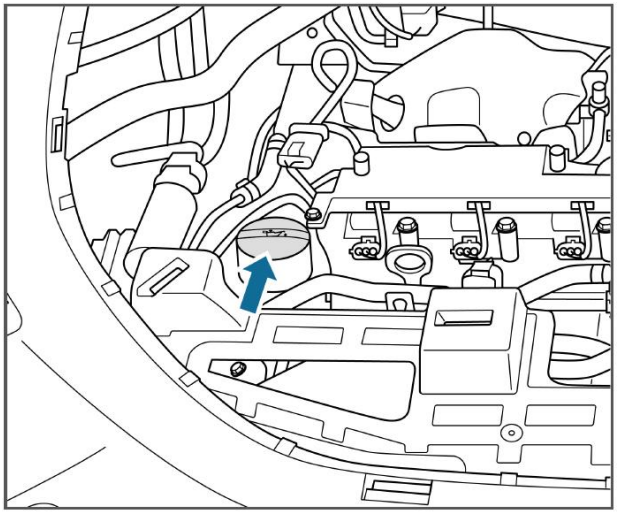
With the increase of service time, more and more particulate matters will be collected by GPF. When they accumulate to a certain extent, the GPF will be blocked, resulting in poor exhaust and affecting engine power.

In the process of engine lubrication, some lubricating oil will enter the combustion chamber to be burned and enter emission treatment devices such as three-way catalytic converter and GPF along with engine exhaust. As the ash formed after lubricating oil combustion is a metal salt substance that cannot be removed by regeneration, it gradually accumulates in the GPF, thus causing GPF blockage.

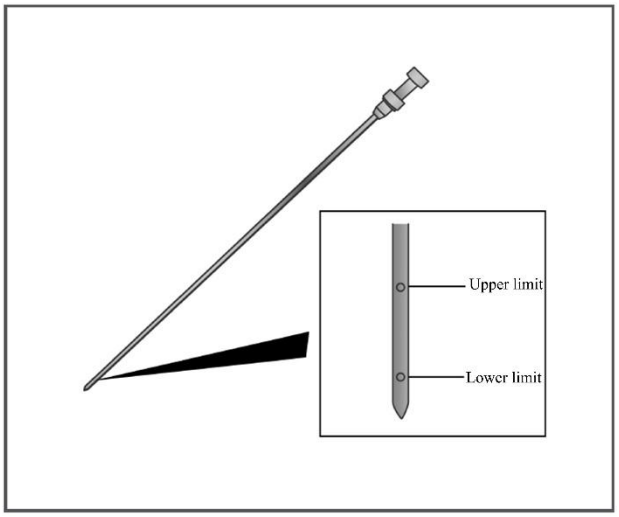
The formation of ash content is closely related to the lubricant additives. In order to reduce ash content, low-ash and high-grade engine oil shall be used. Dongfeng Forthing special "Unified Petrochemical Low Ash SP 5W-30(LA) or Castrol SP 0W-20" engine oil has low ash content, which can effectively reduce GPF blockage, ensure normal and effective operation of the engine, thus reducing maintenance costs.

Inspection of engine oil level

Engine oil is a consumable to ensure the normal operation of the engine, and its liquid level should be checked regularly. For example, before each long-distance trip, park the vehicle on a flat road, warm up the engine for several minutes and then shut down the vehicle. Wait for about 5 minutes and then check the engine oil level. Remove the engine hood trim panel before inspection.



1. Shut down the vehicle.
2. Remove the engine compartment trim panel.
3. Take out the oil dipstick.



4.Wipe the dipstick clean with a piece of clean cloth or paper towel.

5.Insert the oil level indicator back into the pipe sleeve.

6. Take out the oil dipstick again and check the engine oil level. The fluid level must be between the upper limit (MAX) and the lower limit (MIN) marks. If it is lower than the MIN mark, replenish the engine oil in time to make the oil level within the normal range.

Warning

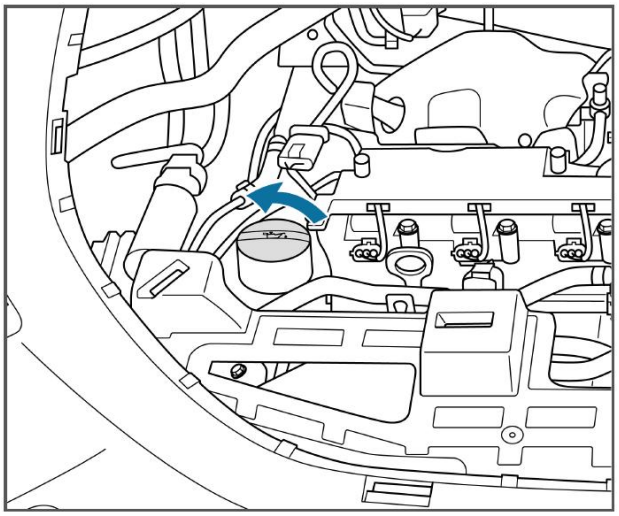
- Check the engine oil level frequently. Damage to

Warning

the engine due to insufficient engine oil is not covered by the warranty.

- Be sure to change the engine oil and oil filter element regularly according to the maintenance regulations.

Engine oil replenishment



1. Unscrew the engine oil filler cap and replenish engine oil.

2. Install the engine oil filler cap and tighten it. Warm up the engine for a few minutes and then shut down the vehicle. After about 5 minutes, check the engine oil level on the oil dipstick again.

Replacement of oil

Engine oil plays an important role in the operation and service life of engine. Please contact an authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing for engine oil replacement.

Caution

- Engine oil shall be poured slowly to avoid overflow. In case of spillage, clean it up immediately to avoid damage to the engine.
- If the skin accidentally contacts the engine oil, it must be thoroughly cleaned.

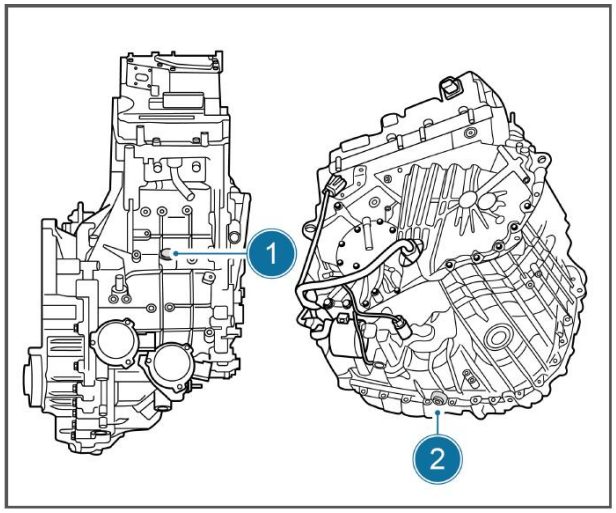
Warning

- Please use the engine oil specified by Dongfeng Forthing.
- In any case, the engine oil level shall not exceed the upper limit of the dipstick; otherwise, it may cause combustion of oil in the catalytic purifier, damage the catalytic purifier and result in carbon deposition on spark plug.

Warning

- Please dispose the used engine oil according to the relevant environmental protection law.

Reducer lubricating oil



1. Fuel filler

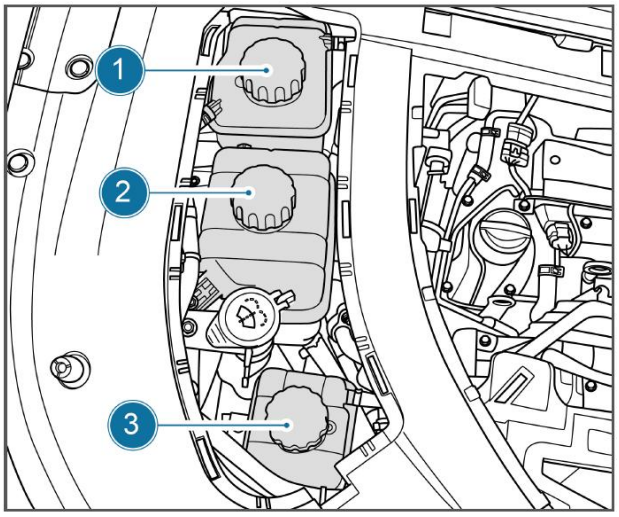
2. Oil drain hole

The lubricating oil in the reducer shall be replaced as required. During replacement, all the oil in the reducer shall be drained and then new lubricating oil shall be injected.

Please select the reducer lubricating oil suitable for the vehicle. For specific specifications and filling amount, please refer to "Vehicle Specifications".

Drive system coolant

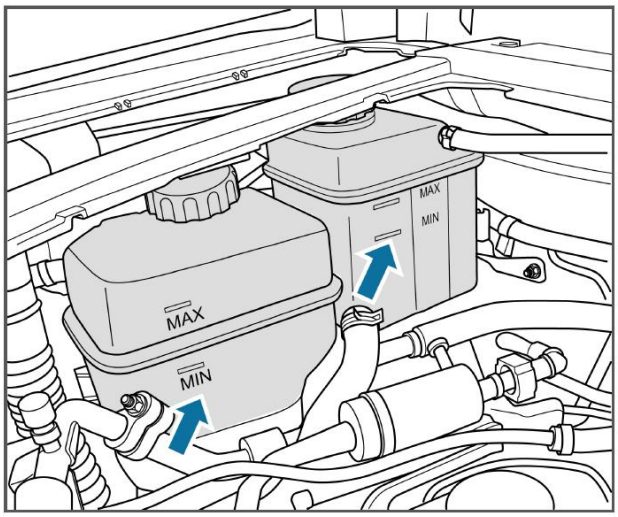
Inspection of coolant level



1. Intercooler circuit, motor controller and three-in-one circuit coolant reservoir

2. Engine and heater circuit coolant reservoir

3. Power battery coolant reservoir



Check whether the coolant level is between the upper limit (MAX) and the lower limit (MIN) scale marks. If it is lower than the lower limit, add coolant to the coolant storage tank to the position near the upper limit.

Coolant refilling

Open the cover of the coolant storage tank to add coolant, and tighten the cover after adding.

Warning

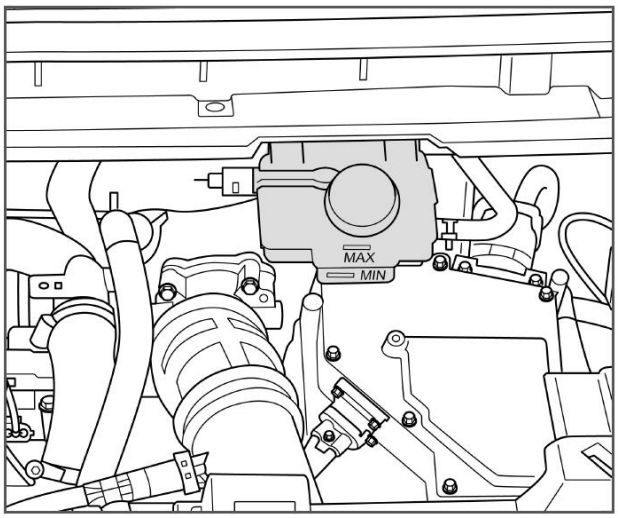
- Please use the all-season antifreeze coolant specified by Dongfeng Forthing.
- Do not add any antirust agents or other additives into the cooling system, because this kind of behavior may corrode and damage the engine components and parts.
- Do not replace the all-season antifreeze coolant with a different brand of coolant or water. Otherwise, it is prone to chemical reactions, affecting the service life of the engine.
- Wipe off the overflowing coolant in time; otherwise, parts and components in the engine hood may be damaged.
- Dongfeng Liuzhou Motor Co., Ltd. will not assume any responsibility for water tank blockage and other damages caused by the use of tap water or coolant not specified by it.
- Be sure to confirm that the engine and radiator have completely cooled down before opening the coolant reservoir cap; otherwise, the coolant may spray out, causing serious scald.

Replacement of coolant

Under normal circumstances, the coolant needs to be replaced every 2 years or 40,000 km, whichever comes first.

Brake fluid

Inspection of brake fluid level



1. Check the fluid level in the reservoir once a month.

2. The fluid level should be between the lower limit (MIN) and upper limit (MAX) marks on the wall of fluid reservoir. If the fluid level is at or below the MIN mark, please contact an authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing Automobile Co., Ltd. for inspection in time.

Replacement of brake fluid

Brake fluid will absorb moisture in the air. Excessively high water content will cause corrosion and damage to the brake system, and the boiling point of brake fluid will also drop significantly. Replace brake fluid in time as required by the regular maintenance schedule. Please contact an authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing for brake fluid replacement.

Caution

The brake fluid is corrosive and shall not be allowed to contact with the vehicle paint. Once it spills onto the vehicle paint, wash it with plenty of water.

Warning

- Be sure to use the brake fluid designated by Dongfeng Forthing or DOT4 products of the same grade packaged in closed containers approved by Dongfeng Forthing. Do not mix different brake fluids.
- Please do not mix the brake fluid with the fluid containing mineral oil, as the mineral oil will damage the seals and sealing plugs of the brake rigging.

Warning

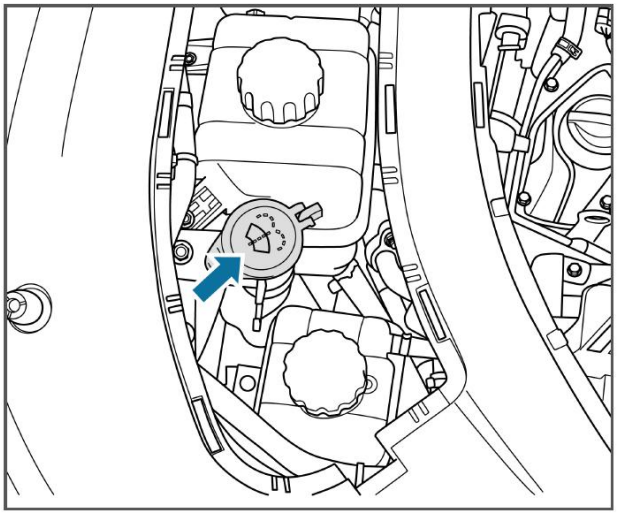
- The brake fluid is toxic and should be kept out of the reach of children. Once swallowed by mistake, go to the hospital immediately for examination.
- Brake fluid will damage the skin. If it is accidentally splashed into the skin or eyes, wash with plenty of clean water. If you feel uncomfortable, go to the hospital immediately for examination.

Maintenance and technical requirements of brake fluid

1. The brake fluid shall be replaced every 2 years or 40,000 km, whichever comes first.

2. The technical requirements of brake fluid shall comply with the relevant provisions of GB 12981.

Inspection of glass washer fluid

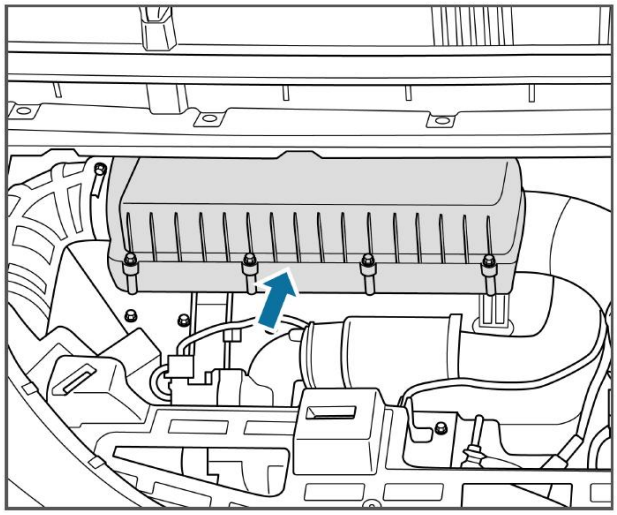


1. Check whether there is enough washing liquid in the fluid reservoir of windshield washer at least once a month.

2. If water is not sprayed when the wiper spraying function is activated, it indicates that the windshield washer fluid is insufficient. Add high-quality washing fluid which can improve cleaning ability and prevent freezing in cold weather.

3. If alcohol-based cleaning solution is used, the ethanol content of the cleaning solution shall not be higher than 24%.

Air filter



The air filter is an important component to prevent air dust from entering the cylinder and causing abnormal wear of the cylinder block. It should be replaced according to the time and mileage specified in the regular maintenance table.

Caution

- Improper installation or unqualified air filter will cause abnormal wear of the cylinder block.
- It is recommended to clean and replace the air filter element at an authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing.

Fuel filter

The fuel filter is an important component to stabilize the fuel pressure and prevent impurities in the fuel from blocking the fuel injector. The fuel filter should be replaced according to the time and mileage specified in the regular maintenance schedule. It is recommended to replace the fuel filter every 3 years or 60,000 km, or when the fuel is contaminated. If the vehicle is driven in a dusty area, the filter will be more likely to be blocked. Please shorten the replacement cycle appropriately. If you need to replace the fuel filter, please contact an authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing.

A/C filter

The A/C filter can remove pollen and dust brought in by the A/C system from the outside.

The A/C filter must be replaced at regular maintenance every 2 years or 20,000 km.

Replacement of A/C filter

The A/C filter is located in the glove box.

1. Open the glove box, squeeze the left and right sides of the glove box to disengage the tabs on both sides, and pull out the glove box.

2. Squeeze the upper and lower sides of A/C filter to disengage the tabs on both sides, and remove the filter.

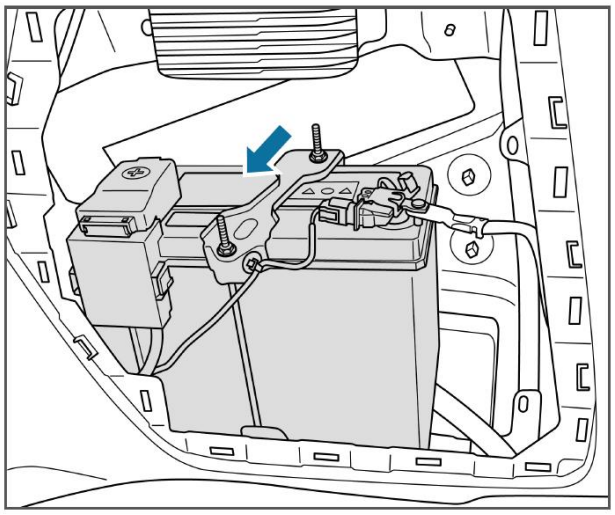
3. Insert a new A/C filter.

4. Close the glove box.

Caution

- In months when the A/C is not used for a long time or in cold weather, it should be turned on at least once every two weeks for at least 5 minutes each time. This is to prevent the lubrication of parts inside the compressor from deteriorating, so as to keep the air conditioner in the best operating state.
- If you often drive in areas with heavy smoke, the replacement cycle of the filter shall be shortened.

12V LV battery



This vehicle is equipped with a maintenance-free 12V low voltage battery, which is located on the right longitudinal beam of the trunk. The battery is mainly used to provide electric energy for vehicle starting and onboard electrical appliances. If the 12V LV battery is seriously lack of power, it will cause the vehicle to fail to start.

Usage and precaution

1. Do not turn on the lamps, audio system, wipers and other electrical appliances for a long time after the vehicle stops.

2. If the vehicle needs to be parked for more than five days, it is recommended to unplug the negative terminal of 12V LV battery to prevent on-board electrical appliances from consuming power of 12V LV battery.

3. When leaving the vehicle, pay attention to whether the lights, audio, air conditioner and other electrical appliances have been turned off.

4. The 12V LV battery shall be checked once a month. Check the terminals for corrosion (white or yellowish powder). In case of corrosion, please contact an authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing.

Emergency treatment for contacting electrolyte

The electrolyte of 12V LV battery is highly corrosive and toxic. In case of accidental contact, please handle it as follows:

Eye contact: Rinse with water in a cup or other container for at least 15 minutes and seek medical advice immediately.

Skin exposure: Take off contaminated clothes, wash skin with plenty of water and seek medical advice immediately.

Drink electrolyte by mistake: Drink water or milk and seek medical advice immediately.

Warning

- Do not add other electrical equipment to the vehicle without permission.
- If it is necessary to connect the 12V LV battery to other chargers, disconnect the positive and negative cables to avoid damaging the electrical equipment on the vehicle. Disconnect the negative cable first. When reinstalling, connect the positive cable first and then the negative cable.
- When the vehicle is running normally, the 12V LV battery will produce explosive hydrogen. Sparks or open flames will cause the 12V LV battery to explode, and its explosion energy is enough to cause serious injury. Please avoid driving in a nearby place with sparks and open flames.

Tire

In order to drive the vehicle safely, the model and size of the tires must be suitable, and the tires must have good tread pattern and appropriate tire pressure.

Caution

- Using tires with excessive wear or insufficient tire pressure will cause accidents and personal injuries.
- All instructions on tire inflation and maintenance in this *User Manual* must be followed.

Tire pressure label

Tire pressure 轮胎气压		
225/55R18,245/45R19		
No-load 空载	Front wheel 前轮	250kPa (2.5kgf/cm²)
	Rear wheel 后轮	250kPa (2.5kgf/cm²)
Full-load 满载	Front wheel 前轮	250kPa (2.5kgf/cm²)
	Rear wheel 后轮	280kPa (2.8kgf/cm²)
Caution:It is strictly requested to inflate as the above requirement. 警告：必须严格按照上表要求对轮胎进行充气。		

Specifications of wheels and tires

Rim specifications: 18×6.5J, 19×7.5J

Tire specification: 225/55 R18, 245/45 R19

The tire size suitable for this vehicle shall be subject to the tire nameplate attached below the driver's door frame. If the tire nameplate is stained or damaged, please contact an authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing.

Tire pressure

Maintaining proper tire pressure can make the vehicle maneuverability, tread life and riding comfort reach the best state.

1. It is recommended to visually check the tires before driving each time.

2. If necessary, inflate or deflate the tire so that the tire pressure reaches the cold tire pressure recommended on the label.

3. Check tire pressure when the tire is in hot state (after vehicle running for several kilometers). The pressure reading will be 30~40 kPa higher than that in cold state. This is a normal phenomenon. Do not deflate air with specified tire pressure in cold state; otherwise, under-inflation of tires will be caused.

4. Uneven wear of underinflated tires will affect maneuverability and increase fuel consumption.

5. Over-inflated tires will reduce the riding comfort and are more likely to be damaged due to uneven road surface, resulting in uneven wear of tires.

Tire pressure monitoring system

The tire pressure monitoring system is used to dynamically monitor the tire pressure and temperature. In case of any abnormality in the tire pressure, the combination instrument will display corresponding alarm information (see "Warning Lamp" in Chapter IV "Instrument") to remind the driver.

1. There is no need to re-match the tire pressure sensor for installation and removal of tires.

2. After deflation or inflation, the tire pressure information interface will update the data only after the vehicle runs at a speed above 30 km/h for 1 min.

Caution

- When the tire pressure is normal, the tire pressure indicator on the combination instrument displays "--", and when the designated tire lights up, it indicates that there is a fault in the tire pressure monitoring system. Please contact an Dongfeng Forthing authorized service station in time.
- If the tire position is changed, re-match the tire pressure. Please contact an authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing.

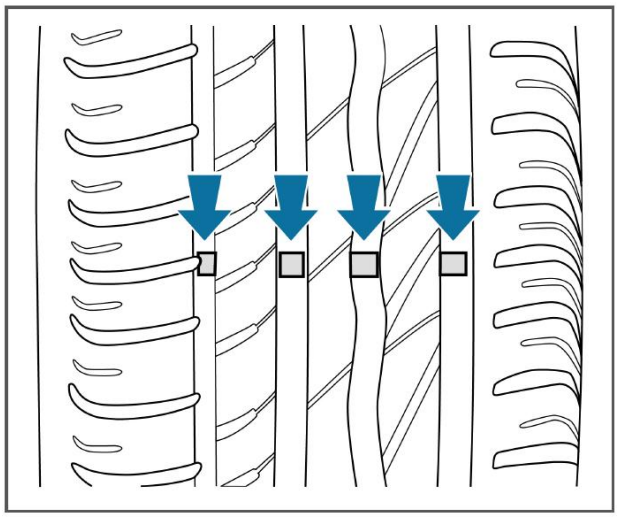
Tire inspection

Every time when checking the inflation state of the tire, check whether the tire is damaged, punctured by foreign matters and worn. Specific inspections are as follows:

1. Damage or bulge of tire tread or side surface
If any of the conditions is found, replace the tire.

2. Scratches, cracks or breaks on the tire side. If the tire fabrics or cords are exposed, replace the tire.

3. The tire shall be replaced if the tread is excessively worn.



The tire must be kept in good condition, and the tread pattern on the tire surface shall be deep enough. The tire wear degree can be measured by the raised points in the tire driving belt. If the tread thickness is less than 1.6 mm, the tire must be replaced. Such tire lacks adhesion when driving on a slippery road.

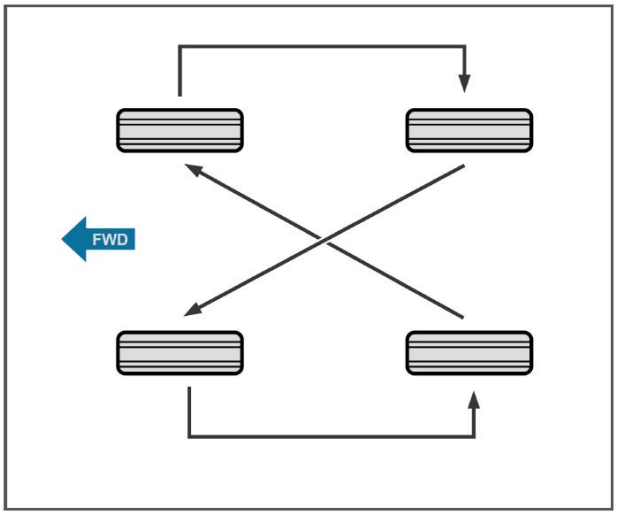
Tire maintenance

In addition to maintaining proper tire pressure, correct wheel alignment is also conducive to reducing tread wear. If you find that the tires are worn unevenly or you feel some continuous vibration during driving, please contact an authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing.

If oil stain is found on the tire surface, clean it immediately. If hard objects such as stones are found to be clamped on the tire, clean them immediately.

As long as the tire has been removed from the rim, be sure to carry out tire balancing when installing the tire, so as to increase the riding comfort and prolong the service life of the tire.

Tire rotation



In order to make tires wear evenly and prolong their service life, the tire positions should be exchanged once every 10,000 km as shown in the figure above.

Replacement of tire

Tires that meet the specifications and use requirements of this vehicle must be replaced.

Winter tire: As the applicability of summer tires is limited when they are used in winter, it is recommended to use winter tires of the same brand for all four wheels during replacement on icy and snowy roads. If winter tires with a lower rated speed are selected, do not exceed the maximum rated speed of the tire during driving.

Replacement of rim

The rim must be replaced with a new one of the same specification as that of the original vehicle. Before replacing the rim, please contact an authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing.

Caution

- Do not use radial tires and diagonal ply tires together; otherwise, the braking capacity, driving force and steering accuracy of the vehicle will be reduced.
- Be sure to use tires with the same size as the original ones. Otherwise, wheel speed will be affected, uncoordinated system action and malfunction of ABS may occur.
- If it is necessary to replace tires, it is recommended to replace two front tires or rear tires in pairs. If necessary, replace four tires at the same time. Do not replace only one tire; otherwise, the maneuverability of the vehicle will be seriously affected.

Tire chain

Snow anti-skid chains can only be used in emergency situations or when driving through specific areas expressly stipulated by law.

Snow antiskid chains should be installed on at least two driving wheels at the same time. It is forbidden to install tire chains on only one front or rear wheel. Do not install tire chains on one side of two left wheels or two right wheels. For specific installation precautions, please follow the instructions of the tire chain manufacturer. The suggestions provided in this manual are for reference only. The actual installation shall be subject to the communication result between the vehicle owner and the tire chain manufacturer.

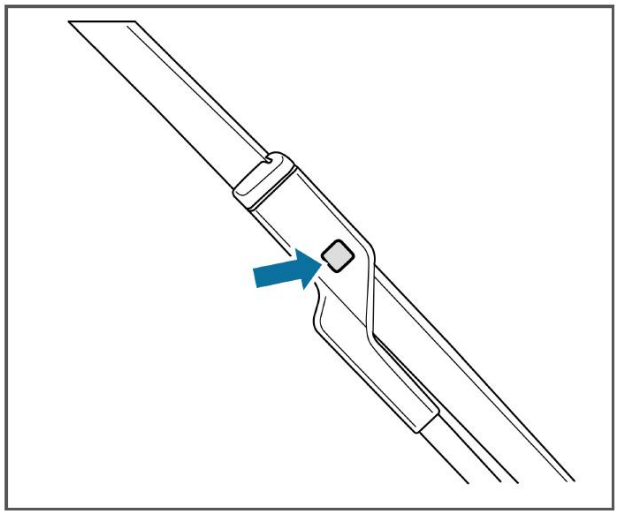
Antiskid chains that match the vehicle tires should be selected. After antiskid chains are installed, the maneuverability of the vehicle is poor. Drive at a low speed and avoid full load. Please read the component assembly drawing and other instructions of the tire chain manufacturer carefully.

Wiper

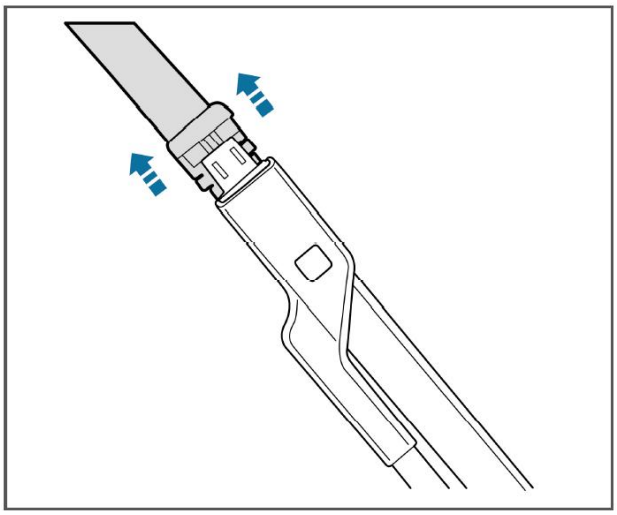
Wiper maintenance mode

When the Start/Stop switch is turned to "OFF" position, pull the wiper control handle upwards, and the front wiper will stop at a position close to the maximum height, which is convenient for maintenance and repair of the wiper blade. When the Start switch is put to "ON" position again, the front wiper will return automatically.

Replacement of front wiper blade



1.After the wiper maintenance mode is activated, pull up the wiper arm and press the wiper blade release button.



2. Pull out the wiper blade along the opening direction of wiper rod, and remove the wiper blade.

3. Install the new wiper blade in reverse order.

Caution

- Do not open the engine hood when wiper arms are pulled up; otherwise, the engine hood or wiper arms may be damaged.
- Make sure that the wiper blade is correctly installed in place.

Warning

When checking and cleaning the rain sensor area or replacing or repairing the wiper, please turn off the automatic wiping function to avoid personal injury.

Long-term parking of vehicles

If the vehicle needs to be parked for a long time, it is recommended to park the vehicle indoors and take the following measures. Appropriate measures can prevent deterioration of the vehicle condition and make it easy to restart the vehicle.

1. Add fuel and replace engine oil and filter.

2. Clean the interior of the vehicle and make sure that the carpet, mat, etc. are completely dry.

3.Plug the rear wheels with bricks or similar obstacles.

4.Jack up the vehicle body with a jack support so that the tires are off the ground.

5. Disconnect the battery negative cable.

6. Place a piece of towel or cloth under the wiper blade so that it does not contact with front windshield.

7. To reduce sticking, spray silicone lubricant on all doors and trunk sealing strips, and apply vehicle body wax to the painted surface where it contacts with door and trunk sealing strip.

8. Cover the vehicle body with breathable covering made of "porous material" such as cotton cloth. Non-porous materials such as plastic cloth will accumulate water vapor and damage the body surface paint.

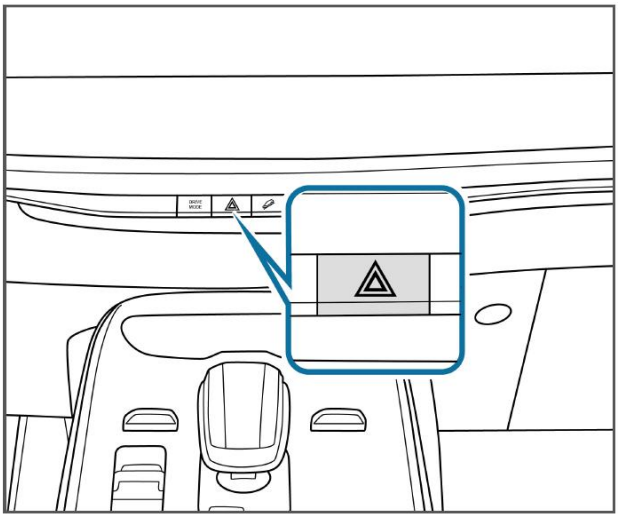
9. If possible, start the vehicle regularly for a moment to make the cooling fan run twice.

Caution

After the vehicle is parked for a long time, if it cannot be started or its maneuverability deteriorates, please contact an authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing as soon as possible.

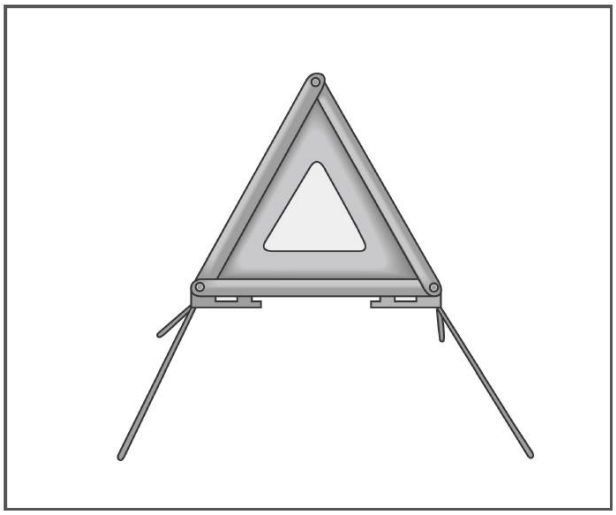
Hazard warning device

Hazard warning lamp



Press the hazard warning lamp switch in the middle of the dashboard, and then the turn signal and hazard indicator lamps on the combination instrument will start flashing to remind pedestrians and passing vehicles to keep clear.

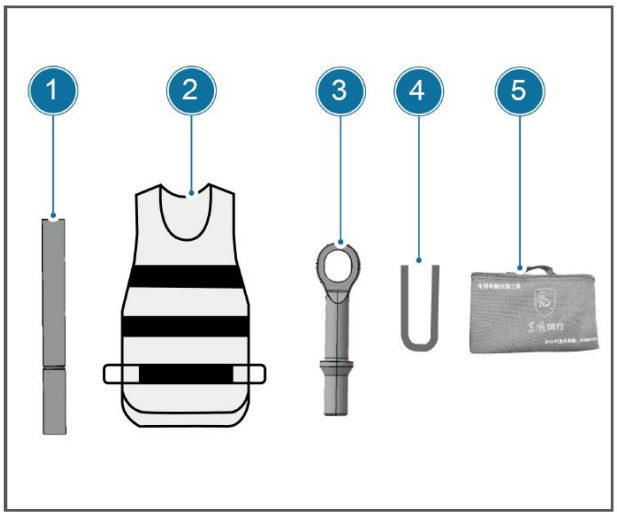
Warning triangle



The warning triangle is placed inside the trunk lid.

In case of any accident during driving, keep to the right as far as possible, take out the warning triangle, stand the reflector 100 ~ 200 m behind the vehicle with its back to the vehicle to warn vehicles coming from behind, and turn on the hazard warning lamp at the same time.

On-board tools and reflective vests

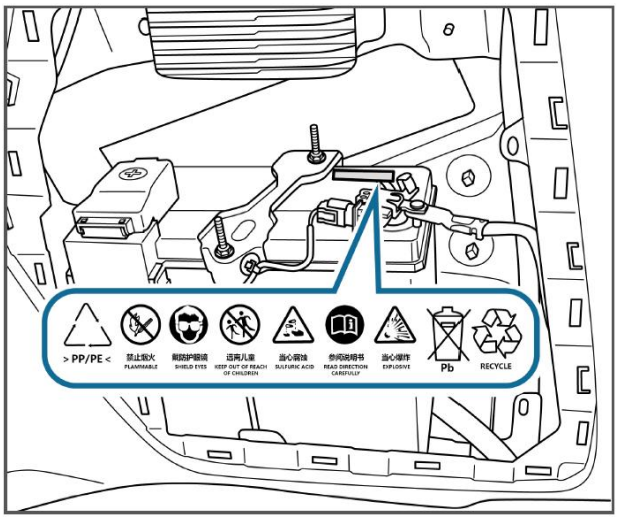


1. Warning triangle
2. Reflective vest
3. Towing hook
4. Wheel nut cap clip
5. Emergency kit for tire repair

The towing hook is placed in the emergency tire repair kit; the warning triangle is placed inside the trunk lid; the reflective vest and wheel nut cap clip are placed in the glove box.

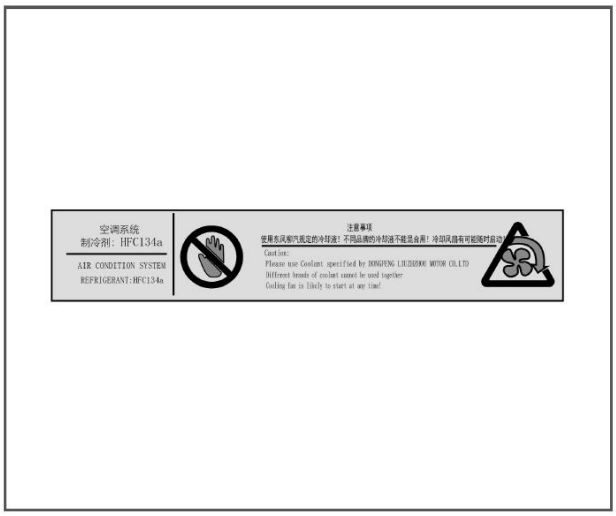
Safety warning sign

12V LV battery warning sign



The 12V LV battery warning sign is attached to the surface of the battery. Remind you that the 12V LV battery should be kept away from heat sources and open flames, and ventilation should be maintained during charging and use to prevent accidents.

Radiator warning label



The radiator warning label and the A/C refrigerant label are pasted on the right side inside the engine hood. When replacing the coolant, use the coolant specified by Dongfeng Forthing. Do not mix coolants of different brands. Do not touch the radiator, as the cooling fan may rotate at any time.

Risk of carbon monoxide poisoning

Inhalation of toxic carbon monoxide gas will seriously threaten your life safety. Under normal driving conditions, carbon monoxide in the vehicle's exhaust will not enter the interior.

In case of the following conditions, check whether the exhaust system leaks:

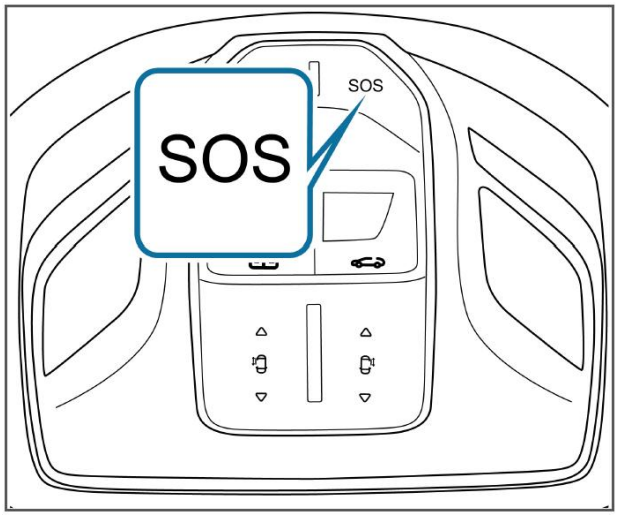
1. The vehicle has been lifted due to oil replacement or other reasons.

2. Abnormal exhaust sound

3. The underbody of the vehicle was damaged in the accident.

When the trunk lid is opened, airflow will bring exhaust gas into the vehicle, resulting in excessive carbon monoxide. If you need to start the vehicle with the trunk lid open, open all windows and turn on the A/C for ventilation.

Emergency rescue system *



In case of emergency or danger, long press the SOS button to call for emergency rescue.

Note

SOS button is only used in case of emergency, such as accident, illness or passenger threat.

Caution

When there is no network or the vehicle cannot supply power (for example, the 12V LV battery is cut off), the emergency rescue function cannot be used.

Traffic accident guide

When the vehicle has a traffic accident, please operate according to the following steps:

1. Park the vehicle in a safe place (if the vehicle can still run normally after an accident) and turn on the hazard warning lamp. If the vehicle needs to be towed, please contact an authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing.

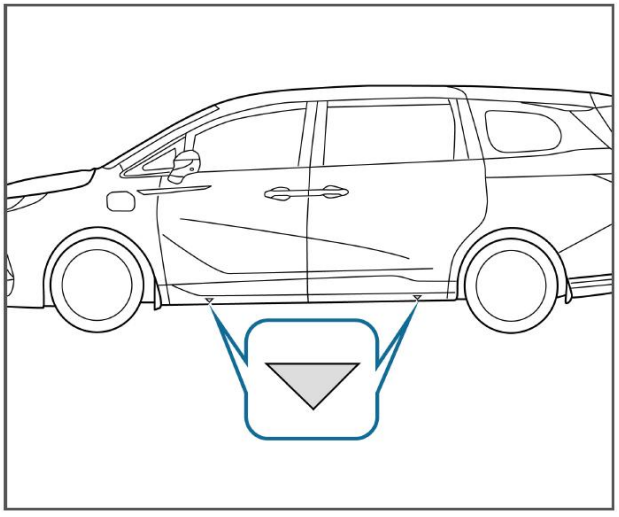
2. Take out the reflective vest from the glove box and put it on. 3. Take out the warning triangle from inside of back door.

4.Place the warning triangle behind the vehicle.

Warning

In case of emergency traffic accident, personal injury or major fire, please contact for rescue as soon as possible.

Vehicle jacking



There are two jacking position identification points on the outer panels of the left and right doors respectively. Place the jack in the groove corresponding to the triangle marking point, and then the vehicle can be lifted.

Caution

Do not jack up the vehicle at any position other than that specified. If the jacking position is incorrect, the body may be sunken or an accident may occur when the body falls.

Quick tire repair

Your vehicle is equipped with emergency tools for tire repair. Minor damage to the tire tread can be repaired with a vehicle tire repair emergency tool. The emergency tire repair kit is located in the trunk recess.

1.Park the vehicle as far away from traffic flow as possible, turn on the hazard warning lamp and place a warning triangle when necessary.

2. If the tire wound is more than 5 mm or the damaged position is close to the rim sidewall, do not use the emergency tool for vehicle tire repair. Please contact an Dongfeng Forthing authorized service station immediately.

3. Tire damage and wheel damage caused by low tire pressure or driving without tire pressure will significantly reduce the driving safety of the vehicle. Do not continue to drive, but immediately contact an Dongfeng Forthing authorized service station.

4. Do not remove foreign matters (screws, nails, etc.) from the tire when the outside temperature is -30°C~70°C, which is the normal working temperature range of tire repair fluid.

5. During inflation, the temperature of inflator pump and its hose may be very high.

6. When repairing the rear tire with tire puncture sealant, the vehicle speed shall not exceed 80 km/h.

7. After using tire puncture sealant, avoid rapid acceleration, sudden braking and quick turning.

8. Tyre puncture sealant shall not contact with skin or eyes.

9. Tyre puncture sealant should be stored away from children.

10.The validity period of tire puncture sealant is five years. Please confirm the date of manufacture before use (the date of manufacture is printed on the tire puncture sealant tank).

11.Tyre puncture sealant is a disposable item. After completing the emergency tire puncture or after the tire puncture sealant expires, please buy new tire puncture sealant at an Dongfeng Forthing authorized service station as soon as possible to ensure that the tire puncture sealant is always available for your vehicle. After successful repair with emergency tools for tire repair, please go to an authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing for help as soon as possible.

Warning

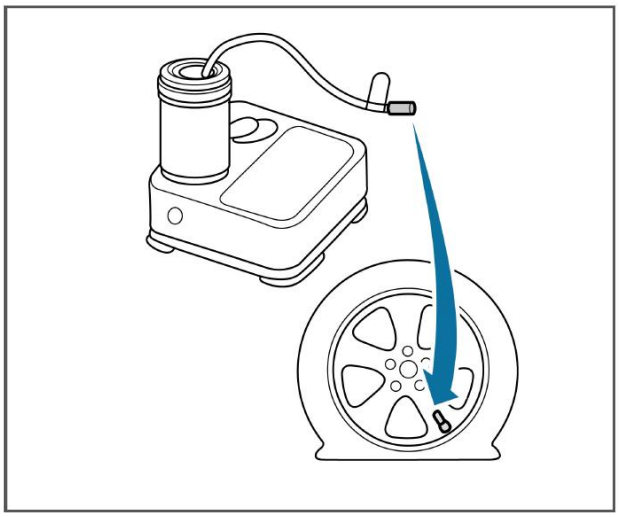
The emergency tire repair kit for vehicle is only limited to emergency tire repair, which is only suitable for short-term use in case of emergency to ensure that the vehicle can be driven to the nearest authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing. Be sure to read the operation instructions of the emergency tire repair kit carefully and replace it with a new tire as soon as possible.

Usage of emergency tools for vehicle tire repair

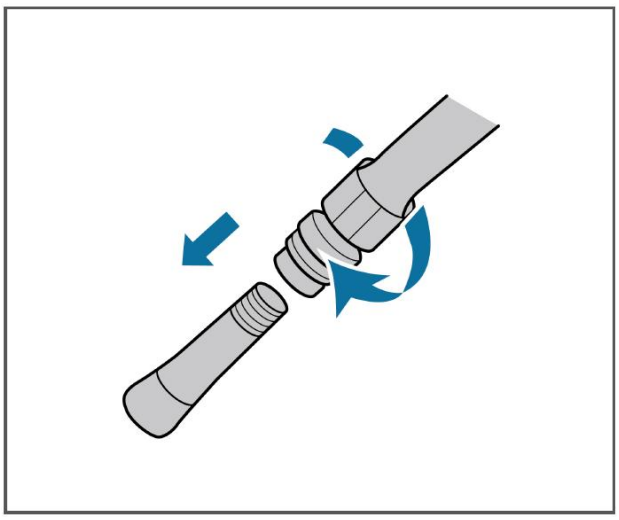
1. If any tire has been punctured, park the vehicle on a solid, flat and non-slippery road away from traffic flow. Stop the vehicle steadily, turn off the engine and pull up the EPB switch. Turn on the hazard warning lamp and place a warning triangle at an appropriate distance.

2. Take out the emergency tire repair kit from the trunk storage slot, and take out the inflator pump and tire repair fluid bottle.

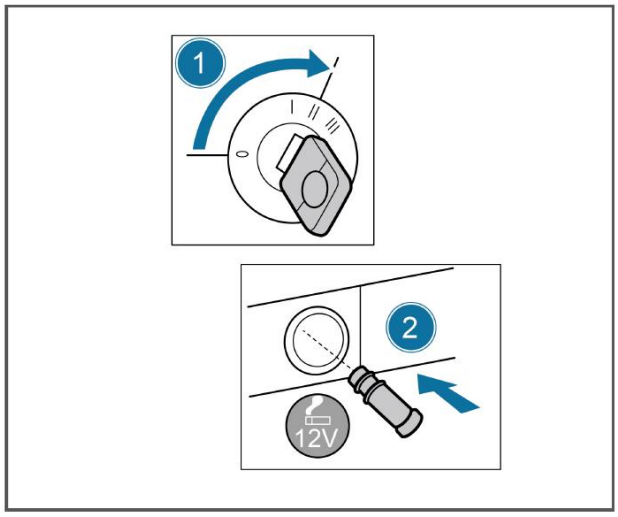
3. Pull out the inflator hose and power cord, connect the inflator hose with the air inlet of tire repair fluid bottle, and then tighten them. Insert the tire sealant bottle into the fixing groove on the inflation pump and keep it upright.



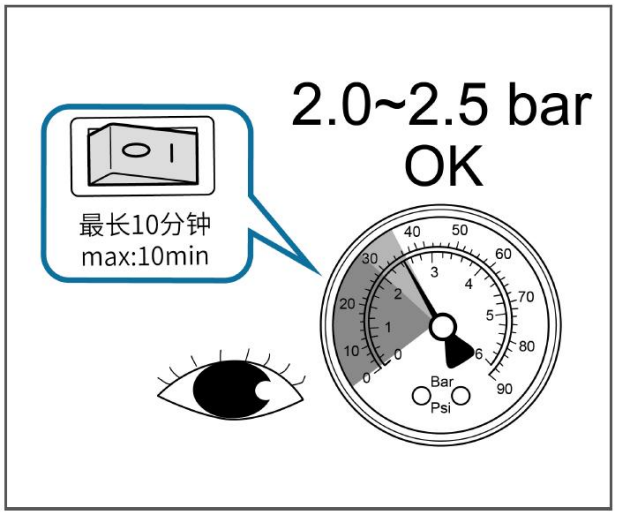
4.Unscrew the valve cap of the faulty tire, connect the tire sealant hose to the tire valve and tighten it.



5. Start the vehicle, insert the power connector of inflator into 12V power supply and turn on the inflator switch.

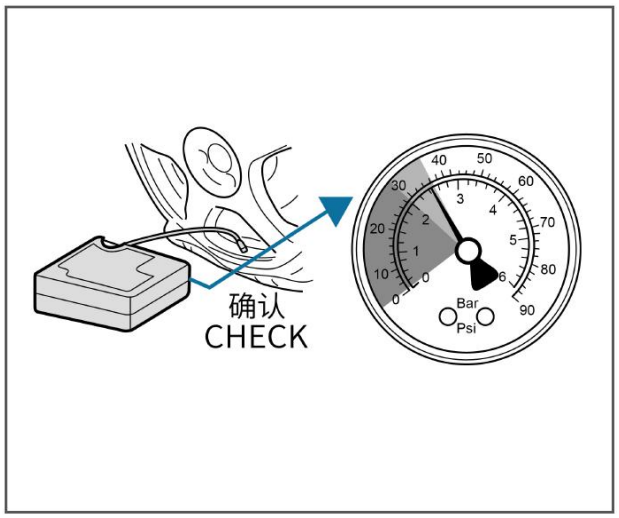


6. When the tire pressure rises to 2.0~2.5 bar, turn off the inflator switch, unscrew the inflator hose and put away the inflator. If the tire pressure still does not reach 2.0 ~ 2.5 bar after inflation for more than 10 minutes, please stop repairing immediately and refer to Item 7.2.2.



7. After the tire repair is completed, unscrew the tire repair fluid hose, disconnect the power connector, and put the emergency tool for vehicle tire repair into the trunk. After driving for the first 5 km within 1 minute, please check the tire pressure with the inflation pump.

7.1 If the tire pressure is still in the range of 2.0~2.5 bar, you can continue to drive for about 100 km and seek help from the nearest Dongfeng Forthing authorized service station. The vehicle speed shall not exceed 80 km/h.



7.2 When the tire pressure is lower than 2.0 bar, please inflate it again with an air pump to 2.0~2.5 bar. After driving for 5 km, check the tire pressure again with an inflator.

7.2.1 If the tire pressure is still in the range of 2.0 ~ 2.5 bar, you can continue to drive for about

100 km and seek help from the nearest Dongfeng Forthing authorized service station. The vehicle speed shall not exceed 80 km/h.

7.2.2 When the tire pressure is lower than 2.0 bar, park the vehicle away from traffic. Turn on the hazard warning lamp, place a warning triangle at an appropriate position, and contact an Dongfeng Forthing authorized service station.

Replacement of light bulbs

The replacement of bulbs usually requires the removal of certain vehicle components, so professional skills are required for relevant operations, otherwise the lamp cover may be damaged. If replacement is required, please contact an authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing Automobile Co., Ltd.

Bulb specifications

Name	Bulb Specifications
Low beam	LED
High beam	LED
Front position lamp	LED
Front turn signal	LED
Daytime running lamp	LED
Rear position lamp	LED
Rear turn signal	LED
High-mounted brake light	LED
Reversing lamp	LED
Rear fog lamp	LED
License plate lamp	LED
Front interior light	LED
Rear interior lamp	LED
Rear trunk light	LED

Headlamp calibration

When the new vehicle leaves the factory, the headlight has been calibrated. If you often use the trunk to carry heavy objects, the headlamp may need to be recalibrated. please contact an authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing for headlamp calibration.

FAQ

Why does the headlight glass surface fog sometimes?

In general, the fog in the headlamp is formed by condensation when the moisture in the lamp body material evaporates and encounters a low temperature. This is a normal physical phenomenon, and the fog will finally dissipate after each formation.

The method to eliminate fog is as follows: During driving, after the low beams are turned on for a period of time, the fog in the effective irradiation area in front of the headlamps can disappear.

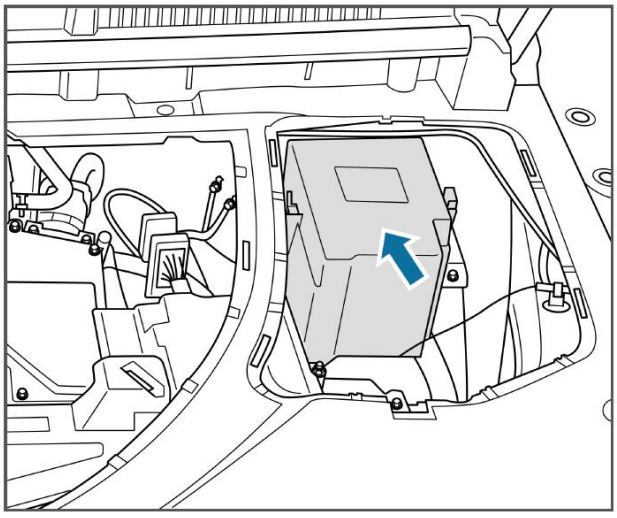
Caution

- To avoid damaging the lamp, do not use invasive abrasives or chemical solvents to clean the lamp.
- When the headlamp is turned on, the surface temperature of the lamp is very high. Do not directly touch the surface of the lamp to avoid scalding.
- Do not wipe the lampshade or clean it with sharp objects when it is dry.

Replacement of fuse

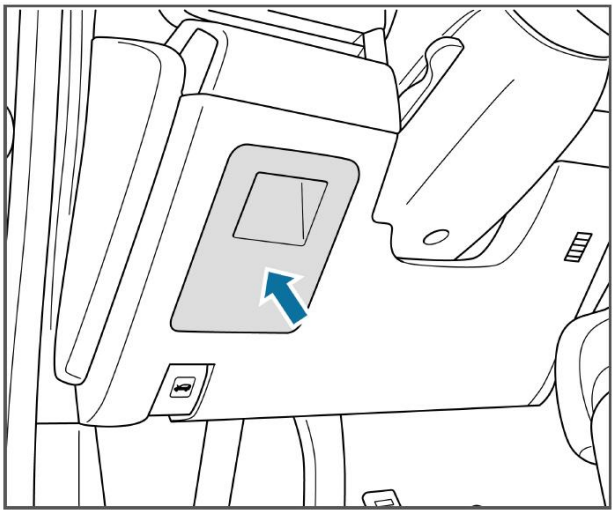
Positions of fuse boxes

Engine compartment fuse box



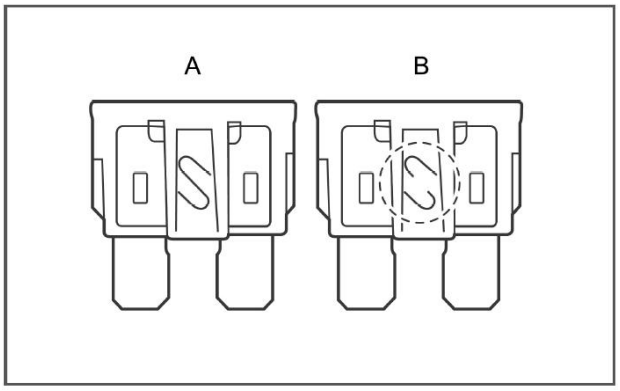
The engine hood fuse box is located on the left side of engine hood. Remove the clips on the left and right sides of the fuse box, and open the box cover to check the fuse.

Interior fuse box



The indoor fuse box is located at the lower left corner of the dashboard. Remove the cover plate to check the fuse.

Check the fuse

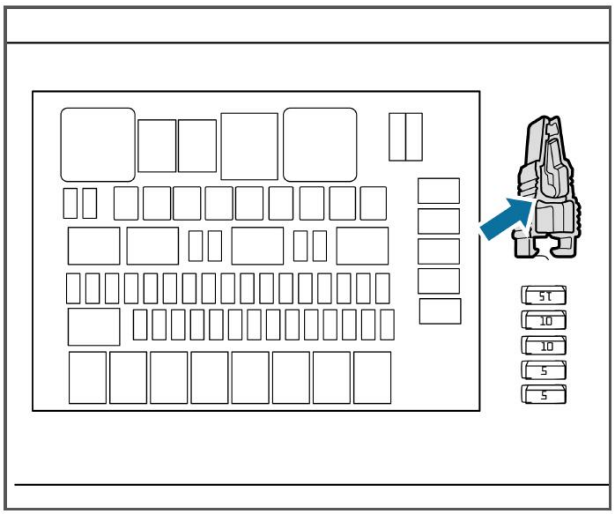


A: Normal

B: Fuse blown

The fuse protects the electrical equipment of the vehicle by preventing overload. A blown fuse indicates that the circuit it protects is faulty and stops working. If you suspect that there is a problem with the fuse, you can use the fuse puller to take it out and check whether it has blown.

Replacement of fuse

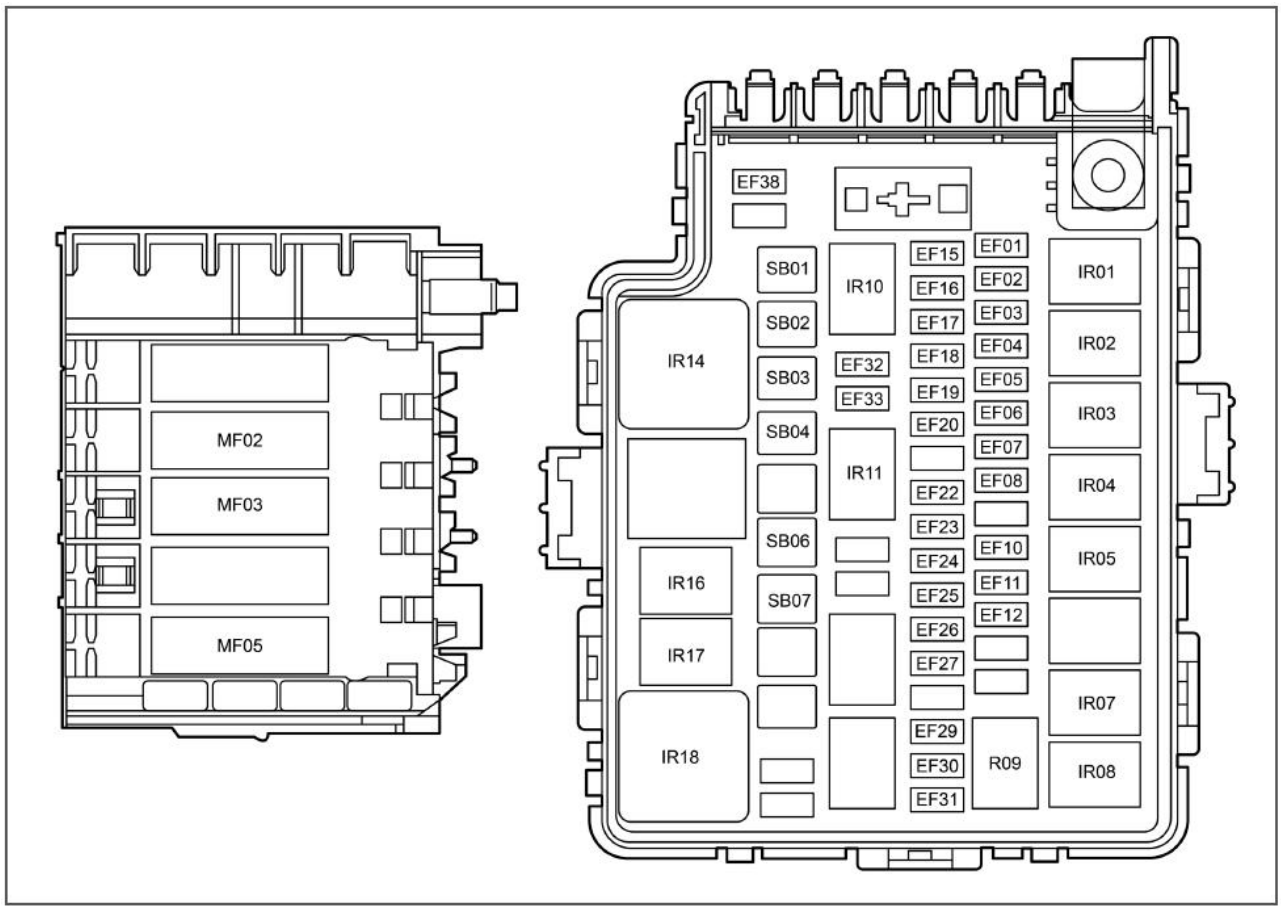


There is a fuse puller in the engine compartment fuse box. Pull the fuse straight out of the fuse box with the puller. If the fuse is not blown, there must be other reasons leading to the fault. Please contact an Dongfeng Forthing authorized service station as soon as possible.

Find the blown metal wire in the fuse. If the fuse is blown, replace it with a spare fuse with the same or lower amperage.

If the replacement fuse with the same rating is blown again in a short time, it indicates that the vehicle may have a serious electrical fault. Please contact an authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing as soon as possible.

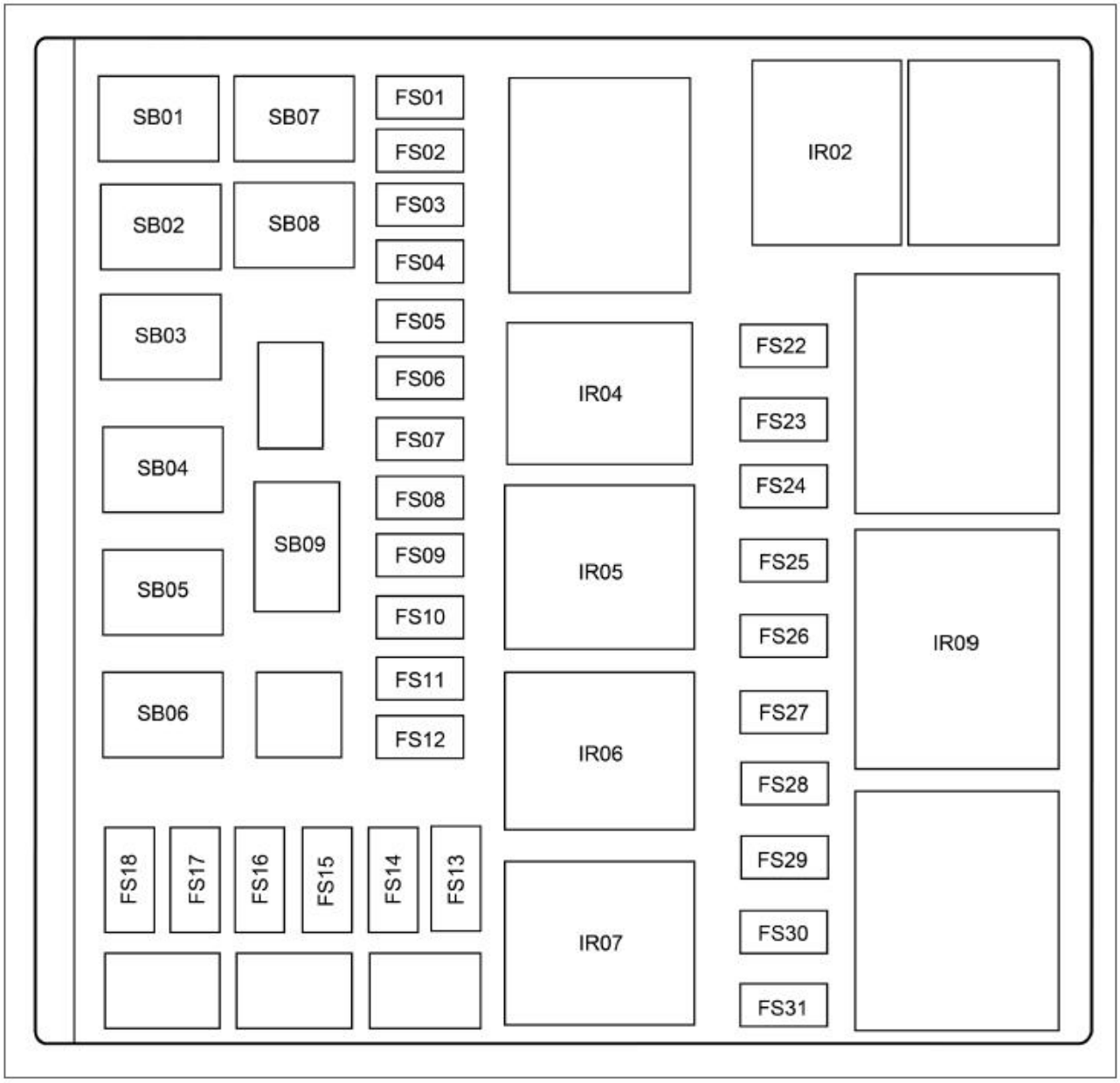
Engine hood fuse box layout



S/N	Name	Rated Current (A)	Description
EF01	Fuel pump relay fuse	5A	-
EF02	Ignition coil fuse	15A	-
EF03	Electronic fuel injection actuator fuse	15A	-
EF04	Electronic injection sensor fuse	20A	-
EF05	Booster water pump fuse	20A	-
EF06	Right turn signal fuse	7.5A	-
EF07	Left turn signal fuse	7.5A	-
EF08	Fuel pump fuse	15A	-
EF10	Brake-by-wire ECU fuse	5A	-
EF11	Engine VECU fuse	10A	-
EF12	PDU fuse	5A	-
EF15	Motor controller MCU1 fuse*	25A	-
EF16	Engine VECU B+ fuse	10A	-
EF17	Motor controller MCU2 fuse*	25A	-
EF18	Slow-charge AC socket fuse *	10A	-
EF19	Engine electronic water pump fuse	10A	-
EF20	Heater electronic water pump fuse *	15A	-
EF22	Relay coil fuse	5A	-
EF23	Wiper INT mode fuse	20A	-
EF24	Motor controller MCU fuse	25A	-

S/N	Name	Rated Current (A)	Description
EF25	Headlamp/grille lamp fuse	20A	-
EF26	Horn fuse	15A	-
EF27	Reversing light fuse	10A	-
EF28	M/C relay fuse *	20A	-
EF29	Power output module fuse *	10A	-
EF30	Compressor fuse	10A	-
EF31	Battery pack fuse	15A	-
EF32	Left low beam fuse	15A	-
EF33	Right low beam fuse	15A	-
EF38	Blower feedback fuse	5A	-
MF02	Front windshield heating fuse	80A	-
MF03	Battery positive fuse box	125A	-
MF05	Fuse of instrument panel fuse box	50A	-
SB01	Brake-by-wire ECU fuse	60A	-
SB02	Front blower fuse	40A	-
SB03	Electronic fan fuse	60A	-
SB04	Electric power fuse	60A	-
SB06	Brake-by-wire ECU fuse	60A	-
SB07	Main water pump fuse *	50A	-

Layout of interior fuse box



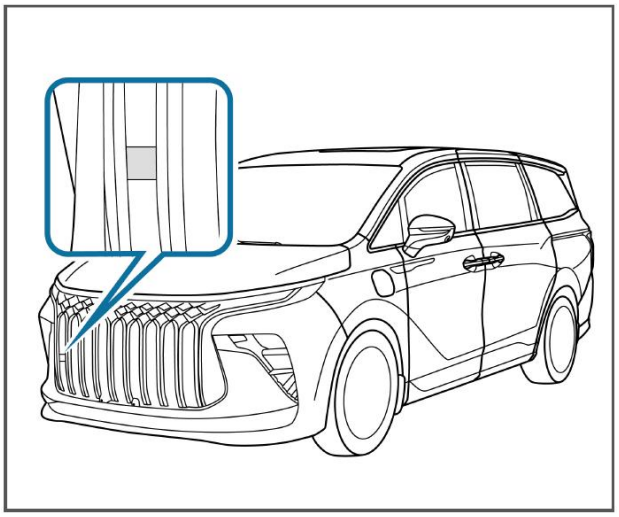
S/N	Name	Rated Current (A)	Description
FS01	HCU fuse	15A	
FS02	Sunroof power supply fuse *	20A	
FS03	WPC/LAMP FUSE	15A	
FS04	OBD fuse	15A	
FS05	Exterior light fuse	20A	
FS06	Gateway/instrument cluster fuse	10A	
FS07	Interior roof-mounted light fuse	10A	
FS08	Middle row left seat power supply fuse	15A	-
FS09	Middle-row right seat power supply fuse	15A	-
FS10	Multimedia host fuse	30A	-
FS11	A/C fuse	10A	-
FS12	Front washer fuse	10A	-

S/N	Name	Rated Current (A)	Description
FS13	Airbag fuse	10A	-
FS14	A/C controller fuse	10A	-
FS15	Instrument/BCM fuse	10A	-
FS16	Engine hood IGN1 fuse	15A	-
FS17	Steering wheel heating fuse *	15A	-
FS18	IGN2 fuse	10A	-
FS22	Backlight fuse	5A	-
FS23	Front right and rear left position lamp fuse	5A	-
FS24	Front left and rear right position lamp fuse	5A	-
FS25	Instrument ACC fuse	7.5A	-
FS26	USB power fuse	30A	
FS27	12V power fuse	30A	-
FS28	Domain controller fuse *	15A	
FS29	Rear blower positive feedback fuse	5A	-
FS30	Seat ventilation fuse *	10A	-
FS31	Front driver's seat power fuse *	20A	-
SB01	Ignition switch fuse	60A	
SB02	Door and central door lock fuses	20A	
SB03	Left door control module fuse	30A	
SB04	Right door control module fuse	30A	
SB05	Left/right drive unit and wheel set fuse	30A/40A	
SB06	Rear blower power supply fuse	30A	
SB07	Left/right middle row seat motor fuse	30A	
SB08	Front driver and front passenger's seat motor fuse *	30A	
SB09	Front wiper fuse	20A	

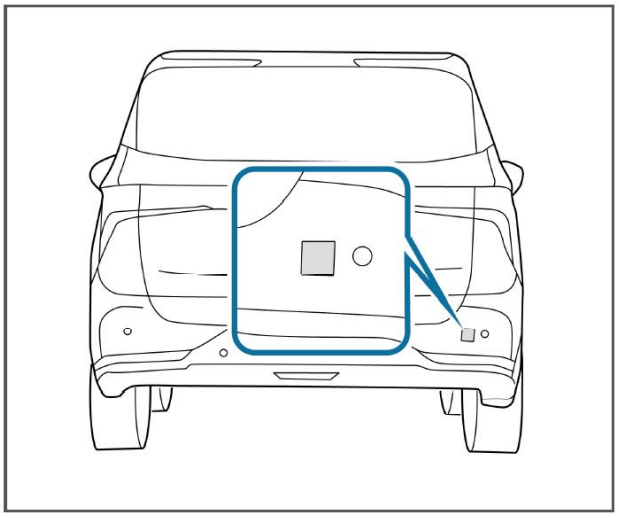
Vehicle towing

If the vehicle needs to be towed, please contact the professional vehicle towing service department. Do not tow the vehicle only with ropes or iron chains.

Front towing point



Rear towing point



Traction method

Flatbed device

Vehicles can be loaded on trucks, which is the best way to transport vehicles.

Wheel lifting device

The tractor inserts two arms into the bottom of the front wheels of the vehicle to lift the wheels off the ground, and the rear wheels are still on the ground. This is a feasible method for towing vehicles.

Towing with four wheels on the ground

Connect the tractor with this vehicle with a reasonably designed towing bar, and keep four wheels on the ground.

Precautions for traction

When wheel lifting or four-wheel on-ground traction is adopted, the towing mileage should not exceed 50 km and the speed shall be kept below 30km/h. The vehicle must be in the following conditions:

1. Start the vehicle.
2. The gear is in N position.

3.Press the EPB switch and release the electrical parking brake.

If any of the above conditions cannot be met, you can only use flatbed transportation or contact an Dongfeng Forthing authorized service station.

Caution

- Wheel-lifting towing is adopted. If the vehicle body is equipped with a front spoiler, it should be removed first to avoid damage.
- Do not lift or tow the vehicle from the bumper, which will cause serious damage. When installing the towing cable, pay special attention not to damage the vehicle body by steel cables.
- Your vehicle is not designed for towing other vehicles. Such attempts will void your warranty rights.

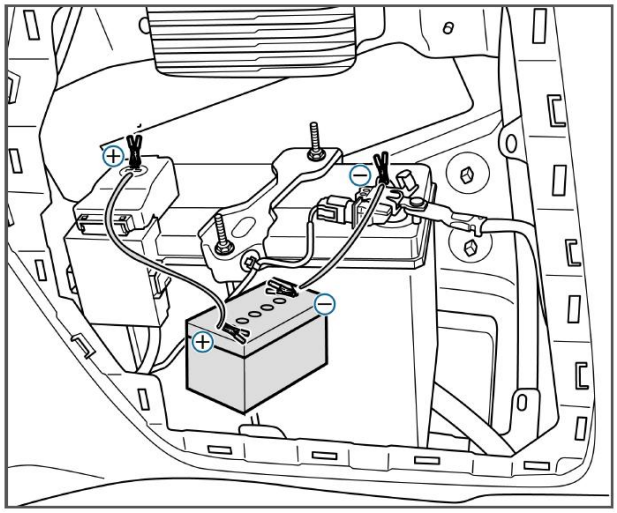
Warning

The above steps should be strictly followed. Incorrect towing will damage the transmission.

Jump start

If the vehicle battery is too low, you can start the vehicle as follows.

Method I



1.Turn off all electrical accessories, shift to P position and pull up the EPB switch.

2.Open the trunk, and pry up the 12V low voltage battery guard on the right side wall with a tool.

3.Connect the positive clip of jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of 12V LV battery of this vehicle.

4.Connect the clip at the other end of positive cable to positive (+) terminal of battery on rescue vehicle.

5.Connect the negative cable clip to the negative (-) terminal of battery on the rescue vehicle.

6.Connect the clamp at the other end of negative cable to the negative (-) terminal of 12V LV battery of this vehicle.

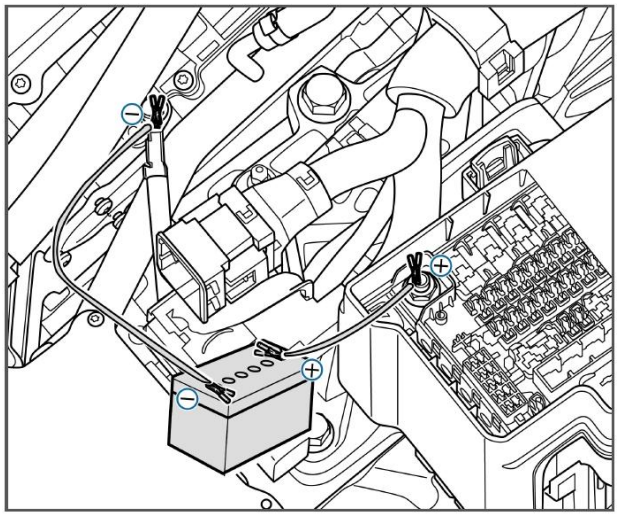
7. Start the rescue vehicle and keep it for about 5 minutes to charge the 12V LV battery of the vehicle.

8. Maintain the speed of rescue vehicle and start this vehicle.

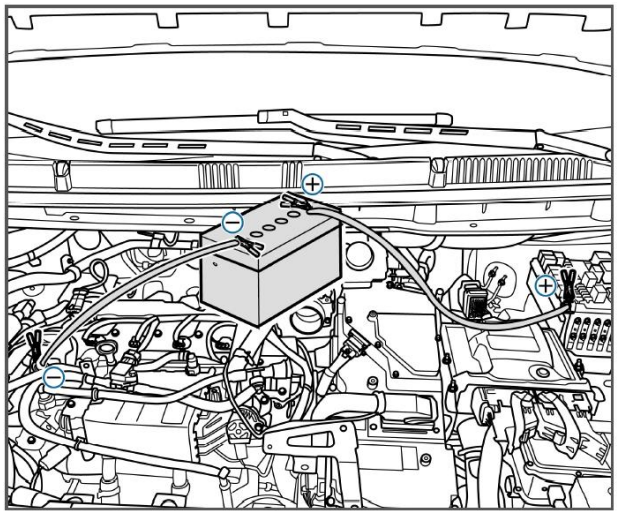
9. After the vehicle is running, please remove the jumper cable in an order completely reverse to its connection and contact an Dongfeng Forthing authorized service station for maintenance as soon as possible.

Method II

HEV model



PHEV model



1.Turn off all electrical accessories, shift to P position and pull up the EPB switch.

2.Open the engine hood and open the protective cover of engine compartment fuse box.

3.Connect the positive clip of jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of engine bay fuse box.

4.Connect the clip at the other end of positive cable to positive (+) terminal of battery on rescue vehicle.

5.Connect the negative cable clip to the negative (-) terminal of battery on the rescue vehicle.

6. HEV model: Connect the clamp at the other end of the negative cable to the ground post of the dual-motor hybrid powertrain housing of this vehicle.

PHEV model: Connect the clamp at the other end of the negative cable to the lifting lug of the engine.

7. Start the rescue vehicle and keep it for about 5 minutes to charge the 12V LV battery of the vehicle.

8. Maintain the speed of rescue vehicle and start this vehicle.

9. After the vehicle is running, please remove the jumper cable in an order completely reverse to its connection and contact an Dongfeng Forthing authorized service station for maintenance as soon as possible.

Warning

- Do not clamp the positive and negative terminals incorrectly when clamping jumper cables; otherwise, electrical equipment will be damaged.
- When jump starting, the correct operation must be carried out according to the above instructions. Otherwise, it may cause fire, explosion or vehicle damage.
- A certain distance shall be kept between the ends of two jumper cables to prevent contact. At the same time, it is also necessary to prevent contact with any metal parts on the vehicle; otherwise, electrical equipment may be damaged.
- If the 12V LV battery is placed in an extremely cold environment for a long time, its internal electrolyte will freeze. It is forbidden to jump start with a frozen battery; otherwise, the battery will be cracked.

Engine overheating

When the vehicle is running, if the high coolant temperature warning lamp illuminates or steam comes out of the engine hood, the vehicle shall be shut down immediately.

Countermeasures

1. Pull over the vehicle safely, set the gear to N position, pull up the EPB switch, turn off all electrical appliance switches and turn on the hazard warning lamp.

2. When the engine is idling, open the engine hood. If the radiator fan operates, keep the engine running at idle speed; if the fan does not operate, immediately shut down the engine and contact an Dongfeng Forthing authorized service station as soon as possible.

3. Shut down the vehicle after the coolant temperature drops to a normal value.

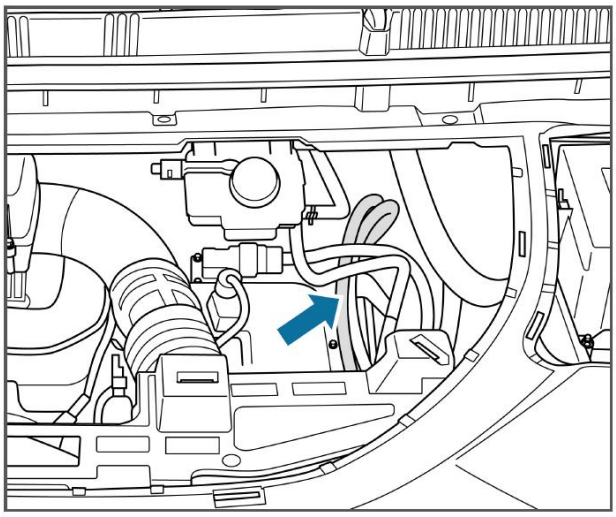
4. Check the coolant level in the reservoir. If the coolant level drops, check the radiator hose for leakage. Add coolant to the upper limit (MAX) mark, and then install and tighten the reservoir cap.

Warning

- Do not open the engine hood if steam is leaking. Otherwise, the emitted steam and mist spray will cause serious burns. Be sure to wait until the engine and radiator cool down before opening the engine hood.
- Be sure to open the fluid reservoir cap after the engine is completely cooled, so as to avoid scalds caused by hot steam or boiling water ejecting from the filler.
- When adding coolant, start the vehicle and add it slowly. Otherwise, adding coolant immediately when the engine temperature is high may crack the cylinder head or block.
- If the engine is overheated, please contact an authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing as soon as possible.

Operating instructions for power battery

Power battery cable



The vehicle is equipped with orange cables that connect the power to other high-voltage components.

Danger

- Do not touch or contact the orange cable and power battery electrodes; otherwise, electric shock may be caused, causing casualties.
- Do not remove or disassemble the power battery without permission. The unit or individual will bear corresponding responsibilities for environmental pollution or safety accidents caused thereby.
- Do not attempt to remove or install any high-voltage system component or disconnect any cable. Make sure that the high-voltage system is maintained or repaired only by an authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing.

Vehicle collision

1. Beware of electric shock

If the high voltage system of the vehicle is damaged by a severe collision, the high voltage components or cables may be exposed to electric shock. If this occurs, do not touch any high voltage system or its orange cables.

2. Avoid contact with power battery electrolyte

The power battery electrolyte is corrosive and may leak due to severe collision. Avoid skin or eye contact with electrolyte. In case of accidental contact, rinse the affected skin or eyes with plenty of water for at least 5 minutes and seek medical attention immediately.

Danger

Do not touch the surface, bottom, water pipe and other positions of the power battery pack case where liquid appears!

3. Use fire extinguishers for electrical fires

Picture	Name	Requirements
	Fire extinguisher	Type ABC

4. In case of fire, use plenty of water to extinguish the fire. Do not try to put out an electrical fire with a small amount of water (such as a garden hose).

5. If the vehicle is damaged in an accident, please go to an Dongfeng Forthing authorized service station immediately for repair.

Emergency cut-off system for high-voltage electrical systems

In the event of a vehicle collision, depending on the severity of the collision, the slam-shut system may be activated. When this system is activated, the high-voltage system will be automatically cut off and the vehicle cannot run on its own power. If you need to restore the normal operation of the high-voltage system, please consult an Dongfeng Forthing authorized service station.

When the vehicle is scrapped

The power battery is a lithium-ion battery. Please consult an authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing when scrapping the vehicle.

Suggestions on vehicle use

1. If the vehicle is parked for a long time, the power battery will gradually decrease due to discharging. The service life of the power battery will be shortened if the power battery is in a low state for a long time. In order to maintain the power battery, please drive the vehicle for at least 30 minutes every month. If the power battery is completely exhausted and the hybrid system cannot be started, please contact an authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing. Power battery fault and damage caused by this situation may affect your rights to enjoy the power battery warranty.

2. PHEV models shall be charged regularly to keep the power battery in its best working condition. To prolong the service life of the power battery, it is recommended to perform full charge (SOC: 100%) once a week and full charge with low SOC (SOC: ≤ 20%) every 2~3 months.

3. Avoid parking the vehicle in an environment with high temperature (> 45°C) or extremely low temperature (-15°C and below) for a long time, so as not to affect the normal use of the vehicle.

4. Do not over-discharge the power battery. If the power meter on the combination instrument turns yellow, it indicates that the power battery is low. If the power is close to zero, the electric system cannot be started.

5. When the vehicle is running, try to avoid repeated rapid acceleration and deceleration.

Sound and vibration specific to hybrid vehicles

Hybrid vehicles are not only quiet as pure electric vehicles, but also have the noise characteristics of fuel vehicle engines. The following noise and vibration are normal conditions:

1. When the hybrid power system starts or stops, you may hear the working sound of the power battery.

2. When the hybrid power system starts or stops, you may hear a quick or soft tinkle.

Description of power battery cooling system

The power battery is equipped with a liquid cooling system. In case of vehicle collision or other faults, if liquid is found at the bottom of the power battery or in the water pipe connecting the power battery, please contact an Dongfeng Forthing authorized service station for maintenance.

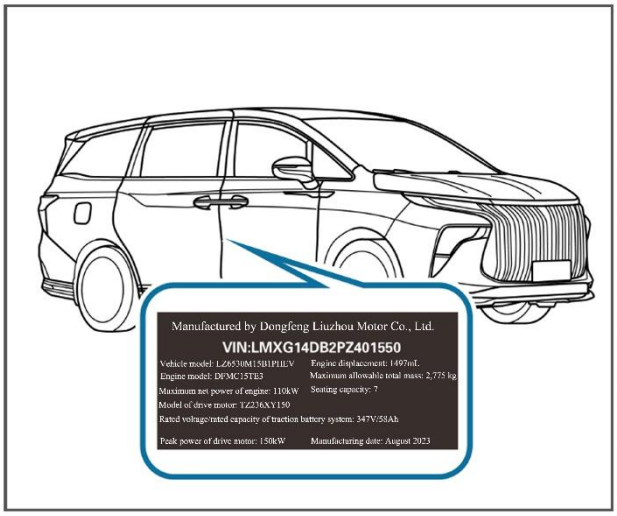
Traction battery recycling

According to the relevant regulations of the Interim Measures for the Administration of Recycling Traction Batteries for New Energy Vehicles issued by the state, when the traction battery needs to be repaired or replaced, the owner of the new energy

vehicle shall send the new energy vehicle to an after-sales service organization with corresponding competence for maintenance and replacement of the traction battery. When the new energy vehicle meets the scrapping requirements, it should be sent to the scrap vehicle recycling and dismantling enterprise to disassemble the traction battery. New energy vehicle owners shall hand over used traction batteries to recycling service stations. Anyone who hands over used power batteries to other organizations or individuals, and removes or disassembles power batteries without permission shall bear corresponding responsibilities for environmental pollution or safety accidents caused thereby. For specific recycling rules, please refer to the official website of Dongfeng Forthing: http://www.fxauto.com.cn/.

Vehicle identification

Vehicle nameplate

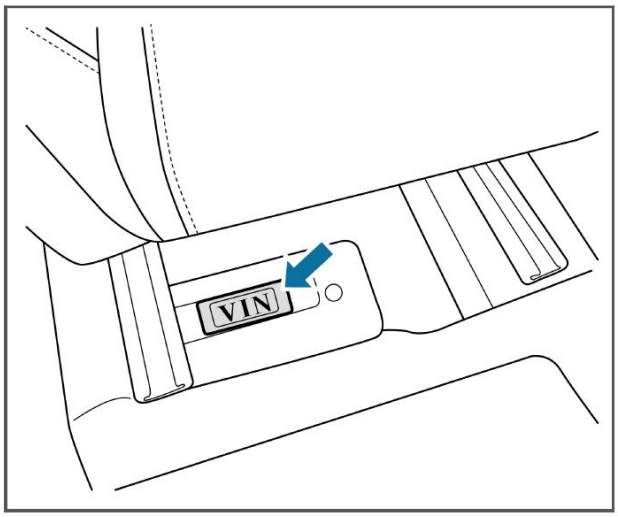


The vehicle sign is located under the right center pillar and contains the following information:

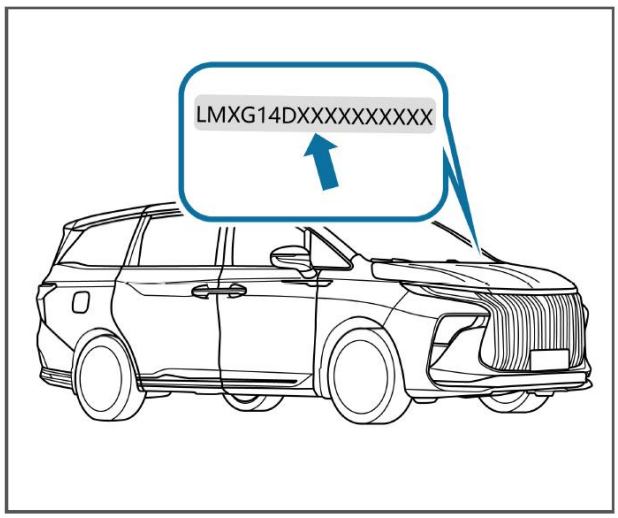
1. Country of manufacture
2. Manufacturer
3. Brand name
4. VIN
5. Vehicle model
6. Engine model
7. Maximum net power of engine
8. Manufacturing date
9. Engine displacement
10. Maximum allowable total mass
11. Drive motor model
12. Rated voltage/rated capacity of power battery system 13. Peak power of drive motor
14. Number of passengers

Location of VIN

There are several vehicle identification numbers (VINs) on your vehicle, which are located at different positions.



1. It is engraved on the vehicle body beam below the front passenger seat, and can be seen by lifting the carpet gap.



2. It is pasted on instrument panel body assembly.

3. It is pasted on the inner side of glove box.

4. It is pasted on the surface of inner panel of right B pillar.

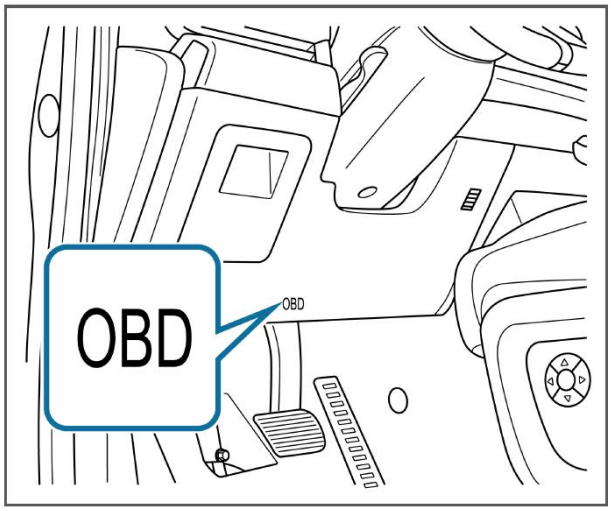
5. It is pasted on the surface of inner panel of column A of right front wall.

6. It is pasted on the surface of engine hood inner panel.

7. It is pasted on the surface of back door inner panel.

8. It is pasted on the surface of drive unit assembly.

Reading of VIN



The OBD II diagnostic interface is located below the instrument panel on the driver's side.

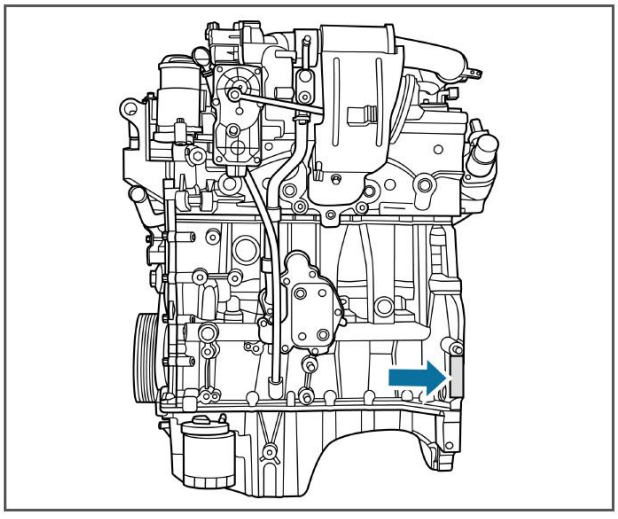
Use the OBD II scan tool to read the vehicle VIN information through the OBD diagnostic interface.

Caution

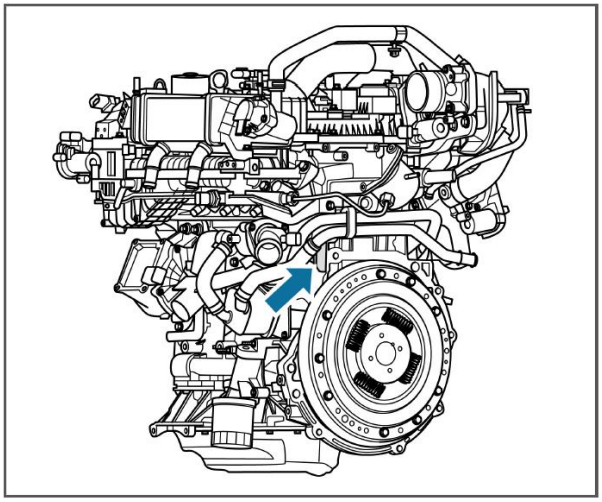
The above VIN reading tools are not equipped with the vehicle. If you need to purchase them, please contact an authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing.

Engine No.

Stamping position of 4E15T engine model serial number

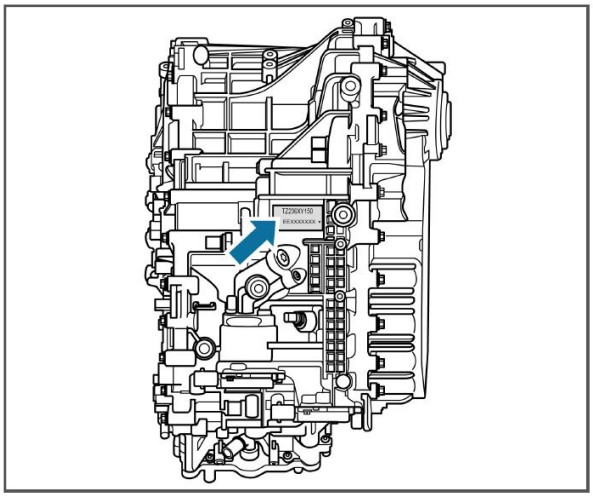


DFMC15TE3 Engine model serial number label position



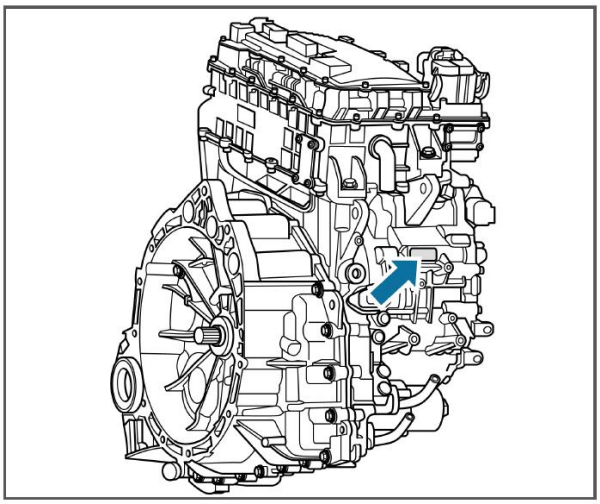
Drive motor information

TZ236XY150 drive motor



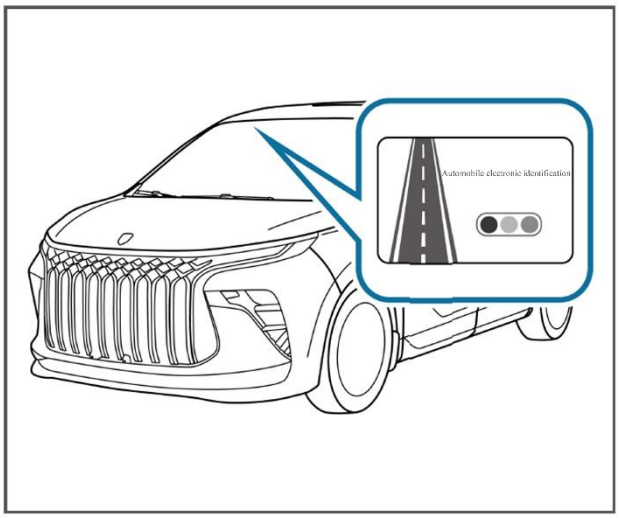
The drive motor steel code is located directly below the motor housing.

TZ220XYL drive motor



The drive motor steel code is located in front of the motor housing.

Microwave window



The microwave window of the vehicle is located in the horizontal center and vertically upward position of the front windshield.

The electronic identification of the vehicle should be installed in the middle and left of the microwave window. This sign stores relevant information of the vehicle and cannot be blocked by the interior rearview mirror mounting bracket, sensor bracket, etc.

Caution

- Please keep the front windshield clean and dry.
- Do not paste film or metal materials on the microwave window to ensure the standard installation of vehicle electronic identification and effective reading of data.
- Do not cover, squeeze or remove the vehicle electronic sigh! If the sign is damaged, please apply again at the sign issuing agency in time.

Dimensions

Item	Unit	LZ6530M15B0HEV	LZ6530M15B1PHEV	LZ6520M15B0PHEV
Vehicle length	mm	5251		5248,5230
Vehicle width	mm	1920		1920
Vehicle height	mm	1810,1820		1820
Front wheel tread	mm	1633		1633
Rear wheel tread	mm	1646		1646
Wheelbase	mm	3018		3018

Weight parameters

Item	Unit	LZ6530M15B0HEV	LZ6530M15B1PHEV	LZ6520M15B0PHEV
Number of passengers	Person	7	7	7
Curb weight	kg	2120	2205,2250	2325,2390,2415
Front axle curb weight	kg	1145	1190,1196	1230,1267,1280
Rear axle curb weight	kg	975	1015,1054	1095,1123,1135
Maximum mass	kg	2645	2730,2775	2850,2915,2940
Maximum mass of front axle	kg	1245	1256,1276	1310,1347,1361
Maximum mass of rear axle	kg	1400	1474,1499	1540,1568,1579

Engine parameters

Engine model	Unit	4E15T	DFMC15TE3
Type	-	Turbocharged direct injection	
Displacement	L	1.5	
Cylinder diameter × stroke	mm	75×84.5	73×89.4
Compression ratio	-	9.7	14
Rated power	kW/rpm	140/5500	113/5200
Maximum net power	kW/rpm	125/5500	110/5200
Maximum net torque	Nm/rpm	280/1500 ～ 3500	230/3500 ～ 4500
Ignition order	-	1-3-4-2	
Overall emission level	-	China VI B	

Drive motor parameters

Item	Unit	LZ6530M15B0HEV	LZ6530M15B1PHEV LZ6520M15B0PHEV
Model of drive motor	-	TZ220XYL	TZ236XY150
Type	-	Permanent magnet synchronous motor	
Rated power	kW	55	60
Peak power	kW	130	150
Rated speed	rpm	5000	3600
Maximum rotation speed	rpm	16000	15000
Rated torque	N.m	105	160
Maximum torque	N.m	300	310
Protection class	-	IP67	
Cooling method	-	Oil cooled	

Traction battery parameters

Traction Battery Model		TP Li 2.0-348	TP Li 20.1-347	TP Li 34.9-336
Traction battery type		Ternary lithium battery		Lithium iron phosphate battery
Battery cell information	Rated voltage (V)	3.64	3.62	3.2
	Rated capacity (Ah)	5.95	58	104
Traction battery information	Voltage (V)	349	347	336
	Capacity (Ah)	5.95	58	104
	Mass of power battery pack (kg)	46	128	272
	Protection class	IP67		
	Number of power battery packs	1		

Main assembly parameters of chassis

Item		LZ6530M15B0HEV LZ6530M15B1PHEV LZ6520M15B0PHEV
Suspension system	Front suspension	MacPherson independent suspension
	Rear suspension	Multi-link independent rear suspension
Steering system	Power steering type	Electric steering
Brake system	Structural type	Two-circuit hydraulic service braking system
	Front brake	Ventilated disc type
	Rear brake	Solid disc type
	Free stroke of brake pedal	1mm ～ 12mm
	Brake clearance of front and rear brakes	Less than 0.4mm

Braking parameters

Item		LZ6530M15B0HEV LZ6530M15B1PHEV LZ6520M15B0PHEV
Front wheel brake disc	Setting value (mm)	28
	Service limit (mm)	26
Front wheel friction pad	Setting value (mm)	10
	Service limit (mm)	2
Rear wheel brake disc	Setting value (mm)	14
	Service limit (mm)	12
Rear wheel brake pad	Setting value (mm)	10.2
	Service limit (mm)	2

Performance parameters

Item	Unit	LZ6530M15B0HEV LZ6530M15B1PHEV LZ6520M15B0PHEV
Maximum speed	km/h	180
Maximum gradeability	%	30
Note: The maximum speed of commercial vehicles is limited to 100 km/h.		

Vehicle trafficability parameters

Item	Unit	LZ6530M15B0HEV/LZ6530M15B1PHEV/LZ6520M15B0PHEV
Approach angle (no load)	°	12,13
Departure angle (no load)	°	18,16
Ramp angle (no load)	°	15
Minimum turning diameter	m	12.3
Minimum ground clearance	mm	160 (no load), 140±16 (full load)

Oil specification and capacity

Item	Specification	Capacity
Gasoline (LZ6530M15B0HEV LZ6530M15B1PHEV)	92# or above unleaded gasoline	60L
Gasoline (LZ6520M15B0PHEV)	92# or above unleaded gasoline	58L
Engine oil (LZ6530M15B0HEV)	SN 5W-30 or SP 5W-30	4L
Engine oil (LZ6530M15B1PHEV LZ6520M15B0PHEV)	SP 0W-20	4L
Engine coolant (LZ6530M15B0HEV LZ6530M15B1PHEV)	OAT-35	11±0.8L
Engine coolant (LZ6520M15B0PHEV)	OAT-35	8±0.8L
Lubricating oil for dual-motor hybrid assembly (LZ6530M15B0HEV)	Idemitsu EHSF-1/EHSF-2	4.5L
Lubricating oil for dual-motor hybrid assembly (LZ6530M15B1PHEV LZ6520M15B0PHEV)	Castrol Dongfeng BOT 791D	Total capacity: 4.19L Oil filling for maintenance: 3.4L
Power module circuit + motor controller + intercooler circuit coolant	OAT-35	4.8±0.8L
Power battery coolant (TP Li 2.0-348)	OAT-35	2.5±0.8L
Power battery coolant (TP Li 20.1-347)	OAT-35	2.5±0.8L
Power battery coolant (TP Li 34.9-336)	OAT-35	6±0.8L
Brake fluid	DOT4	0.7 ～ 0.9L
Front windshield washer fluid	NFC-60	2.5L
A/C refrigerant	HFC134a/1234YF	950±20g

Fuel consumption parameters

Item	Unit	LZ6530M15B0HEV	LZ6530M15B1PHEV	LZ6520M15B0PHEV
Fuel consumption under comprehensive conditions	L/100km	5.9	1.88	1.2

Four-wheel alignment specifications

Item		LZ6530M15B0HEV	LZ6530M15B1PHEV	LZ6520M15B0PHEV
Front wheel toe-in	Front wheel	0.08° ±0.04°	0.08° ±0.04°	0.08° ±0.04°
	Rear wheel	0.11° ±0.08°	0.11° ±0.08° /0.09° ±0.08°	0.09° ±0.08°

Wheel camber	Front wheel	-0.3° ±0.5°	-0.3° ±0.5° /-0.16° ±0.5°	-0.16° ±0.5°
	Rear wheel	-0.5° ±0.5°	-0.5° ±0.5° /-0.38° ±0.5°	-0.38° ±0.5°
Kingpin caster	Front wheel	5.62° ±0.5°	5.62° ±0.5° /5.55° ±0.5°	5.55° ±0.5°
Kingpin inclination	Front wheel	13.06° ±0.5°	13.06° ±0.5° /12.82° ±0.5°	12.82° ±0.5°

Rim and tire specifications

Item	LZ6530M15B0HEV/LZ6530M15B1PHEV/LZ6520M15B0PHEV	
Tire specifications	225/55 R18	245/45 R19 (optional for some models)
Wheel trim specification	18×6.5J	19×7.5J (optional for some models)
Tire pressure (no load)	Front: 250±5kPa / rear: 250±5kPa	
Tire pressure (full load)	Front: 250±5kPa / rear: 280±5kPa	
Spare tire specification	/	
Spare tire pressure	/	

Emission requirements

The model meets the national VI emission requirements of GB18352.6-2016.

Maintenance technical requirements for specified emission

Engine ECU

The operation of ECU must comply with the following requirements:

1. Connect the ECU and harness connector. Make sure that the system power supply is off, i.e. the start switch is off. Do not plug or unplug the ECU when the Start/Stop switch is turned on, so as to avoid contacting ECU pins or exposed parts of ECU harness with any part of the body when the power is on.

2. Sparks caused by static electricity may cause damage to ECU, so contact between ECU and static electricity shall be avoided as much as possible.

3. Do not apply voltage over 16V to ECU.

4. Do not connect the positive and negative poles of ECU pins in reverse.

5. Do not use ECU with physical damage on the appearance. The surface of ECU housing shall not be scratched or coated with any unapproved material. It is not allowed to spray paint or other insulating liquid on ECU pins.

6. Do not use any tool or object to knock any part of ECU.

7. Electromagnetic field and radio frequency interference sources shall be kept away from ECU.

8. It shall be ensured that ECU is effectively fixed and grounded during installation.

9. Avoid burning out ECU when repairing the vehicle by electric welding. If possible, power off and remove ECU and keep away from electric welding.

10. When the battery is bridged with an external power supply, the electrodes shall be kept in firm contact.

Oxygen sensor

Oxygen sensor detects the oxygen concentration in exhaust gas

The corresponding signal voltage is generated, and the ECU adjusts

fuel injection quantity, the oxygen sensor does not need any

Adjust and repair.

The oxygen sensor will fail in the following conditions:

1. The electrical connector assembly of oxygen sensor is damaged.

2. The zirconium element inside the oxygen sensor is broken, fractured and damaged.

3. Open circuit or short circuit of oxygen sensor heating element.

4. Open circuit or short circuit of oxygen sensor sensing element.

5. The oxygen sensor thermistor is short-circuited to housing.

6. Short circuit of oxygen sensor heating element to shell.

Precautions for using the oxygen sensor:

1. Do not drop the oxygen sensor or impact it with a hard object surface to avoid damaging the ceramic element or heating element.

2. After installing the oxygen sensor, avoid damaging it due to applying large knocking force on the engine.

3. Avoid inaccurate sensor output signal caused by carbon deposit, engine oil, lead and other organic substances polluting the sensor.

Caution

The use of poor-quality fuel will affect the signal accuracy. Long-term use will cause the sensor to fail.

Three-way catalytic converter

The application of the three-way catalytic converter must be in conformity with the following requirements:

1. Regularly maintain and repair the vehicle according to the manufacturer's maintenance specifications.

2. Use high-quality unleaded gasoline that meets the requirements of the automobile manufacturer.

3. A certain amount of fuel shall be kept in the fuel tank, otherwise it may cause a fire, resulting in overheating and damage to the catalytic purifier.

4. If the vehicle has power drop, unstable operation or OBD lamp illuminates, please go to a service station designated by Dongfeng Forthing for maintenance in time to avoid damage to the three-way catalytic converter.

5. Do not overfill the engine oil.

6. Shut down the vehicle when towing it.

7. Only original parts and components of Dongfeng Forthing must be used.

Warning

- Keep away from withered grass, dry leaves or other combustibles when the engine is running or stopped.
- Using leaded gasoline will cause failure of the three-way catalytic converter.
- If the vehicle has power drop, unstable operation or OBD lamp illuminates, please go to an authorized service station of Dongfeng Forthing for maintenance in time to avoid damage to the three-way catalytic converter.

Information of key components and parts for emission control

Vehicle type approval certificate information, manufacturer, model and effective service life of key components for emission control, etc.

Item	LZ6530M15B0HEV			
Description of key components and parts for emission control	Engine ECU	Oxygen sensor	Front catalytic converter assembly	Rear GPF assembly
Model of key components and parts for emission control	MG1US008	LSU/LSF4	M6-1205030	M6-1205040
Manufacturer	United Automotive Electronic Systems Co., Ltd.		Liuzhou Mingshi Automobile Technology Co., Ltd.	
Effective service life	Three years or 60,000 km			

Item	LZ6530M15B1PHEV/LZ6520M15B0PHEV			
Description of key components and parts for emission control	Engine ECU	Oxygen sensor	Front catalytic converter assembly	Rear GPF assembly
Model of key components and parts for emission control	MG1US008	LSU/LSF4	C15TDR C006-E	C15TDE G001
Manufacturer	United Automotive Electronic Systems Co., Ltd.		Dongfeng Faurecia (Xiangyang) Exhaust System Co., Ltd.	
Effective service life	Three years or 60,000 km			